



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



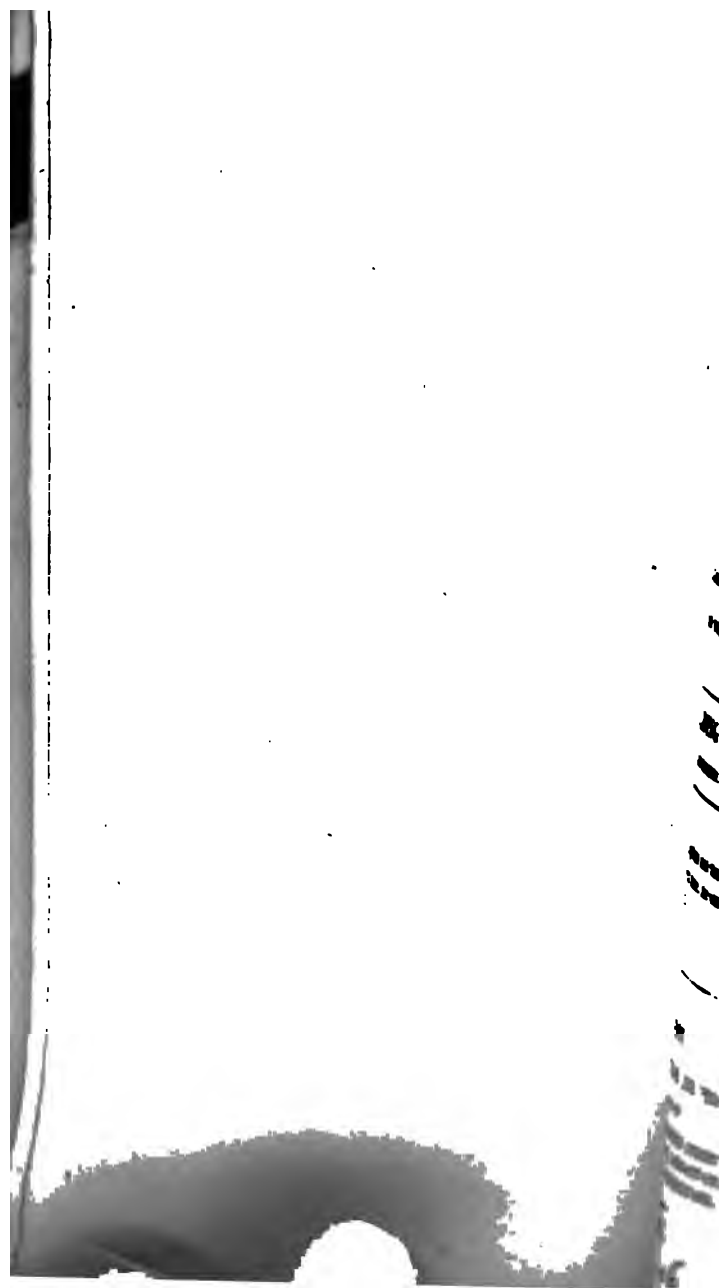


**600004538Q**

*26.106.*







*J. H. 1826*

THE

# OF THE GLOBE,

CONTAINING

ITS SEVERAL DIVISIONS OF LAND  
AND WATER:

WHICH ARE ADDED,

THE TERRESTRIAL AND  
CELESTIAL GLOBES,

AND

ANSWERS TO  
QUESTIONS

FOR EXAMINATION:

IN SCHOOLS & PRIVATE FAMILIES.

OLDING BUTLER,

OF ARITHMETIC, AND GEOGRAPHY

kingdoms and their glory.  
modern fame, the seat  
of empire.

M.L.

LONDON:

AUTHOR AND PROPRIETOR

AND SOLD BY

RACECHURCH STREET  
COURT, LUDGATE HILL  
PAUL'S CHURCH-YARD

1826.

*106*

strange  
not  
high  
ined  
l in-  
f his  
as a  
tion.  
is, to  
jects  
scrip-  
ven of  
heatre  
ed the  
r with  
political

ne work  
ons of a  
far as is  
he cardi-  
ually from  
by enabled

of my father,

821.46

PRINTED BY G. SMALLFIELD, HACKNEY.

## PREFACE.

---

WHEN the number of elementary treatises on Geography is considered, it may, perhaps, appear presumptuous to offer a new one to the Public. An explanation, not only of the plan of this work, but of the motives in which it originated, is therefore necessary. Experience, gained as a teacher under the eye of one of the best practical instructors of his time, and a conviction of the utility of his system,\* have led me to think that Geography opens a wide field for the introduction of miscellaneous information. The chief design, therefore, of the following pages is, to combine with the Geography of the Globe a few subjects beyond the express boundaries of topographical description. For this end, brief biographical notices are given of persons who have acted a distinguished part on the theatre of life; and historical events, which have determined the fate of nations, are sometimes recorded, together with facts illustrative of their moral, intellectual, or political character.

Great industry has also been exerted to render the work useful as well as entertaining. Where the divisions of a country are numerous, they have been arranged, as far as is possible, in regular succession, with reference to the cardinal points; and the learner, by proceeding gradually from north to south, or from east to west, is thereby enabled

---

\* It is scarcely necessary to mention the name of my father, Mr. Butler.



*J. H. 1826*

THE  
**GEOGRAPHY OF THE GLOBE,**  
CONTAINING  
A DESCRIPTION OF ITS SEVERAL DIVISIONS OF LAND  
AND WATER :  
TO WHICH ARE ADDED,  
PROBLEMS ON THE TERRESTRIAL AND  
CELESTIAL GLOBES, .  
AND  
A SERIES OF QUESTIONS  
FOR EXAMINATION :  
DESIGNED FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS & PRIVATE FAMILIES.

---

By **JOHN OLDING BUTLER,**  
TEACHER OF WRITING, ARITHMETIC, AND GEOGRAPHY.

---

—————Earth's kingdoms and their glory,  
City of old or modern fame, the seat  
Of mightiest empire.

MILTON



---

LONDON :  
PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR AND PROPRIETORS :  
AND SOLD BY  
HARVEY AND DARTON, GRACECHURCH STREET; SIMPKIN AND  
MARSHALL, STATIONERS' COURT, LUDGATE HILL; AND J. HAR-  
RIS, WEST CORNER, ST. PAUL'S CHURCHYARD.

---

1826.

*106*

*34*

Questions are in considerable forwardness, and only a few months will elapse before they are published, I have ventured to anticipate their appearance by occasional reference to them in the Geography.

It only remains that I should solicit the public indulgence for any errors that may be found in this work ; for in a " Geography of the Globe " some errors are likely to be found. Captious criticism has even presumed that it can discover faults in the construction of the globe itself ; how then can the production of a feeble and erring creature hope to escape the shafts of " envy, hatred, and all uncharitableness " ?—To conclude : as the admonitions of friendship, when made in the spirit of charity, are among the best gifts of life, I cheerfully solicit the candid notice of any faults which may be found in the performance now submitted to the Public.

JOHN OLDING BUTLER.

3, *Silvester Row.*  
*Grove Place, Hackney.*



## METHOD OF USING THIS WORK.

---

1. **AFTER** the Definitions have been learned and repeated, the Summary of the four quarters of the Globe is to be learned, the scholar pointing out, on a map, the countries, rivers, and other remarkable features.

2. The part printed in the *larger type*, which describes the extent, surface, climate, &c., of each country in succession, is then to be learned and repeated, beginning with Norway, a map being always used at the same time.

3. As a third course, the description of places, rivers, and other local features, which is printed in the *small type*, is to be attentively perused so as to enable the scholar to answer the **QUESTIONS** at the end of the work, either verbally or in writing, according to the discretion of the teacher. The scholar, at the same time, is to point out the places, trace the direction of the rivers, and situation of the mountains, &c., on the map, and thus to elucidate the description of them. These Questions may either be given when the pupil has finished the geographical character of each separate country, or when the whole of what is printed in the larger type is gone through.



### ERRATA AND CORRECTIONS.

---

Page 32. Russian Government. The Emperor Alexander having died December 1, 1825, at Taganrog, a fortress on the sea of Asoph, has been succeeded by his brother the Grand Duke Constantine, by the title of Constantine I.

Page 33. British Isles. For the north part of Scotland is about 130 miles from Norway, read, 300 miles.

Page 195. Population of Africa. For 150 millions, read, 100 millions.

Page 304, for " breadth of Africa," read, *length*.

# INDEX.

---

	PAGE
Definitions .....	1
Mountains, observations on, .....	2
Lakes, observations on, .....	4
Rivers, observations on, .....	4
Great divisions of the Globe .....	5
Europe, summary of, .....	9
Norway .....	13
Sweden .....	18
Denmark .....	24
Russia (European) .....	27
British Isles .....	33
Great Britain.....	33
England.....	34
Wales ..	55
Scotland.....	58
Ireland ..	64
Netherlands, kingdom of, ...	68
Holland.....	69
Belgic Provinces .....	73
France .....	77
Germany .....	87
Austria .....	88
Prussian German dominions .....	89
Hanover .....	90
Saxony .....	91
Bavaria .....	92
Wurtemberg .....	92
Baden .....	92
Mountains, &c., of Germany .....	93
Austrian Empire .....	95
Hungary .....	97
Poland .....	99
Prussia .....	100
Switzerland .....	102
Spain.....	108
Portugal .....	114
Italy .....	118
Italian Islands .....	124
Ionian Isles ...	126
Turkey in Europe.....	128
Asia, summary of, .....	136
Russia in Asia .....	140
Tartary, Chinese, .....	143
Tartary, Independent, .....	144
Tibet .....	146
Turkey in Asia.....	147
Arabia .....	153

	PAGE
Persia.....	157
Hindustan .....	163
India beyond the Gauges.....	173
Birman Empire.....	174
Siam .....	177
Laos, Tonquin, Cochin China.....	178
Malacca .....	180
China.....	181
East India Islands.....	189
Africa, summary of,.....	194
Barbary .....	196
Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, Tripoli .....	197, 199, 200
Egypt.....	201
Zahara, or the Great Desert .....	206
Soudan or Nigritia .....	207
Nubia, Abyssinia .....	211, 212
Adel, Ajan, Zanguebar.....	213
Caffraria .....	213
Hottentot, country of,.....	214
Good Hope, Colony of, .....	214
Senegambia .....	217
Guinea, Upper and Lower,.....	219, 222
African Islands.....	222
America .....	226
North America, summary of,.....	227
Greenland .....	228
British America.....	230
United States of America.....	235
New Spain, or the Mexican States.....	242
Guatemala .....	248
Native American Tribes, or Indians .....	249
West Indies .....	254
South America, summary of, .....	259
Colombia, Republic of, .....	261
Peru .....	264
Chili .....	266
Patagonia .....	268
Paraguay, or United Provinces .....	268
Brazil.....	270
Amazonia .....	273
Guiana .....	274
South American Islands .....	274
Islands in the Southern Ocean .....	276
Australasia .....	278
Polynesia .....	280
Universe and Solar System.....	287
Terrestrial Globe .....	295
Problems on the Terrestrial Globe.....	299
Problems on the Celestial Globe.....	319
Questions and Exercises .....	325

PUBLISHED BY

THE LATE MR. WILLIAM BUTLER.

**GEOGRAPHICAL AND BIOGRAPHICAL EXERCISES**, on a new plan; with a set of **OUTLINE MAPS** annexed to them, and a series of **QUESTIONS** as **EXERCISES** for each Map. Price 4s. The 13th Edition, enlarged by the Author's Son, JOHN OLDING BUTLER.

The design of the Maps is the instruction of Junior Pupils in the figure and size of the different parts of the World.

**AN ENGRAVED INTRODUCTION TO ARITHMETIC**, consisting of Examples in the four principal Rules; with **PRINTED EXERCISES**, designed to facilitate the progress of Young Beginners, and to diminish the labour of the Tutor. Price 4s. 6d.

The Printed Exercises at the end of this work contain a great variety of Sums adapted to domestic purposes, and to the Arithmetical calculations which daily occur in life. They have also blended with them a large portion of Historical, Biographical, and Miscellaneous information.

“As Arithmetic is, or ought to be, one of the earliest branches of education, so it is one of the greatest importance. At this period of life, the first four rules must be accurately learnt, must be engraven on the memory, by a multitude of examples of all kinds, beginning from the most simple that can be formed. In this view, Mr. Butler's book of examples in these Rules will be found useful to the teacher, as well as of advantage to the scholar.”

*Monthly Preceptor.*

JANUARY, 1826.

*Just Published,*

A BRIEF MEMOIR OF MR. WILLIAM BUTLER, with  
a Portrait. Price 2s. By JOHN OLDING BUTLER.

*Preparing for Publication,*

A SERIES OF QUESTIONS IN ROMAN HISTORY, which  
were used by the late Mr. BUTLER among his Pupils. To  
these Questions copious Notes and a variety of Information  
concerning the Manners, Customs, and Character of the  
Romans, will be added by the Author's Son.

---

*\* \* \* Writing, Arithmetic, and Geography, taught in  
Ladies' Schools and Private Families by MR. JOHN  
OLDING BUTLER, No. 3, Silvester Row, Grove Place,  
Hackney.*

## DEFINITIONS.

---

1. GEOGRAPHY is a description of the earth : the term is derived from two Greek words signifying the *earth*, and to *describe*. It is often so treated as to comprehend an account of mankind, with their religion, government, manners, and customs.

2. The World is composed of LAND and WATER.

The LAND is divided into continents and islands, peninsulas, isthmuses, promontories, and mountains.

The WATER is divided into oceans, seas, gulfs, bays, and straits, with lakes, rivers, and estuaries.

### LAND.

3. A CONTINENT \* is a tract of land containing several countries not separated by any ocean or sea.

4. An ISLAND, or ISLE, is land wholly surrounded by water. \* Small islands are called ISLETS.

5. A PENINSULA is land surrounded by water in all parts except one, or which is almost an island. †

---

\* The word Continent is derived from the two Latin words, *con* with, and *teneo* to hold : it therefore means connected, continuing. The phrase "the Continent," as used by Englishmen, refers particularly to Europe. Thus if a person was about to visit France or Germany it would be said that he was going to the Continent.

† The word Peninsula is derived from two Latin words, *pene* almost, and *insula* an island.

6. An **ISTHMUS** is that part of a peninsula which joins it to a continent, and prevents it from being an island.\*

7. A **PROMONTORY** is land projecting into the sea. A promontory when it has any appearance of a mountain is often called a **CAPE**; and when elevated, is generally termed a **POINT**.

8. A **MOUNTAIN** is a considerable eminence of land, rising much higher than the adjoining parts of the earth. Several mountains in succession are called a chain.

**MOUNTAINS** are among the grandest and most useful features of the globe. Nothing is more magnificent than an extensive range of majestic eminences which seem to rule over the rest of the world; while their summits, clothed with the snow of ages, rise above the clouds. Nor do any other terrestrial objects more forcibly prove how insignificant are the most stupendous works of "*the little builder man*" when compared with those of the **OMNIPOTENT**, of Him who was before the mountains were.

The surface of **MOUNTAINS** is sometimes barren, and it is sometimes clothed with rich and extensive forests; while the interior abounds in mineral wealth. Whilst the forests of pine and fir on the Dofrine chain in Norway and Sweden supply fuel for the people of those cold regions, and timber for the south and centre of Europe, the finest iron is extracted from the interior; and it is from the mountains of America that Europeans derive the gold and silver which administer to their wants and luxuries, and too often excite their avarice.

In **MOUNTAINS** are found the sources of rivers. The vapours raised from the sea, and conveyed by the air to the mountain tops, precipitate the waters down the sides. The mountain streams unite and rivers are then formed. Such is the origin of the Rhine, the Rhone, and of other still mightier rivers!

---

\* Isthmus is a Latin word; *isthmus*, a narrow neck of land, or narrow part of a country between two seas. The word also means, metaphorically, a passage from one state or condition to another. Thus, death, which is often called the gate of life, may be termed the *isthmus* by which we must pass from this to another life, and which connects this and another world.

The height of mountains is often ascertained by barometrical measurement. The quicksilver in a barometer falls about one-tenth of an inch every 32 yards of height ; so that if it descended a *whole* inch, the perpendicular height of any mountain will be 320 yards or 960 feet. Mount Blanc, in Switzerland, is 15,662 *feet* above the level of the sea. When Saussure, the celebrated traveller, reached its summit, the quicksilver in the barometer must have fallen sixteen inches and five-sixteenths of another inch ; and when Humboldt, another traveller, ascended one of the Andes in South America to the height of 19,400 *feet*, which is the highest ground ever trodden by man, the quicksilver must have fallen something more than 20 inches. The more elevated the surface of the earth is in any hemisphere or in any given latitude, the colder it becomes. The tops of the highest mountains are therefore always covered with snow. Whilst the line of perpetual snow, or snow which never melts, is on mountains at the equator 15,719 feet, or nearly 3 miles above the level of the sea, the line of perpetual snow on the Alps is from 8,450 to 9,100 feet above its level.

### WATER.

9. The OCEAN, in its most extensive sense, means the whole water which surrounds the earth ; but has, for geographical distinction, been divided into portions ; as the Pacific and Atlantic oceans.

10. The SEA is part of the ocean confined between portions of a continent or inclosed by islands.

11. A GULF is an arm of the sea or ocean running up into the land, but often of considerable breadth.

12. A BAY is an inlet of the land which does not run so deep into it as a gulf, but which has a wider entrance. Smaller bays are often called HAVENS. A bay is commonly between two Capes. Gulfs and bays are formed by the irregular construction of the land. Thus, Turkey in Europe, the outline of which is very irregular, has more gulfs than any other European country.

13. A STRAIT is a narrow passage giving an entrance



into a sea, and connecting two bodies of water; or it is a **CHANNEL** of the sea situated between an island and a continent, or between two or more islands.

14. A **LAKE** is a broad body of water nearly or entirely surrounded by land, and having no visible or open communication with the sea, and commonly little motion in its waters.

Lakes, among mountains, are the reservoirs of water partly fed by deep springs, and partly from the atmosphere by the attraction of the mountains. Hence those elevated countries Sweden and Switzerland have numerous lakes. Rivers are the outlets by which their waters are carried off. Wener, the largest in Sweden, receives 24 rivers. The Gotha is the outlet by which its waters are discharged into the sea. If lakes have no river as an outlet, a superabundance of water is prevented by the heat of the sun. The lake called the Dead Sea, in Palestine, has no outlet; but although it has been calculated that the river Jordan daily discharges into it 6,090,000 tons of water, besides what it receives from the Arnon and several smaller streams, it is now known that the loss by evaporation is adequate to explain the absorption of the waters.

15. A **RIVER** is a current of water which generally rises in high land, but sometimes issues from a lake.

Rivers either flow into the sea, or join other streams, or lose themselves in lakes, or are absorbed, as happens in Africa, by the thirsty soil which they pervade. Whilst the **SOURCE** of a river is the place or spring where it rises, the **MOUTH** or **ENTRANCE** is that part of it where it discharges itself into the sea, or flows into some other river. If very wide, it is called a **FRITH** or **ESTUARY**. The **RIGHT** or **LEFT BANK** of a river is that which is to the right or left of a person coming *from* its source. To a person coming *from* the source of the Thames, Richmond is on its right bank, and Twickenham on its left. Whilst the *upper* part of a river is the part nearest its source, the *lower* is that nearest its mouth. Districts which are situated nearest the source of a river, are called *upper*, and those nearest its mouth, *lower*. Thus *Upper Saxony*, though to the south of *Lower Saxony*, is so named because it is nearest the source of

the Elbe; and *Lower Saxony*, though north of the former, is so termed from its proximity to the mouth of that river. The same remark applies to the districts called the Upper and Lower Rhine, and to those of Upper and Lower Egypt. The **CONFLUX** of a river is the place where two rivers unite. Lyons, in France, is situated at the conflux of the Rhone and the Soane, or the point where those two streams join.

Rivers form some of the most beautiful and majestic features of a country: they both adorn and fertilize it. Their advantage to commerce is incalculable. They serve as outlets by which the wealth of a nation is conveyed to foreign realms; and as inlets by which it receives their riches in return. Places situated on a river and near the sea are therefore advantageously seated for commerce. Hence most capitals, and many large cities, are built on the banks of rivers.

A continent is analagous to the ocean; the one being a vast tract of land, and the other of water. An island, encompassed with water, resembles a lake surrounded by land; and a peninsula is similar to a gulf or inland sea.

### GREAT DIVISIONS OF THE GLOBE.

16. The globe is divided into four great parts, which, though very unequal in size, are usually termed quarters. They are Europe, Asia, Africa, and America. The first three are called the Old World or Old Continent, because they were known to the ancients; they are also called the Eastern Hemisphere. America, having been more recently discovered, is termed the New World or New Continent. It is likewise styled the Western Hemisphere. We are indebted for this discovery, the most interesting ever made by man, to Christopher Columbus, who, in 1492, laid open a portion of the globe larger than any one of the other three great divisions of the known world.

17. **OCEANS.** There are four great bodies of water in the globe: the Pacific ocean, the Atlantic, the Indian, and

the Northern or Frozen ocean, which is sometimes called the Arctic sea.\*

The **PACIFIC OCEAN**, which is between Asia and America, is divided by geographers into the North Pacific, or that on the north side of the equator, and the South Pacific, or that on its southern side.

The Pacific ocean is the greatest body of water in the world, being 10,000 miles across, and received its name from the tranquillity observed by navigators while crossing it in certain directions. In some parts it is as tempestuous as other oceans.

The **ATLANTIC OCEAN** has to the east of it the coasts of Europe and Africa, and to the west of it those of North and South America. It is divided by geographers into the North Atlantic, or that on the north side of the equator, and the South Atlantic, or that on the southern side.

The Atlantic ranks as the second in size among the four great bodies of water. It commences at the north polar circle, and is limited on the south by a line drawn from the Cape of Good Hope in Africa, to Cape Horn in S. America. It was so named either from Mount Atlas, in Africa, the foot of which it washes, or from Atlas, king of Mauritania, an ancient district of northern Africa.

The **INDIAN OCEAN** lies between the eastern side of Africa, the southern coast of Asia, and the west side of the island of New Holland. Its southern boundary is a line drawn between the Cape of Good Hope and the west part of New Holland.

The **NORTH FROZEN OCEAN** or **ARCTIC SEA**, bounds the northern extremities of Europe and Asia.

In the division of the world into land and water, the land covers about one-third part, and the water about two-thirds of its surface.

18. The **CIRCUMFERENCE OF THE GLOBE** is divided

---

\* *Arctic*, from a Greek word signifying north.

into 360 degrees and about 25,020 English miles ; its diameter\* being about 8,340 miles.

19. **ZONES.** Five Zones or great divisions of the earth mark the temperature of its climates : namely, one Torrid, two Temperate, and two Frigid.

The **TORRID ZONE**, in which the heat is excessive, lies between the tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, and extends 23 degrees and a half on each side of the equator. Its breadth therefore is 47 degrees. The cause of its great heat is, that the sun's rays fall perpendicularly on it. The inhabitants of this zone have the sun vertical, that is, exactly over their heads, twice in the year.

The **NORTH TEMPERATE ZONE**, in which moderate heat and cold prevail, lies between the tropic of Cancer and the Arctic Circle, that is between 23 degrees and a half and 66 degrees and a half of N. latitude.

The **SOUTH TEMPERATE ZONE** is between the tropic of Capricorn and the Antarctic Circle, that is between 23 degrees and a half and 66 degrees and a half of South latitude. The breadth of each Temperate zone is 43 degrees.

The **NORTH FRIGID ZONE**, which has extreme cold, lies between the Arctic Circle and the North Pole, and reaches from 66 degrees and a half to the 90th of N. latitude.

The **SOUTH FRIGID ZONE** is between the Antarctic Circle and the South Pole. It extends from 66 degrees and a half to the 90th of S. latitude. The breadth of each Frigid Zone is 23 degrees and a half. Their excessive cold arises from the sun's rays falling on them very obliquely.

20. The **EQUATOR** is an imaginary line which divides


---

\* *Diameter*—a line, which, passing through the centre of a circle, divides it into two equal parts.

the world into two equal parts, called the Northern and Southern Hemispheres. It is 90 degrees from the Poles.

21. *Latitude.* Latitude is the distance of a place from the Equator towards either of the poles. If the place is above the Equator, it is called N. latitude, and if below it, S. latitude. Places that are on the Equator have no latitude. The greatest latitude is 90.

*LONGITUDE.* Longitude is the distance of a place from *any* first meridian. *Our* first meridian is drawn over London. The ancients fixed theirs at Ferro, one of the Canary Islands, because that was the limit of their geographical knowledge westward. Longitude is counted on the Equator. The greatest is 180. Places that are on the first meridian have no longitude, and those which have the same longitude have the same hours of the day.



## SUMMARY OF EUROPE.

---

*Situation.* Europe lies west of Asia and north of Africa. It joins the former, composing with it one great mass of continent; but is separated from the latter by the Mediterranean sea. In its south western part, the peninsula of Spain and Portugal, the European coast does however approach northern Africa. Nearly the whole of Europe is in the Temperate Zone; but a portion of it, being 66 degrees and a half above the equator, is in the Frigid.

Though the smallest in size, Europe is the most interesting of the four grand divisions of the world, for, in arts, sciences, and arms; in the comparative wisdom of its institutions and governments; and in all that forms the true value and dignity of life, it holds the first rank. Among other sources from which Europe derives these advantages is that of its being intersected by many inland seas, and also its proximity to the Atlantic ocean; which facilitate an intercourse not only between its own territories, but with the rest of the globe.

Its generally happy temperature of climate, remote from the extremes of heat and cold, appears also to be that which is the best adapted to excite the energies of man, and, thereby, to promote his moral and intellectual improvement.

*Boundaries.* Europe is bounded on the N. by the Frozen ocean; on the S. by the Mediterranean sea, which divides it from Africa; on the E. by the Uralian moun-

tains with the rivers Wolga and Don, which separate it from Asia; and on the W. by the Atlantic. All its limits are, therefore, natural boundaries.\*

*Extent.* From the rock of Lisbon on the W., to the Uralian mountains on the E., may be reckoned about 2500 English miles; and from North Cape, in Danish Lapland, to Cape Matapan, in the Morea, may be computed 2350 miles.

*Chief Geographical Features.* The outline of Europe is very irregular, it being broken into islands and peninsulas, and intersected by bays and gulfs. The central parts are more united. The eastern side is, in general, like that of all other portions of the world, comparatively level, while the land rises towards the west. The most elevated parts are in the south.

*Climate.* In the north severe cold is felt during the winter. The central countries enjoy a moderate temperature; while the southern parts have an increased warmth.

*Population.* In population, Europe ranks the second among the four quarters of the world; and is computed to have 170 millions of inhabitants.

*Religions.* All the European states profess the Christian religion, except Turkey, which is Mahomedan. The Christian religion is divided into the Protestant, Roman Catholic, and Greek churches.

---

\* *Natural Boundaries* are those which seem marked out by nature as lines of separation between countries. Mountains and hills, rivers and lakes, oceans and seas, are natural boundaries. Thus, the river Tweed, the Cheviot hills, and the Solway Frith, are natural boundaries between England and Scotland. Artificial boundaries are limits agreed on between states, as a line of demarcation between their territories; though even in their formation that line has often a reference to some striking local feature.

## EUROPE.

11

*Governments.* They consist of despotic and limited monarchies and a republic.

Europe has sixteen countries.

### NORTHERN.

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. Norway. | 3. Denmark. |
| 2. Sweden. | 4. Russia.  |

### CENTRAL.

- |  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| 5. The British Isles, including England, Scotland and Ireland. | 8. Switzerland. |
| 6. The Netherlands, including Holland.                         | 9. Germany.     |
| 7. France.   | 10. Hungary.    |
|  | 11. Poland.     |
|  | 12. Prussia.    |

### SOUTHERN.

- |               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| 13. Spain.    | 15. Italy.            |
| 14. Portugal. | 16. Turkey in Europe. |

*Chief Islands.* Great Britain, Ireland, and Iceland in the Atlantic. Zealand at the entrance of the Baltic. Yvica, Majorca and Minorca, Corsica, and Sardinia, with Sicily and Candia in the Mediterranean, the Ionian isles on the W. coast of Turkey, and the islands in the Archipelago.

*Peninsulas.* Europe has six peninsulas; Norway and Sweden, and Jutland, which is part of Denmark, are the two northern peninsulæ. To the S. are Portugal and Spain, the Morea, part of European Turkey, and the Crimea or Taurida.

*Isthmuses.* Those of Corinth and Prekop. The former joins the Morea to the continent of Turkey, and the latter unites Taurida to the more northern part of European Russia.

*Chief Capes.* North Cape, the northern point of Nor-



way; Land's End in the S. W. of England; cape Clear in the S. W. of Ireland; Finisterre in the N. W. of Spain; cape Roca, near Lisbon, in Portugal, cape St. Vincent in the S. W. of that kingdom; and cape Matapan in the Morea, part of Turkey in Europe.

*Chief Mountains.* The Darafeld or Dofrine, between Norway and Sweden; the Uralian, between the European part of the Russian empire and its Asiatic portion; the Carpathian, between Poland and Hungary; the Pyrennean, between France and Spain; the Alps, which separate Italy from France, Switzerland, and Germany; and the Apennines which run down Italy. The chief volcanic mountains of Europe are Vesuvius, about eight miles S. of Naples; Etna in the island of Sicily; Stromboli, one of the Lipari isles, N. of Sicily; and Hecla in the island of Iceland.

*Oceans and Seas.* The Atlantic ocean on the W.; the Arctic sea or Frozen ocean, the White sea, the Baltic, Scaggerac, Cattegat, and the North sea or German ocean, in the N.; the Irish sea and St. George's channel, between Great Britain and Ireland; the English or British channel, between England and France; the bay of Biscay, between France and Spain; the Mediterranean sea, between Europe and Africa; the Adriatic sea or gulf of Venice, between Italy and Turkey; the Archipelago; the sea of Marmora; and the Euxine or Black sea in Turkey.

*Straits.* The Sound, between Sweden and the isle of Zealand, which is the chief entrance into the Baltic; the strait of Dover, between England and France; the strait of Gibraltar, between Europe and Africa, by which the Mediterranean is entered; the strait of Bonifacio, between Corsica and Sardinia; the strait of Messina, between Italy and the island of Sicily; the Dardanelles or Hellespont, which connects the sea of Marmora with the Black sea;

and the strait of Caffa or Jenicale, which forms the communication between the Euxine and the sea of Asoph.\*

*Chief Rivers.* The Thames, Severn, Humber, and Trent, in England; the Tay, Clyde, and Forth, in Scotland; the Shannon, in Ireland; the Loire, Rhone, and Garonne, in France; the Danube, Rhine, Elbe, and Oder, in Germany; the Wesel or Vistula in Poland and Prussia; the Volga or Wolga, Don, Niester, and Dnieper, in Russia; the Tagus in Spain and Portugal; and the Po in Italy.

---

## NORWAY.

*Situation.* Norway, including Norwegian Lapland, is the most northern country of Europe.† It formed the western side of the peninsula of ancient *Scandinavia*. The southern districts are in the upper part of the N. temperate zone: and the more northern project into the frigid. Norway is remarkable for mountains, rocks, and lakes, and has a long but broken range of coast.

*Boundaries.* On the N. by the Frozen ocean; on the S. by the Scaggerac sea, which divides it from Denmark; on the E. by Sweden; and on the W. by the German and Northern oceans.

*Extent.* From the 58th to about the 71st deg. of N. lat. It is nearly 750 miles long, and in its widest part above 200 miles broad.

---

\* The scholar, when finding any strait on a map, should be required to point out the two bodies of water which it connects. Thus three points, a knowledge of one strait and of two seas, would be gained.

† *Nor-way*, or the *North way*. North is of Saxon derivation.

*Capital.* Bergen, on the North sea, in lat. 60 deg. N. and long. 5 deg. 45 min. E.,\* it being eight degrees and a half more north than London.

*Divisions.* Norway has four governments. 1. Agghe-  
rus in the S. E.; chief places, Christiana, the *capital*, and  
Fredericshall. 2. Christiansand in the S. W., *cap.*  
Christiansand. 3. Bergen in the W., *cap.* Bergen. 4.  
Drontheim towards the N., *cap.* Drontheim. To these  
may be added Nordland, a long northern province, and  
Norwegian Lapland or Finmark, in the extreme north  
part, having Wardhuys for its capital.

*Mountains.* The Dofrafield or Dofrine. Sneehatten,  
or the Hat of Snow, so named from its shape, is the highest  
of the Norwegian summits. It is in lat. 62, and about  
8115 English feet above the level of the sea.

*Islands.* The Lofoden isles, near the N. W. coast; and  
Maggeroe island, at the extreme N. part.

*Capes.* North Cape the northern, and Naze or Lindes-  
nes the southern point of Norway.

*Chief River.* The Glomm or Glommen, whose beauti-  
fully transparent waters rise in the Dofrine chain, and,  
after a southern course of 300 miles through Agghe-  
rus, flow into the Scaggerac, opposite the point of Jutland, in  
Denmark. The Glomm conveys to the Northern ocean  
immense quantities of timber. The rivers of Norway, in  
general, run only a short course, and are rendered imprac-  
ticable for navigation by cataracts.

*Surface of Norway.* The Norwegian coast is in the

---

\* *Deg.* stands for degrees, and *min.* for minutes. A degree is  
divided into 60 minutes; 45 minutes are therefore equal to three  
quarters of a degree; 30 minutes to half a degree, and 15 minutes  
to a quarter.

highest style of rocky grandeur; and, being continually beat by the waves of the Northern ocean, is much broken and indented with deep inlets or fiords.\* In the interior, Norway is perhaps the most mountainous country in the world. It combines, however, some of the softer features of nature. A Norwegian landscape exhibits lofty mountains clothed with towering forests of fir, pine, and birch trees; bold rocks and abrupt precipices, with the varying scenes of green pastures, cultivated fields, and mountain sides spotted with farms and farm-houses. Norway has numerous lakes; the largest is that of ENARA, in Lapland.

*Climate of Norway.* Cold is its prevailing character; there is neither spring nor autumn. During the short but fervent summer the sun keeps circling round the horizon, and darkness is unknown in the higher latitudes, but it totally disappears for several weeks in the winter. At this season, however, the moon, during two of her quarters, rises high in the heavens, never setting; and the fires of the aurora borealis rushing through the firmament, with the increased brilliancy of the constellations, light up the skies and compensate the loss of day. The air of Norway is salubrious, and the inhabitants are remarkable for longevity.† In no country of Europe, except Switzerland, is the average of life longer than in Norway.

*Products and Commerce.* Norway being a rocky and mountainous country, and therefore unfit for the plough,

---

\* Fiord or ford means, in the Northern dialect, an inlet of the sea, or a channel within islands.

† A traveller relates that there were married on the same day four couples, and no one of the bridal party was under 100 years of age: their united ages, therefore, amounted to 800 years.

has not many agricultural resources. It contains, however, rich mines and large forests. Silver, copper, iron, marble, and cobalt,\* with those minerals of wonderful properties, the loadstone and asbestos,† are found here. The pine and fir trees yield planks remarkably firm and compact, and therefore valuable for masts and building timber.

*Places, &c.* DRONTHEIM, the ancient capital of Norway, and residence of her kings, is a noble town seated on the Nid, and in so picturesque a manner on a fine bay, that it has been called the Baia of the North.‡ Drontheim, which is the most northern city in Europe, except Tornea, in Swedish Lapland, has near it a rich copper-mine.

BERGEN, the present capital, is the grand deposit of the fisheries in the North, and has between 16,000 and 20,000 inhabitants.

CHRISTIANA, a beautiful town about 30 miles from the sea, is the chief place for the exportation of Norwegian timber.

KONGSBERG, in the province of Aggherus, has a noted silver mine.

FREDERICSHALL, a frontier town between Norway and Sweden, is memorable for the death of Charles the XIIth, king of Sweden; whose career, the source of misery to his subjects, though of military fame to himself, was here terminated, in

\* Cobalt yields a fine powder blue, used in painting pottery and porcelain, and in colouring starch and paper.

† The magnet, a ferruginous stone, attracts iron, and as it points to the poles of the world, is used in a compass to guide ships. The asbestos is a fossil stone, of which is made a cloth endued with the property of remaining unconsumed in the fire. The bodies of the ancient Romans are supposed to have been wrapt in a species of the asbestos when placed on the funeral pyre. See Butler's Questions in the Roman Hist. art. Roman Funerals, in Part 2d.

‡ Baia, a city of Campania, in Italy, enjoyed a delightful situation, being open to a fine bay. It was the retreat of the great and wealthy from the bustle of ancient Rome.

1718, by the hand of one of his own officers, who shot him while besieging the fortress. The spot where he fell is marked by a simple wooden cross with his name and the date of the event.

The LOFODEN ISLES are separated from the coast of Norway by the West Fiord, an inlet remarkable for its great cod-fishery, the produce of which is sent to the Catholic countries of Europe for their religious fasts. Between 4000 and 5000 vessels, and 20,000 persons, are employed in this fishery.

MAELSTROM, S. of the Lofoden isles, is a whirlpool,\* hazardous at particular times; but its dangers have been exaggerated, as it may often be safely crossed in a boat.

*North Cape*, in the isle of Maggeroe, the last land of Europe, is in lat. 71°. 10'. 15". N. It is a long-extended headland or tongue of rock; its surface flat, but destitute of vegetation. The cliffs and caverns which surround the cape are very grand, but form a scene of desolation.

*Inhabitants.* The Norwegians have that love of freedom and independence of character which often distinguish the mountaineer from the inhabitant of more cultivated regions. They are manly, honest, and simple; and, though feeding on a poor diet, are a robust, healthy, and well-looking race. Their chief employments are hunting and fishing.

*Government.* Norway was united with Denmark, as a kingdom, in 1387, the heir to Norway having married Margaret, the heiress of Denmark; and since that period until the peace of 1815, it was governed by a Danish viceroy. By the treaty of Paris, the country was ceded to Sweden; with which kingdom it is now united: it has,

---

\* Whirlpools are formed by the currents of one stream, or powerful body of water, rapidly meeting those of another body of water, in long and narrow inlets, or among islands. The opposite forces produce a whirlpool. This is the origin of Maelstrom. The current out of the Baltic unites with that of the British sea, and running rapidly up the west coast of Norway, there meets the ebb tide. The conflicting waters then create a whirlpool.

however, its own laws and legislature. Christiana is the seat of government.

*Religion.* The Lutheran.

*Population.* Being a mountainous country, Norway has a thin population. In 1820, it contained 970,000 inhabitants.

---

## SWEDEN.

*Situation.* Sweden, which is in the North of Europe, formed the interior division of ancient *Scandinavia*. The far greater part is in the N. temperate zone; but Swedish Lapland is in the Frigid. The chief geographical features of Sweden are its mountains, lakes, and forests. The last two cover nearly half its surface. When it comprised, as it did in the beginning of the present century, the province of Finland, its shape bore a resemblance to that of a horse shoe.

*Boundaries.* Sweden is bounded on the N. by Norwegian Lapland; on the E. by the gulf of Bothnia and the Baltic; and on the S. and W. by portions of the Baltic and Norway.

*Extent.* It extends from about the 55th to the 68th deg. of N. lat., having a length of about 900 miles, and a breadth of from 100 to 200.

*Capital.* Stockholm, between the Baltic sea and lake Meler, in lat. 59. deg. N., and long. 18. E.

*Divisions.* Sweden contained the following provinces: \*  
1. Sweden Proper in the centre; *chief places*, Stockholm, the *cap.*, and Upsal. 2. Gothland in the S.; *chief places*, Gottenburg, the *cap.*, Calmar, Fahlun, and Carlscroon, a

---

\* By a recent regulation, Sweden has been divided into twenty-three provinces.

port on the Baltic. 3. Nordland, towards the N., *cap.* Gefla, on the gulf of Bothnia. 4. East Bothnia, *cap.* Ulca. 5. Finland, *cap.* Abo. 6. Swedish Lapland, *chief places*, Pithea, and Tornea, which is now a Russian town. East Bothnia and Finland were annexed to the Russian empire in 1809.

*Mountains.* The Dofrine. The loftiest of the Swedish summits is about 6600 feet high.

*Rivers.* The Dahl, in Dalecarlia; the Gotha, in W. Gothland; and the Tornea, in Swedish Lapland.

*Chief Lakes.* Wener and Weter, in Gothland; and Meler, in Sweden Proper.

*Islands.* Huen, in the Sound; Oeland and Gottland, in the Baltic.

*Surface.* Sweden has a long range of coast which, with that of Norway, exceeds 2000 miles. The country unites the grand and beautiful, having lofty rocks and mountains, dark forests, and smiling valleys. No region combines a greater variety of water scenery: clear and rapid streams, cataracts, and magnificent lakes, distinguish its surface.

*Climate.* The winter of Sweden is severe and long, lasting seven months and a half; while the summer, in consequence of the sun being so long above the horizon, is hot. There is no spring, summer rapidly succeeding winter. In October the lakes and rivers freeze, and snow falls; at the end of May, a sudden change occurs; the rivers thaw, the surface of the earth is uncovered, and the white, snowy mantle of winter is exchanged for the green robe of vegetation. In the southern districts, the length of the longest day is 17 hours and a half; and as the sun at that time scarcely ever quits the horizon, the midnight light is as powerful as any enjoyed in England at noon-day during December.



*Products and Commerce.* Sweden has been called the land of iron and wood. Its wealth consists in its mines, forests, and fisheries. Iron, of superior excellence, is the staple commodity; and in 1822 there were no less than 176 mines of that metal worked. Copper, saltpetre, and alum, are also found. The fir and pine trees, those hardy children of a cold climate, attain uncommon height in Sweden. They afford excellent timber, and from their roots principally are extracted a pitch and tar which, in the British dock yards, are esteemed superior to those of Russia and America. The most productive fishery in Europe was, until lately, that of herrings on the Swedish coast, particularly at Gottenburg, in which many thousand men and boats were employed.\*

*Places, &c.* STOCKHOLM, the capital, is built on seven rocky islands, connected by bridges, and stands in a singularly picturesque situation between an inlet of the Baltic and lake Meler. It has an extensive commerce, and a population of 90,000.

GOTHEBORG or GOTTENBORG, on the Gotha, from which it is named, is the second city of Sweden for commerce and population. The port, being seldöm closed by ice, and being without the Sound, is well placed for foreign commerce, and is the rendezvous of the Swedish East India ships.

UPSAL, N. of Stockholm, was the ancient capital of Sweden. Its cathedral is the largest church in the kingdom. It has a celebrated university, in which Linnæus taught botany; a greenhouse was the appropriate scene of his lectures :

“There he looked through Nature up to Nature’s God.”

Botany owes to him the arrangement and classification of plants under distinct tribes and families : hence he is called “the Father of Botany.” He was born in 1707, died in 1778, and was buried in the cathedral of Upsal.

---

\* 6000 barrels, each containing from 1200 to 1300 herrings, have been caught in one night.

DANNEMORA, N. W. of Upsal, has a mine which yields some of the best iron in the world.

FAHLUN, also N. W. of Upsal, has a copper-mine, formerly immensely productive.

CARLSCROON, in E. Gothland, is the usual station of the Swedish navy.

CALMAR, N. of Carls Kroon, gave its name to the treaty of 1397, by which the three northern crowns were united in the person of Margaret of Waldemar.

TORNEA, formerly the capital of Swedish Lapland on the Arctic Circle, derives fame from the visit of Maupertuis, the French philosopher, for the purpose of measuring a degree of the meridian, and of thereby ascertaining the true figure of the earth. A mile from the town is the spot where travellers usually go to see the sun at midnight at the summer solstice.

The island of HUEN had in it the observatory of the great astronomer, Tycho Brahe. Here he established the relative position of the fixed stars, perfected the theory of the moon, calculated the course of comets, and gave a new basis to astronomy. He was born in 1546, and died in 1601.

*Rivers.* The DAHL, the finest river of Sweden, consists of two streams, the E. and W. Dahl, which rise in the Dofrine mountains, give name to the province of Dalecarlia, and, after a course of 260 miles, enter the gulf of Bothnia near Gefle, where there is a cataract.

The GOTHIA issues out of lake Wener, and flows into the Cattégat near Gottenburg.

The TORNEA, in Swedish Lapland, issues from lake Kipsis at the foot of the Dofrine chain, and falls into the gulf of Bothnia.

*Lakes.* The lakes of Sweden are beautiful and magnificent. Wener, in the S., is the largest: it is between 90 and 100 miles long and 60 broad, and receives many rivers. The Gotha is its sole outlet. Lake Weter, E. of Wener, is equally long but narrower. The Motala is its outlet. A canal has been completed from Stockholm to Gotheborg, which, connecting lakes Meler, Weter, and Wener, with the river Gotha, saves a distance of 600 miles, and unites the Baltic with the German ocean. Sweden thus avoids the duties levied by the king of Denmark in the Sound.\*

---

\* See p. 25.

*Inhabitants.* The Swedes are a polite, lively, and social people, and have therefore been called the French of the North. Of Gothic origin, they inherit the courage and love of hospitality common to their ancestors. The lower classes are honest, temperate, and observant of religious duties. A Swede is rarely unmindful of his religion.

*Government.* Sweden was united to Denmark and Norway in 1387, under Margaret, and remained so until Gustavus Vasa expelled the Danes; since which it has been independent. The crown, which was made absolute in 1772, by Gustavus III., is now limited, the nobles, clergy, and citizens, forming a diet, and the people enjoying much liberty. The present sovereign, Charles XIV., who ascended the throne in 1818, is a Frenchman by birth, and was known with distinction in the French armies as General Bernadotte.

*Political rank.* Sweden is a power of the third rank. Its local character adapts it rather for a naval and commercial, than for a military state: the annexation of Norway, which increases its maritime strength, gives it a superiority over Denmark.

*Religion.* The Lutheran.

*Population.* A great part of Sweden being covered with forests and lakes, its population is comparatively small; it is, however, increasing; for an account given to the King in 1823, estimated it, exclusive of Finland, at 2,687,451 inhabitants.

*Language and Literature.* The Swedish language is a dialect of the Gothic, and has a great proportion of vowels. Almost every species of literature has been cultivated by Sweden, which has its learned societies. In natural philosophy Linnæus produced a revolution; and with respect to national history and political economy, the country boasts distinguished names. The first attachment of the Swedes

to literature was excited by Gustavus Adolphus, who conveyed to his country the books taken by him in the wars of Germany. Thus, as ancient Rome was polished by the pictures and statues which she carried home from Greece,\* Sweden was enlightened by the literary spoils of Germany.

*Laplanders.* The inhabitants of LAPLAND differ entirely from the Swedes in person, habits of life, and language. They are divided into those who lead a wandering life and those who live in towns. In size, they are the most diminutive race in Europe; the men seldom exceeding four feet and a half, and the women being even smaller. Those who lead a wandering life construct tents or cottages. The latter are composed of stems of trees placed in a conical form, and over them a cloth, manufactured by the natives themselves, is placed. Instead of a carpet, the earth is spread with the boughs of ever-green firs. The Laplanders derive their subsistence chiefly from hunting and fishing. The rein-deer constitutes both their solace and wealth; some of them possessing from 500 to 1000. The rein-deer, the mildest and most tractable of quadrupeds, supplies his master with food, clothing, and the means of conveyance. In winter, the Laplander lives on the fattest of the rein-deer; his summer diet consists of rein-deer milk and white cheese. Wrapped up in the skin of the rein-deer, the Laplander braves the intense cold of a polar sky, and is drawn on a sledge with amazing swiftness over the mountains by his faithful and obedient animal. The Laplanders are mild and tranquil in their temper; they are rarely moved to anger, still less do they indulge in a cruel, unforgiving spirit. Their greatest vice—one common to most inhabitants of cold regions—is a love of spirituous liquors. The language of Lapland is peculiarly soft and pleasing to the ear, it being full of vowels, and, for its sweetness, is well adapted to poetry.†

---

\* See Butler's Questions in Roman History, Index, Corinth, Part II.

† In Nos. 366 and 406 of the Spectator, two Lapland odes have been elegantly translated.

## DENMARK.\*

*Situation.* Denmark, a northern state of Europe, in the temperate zone, formed the southern part of ancient *Scandinavia*. Its peninsular portion was called *Cimbria*. The kingdom of Denmark now comprises the peninsula which contains N. and S. Jutland, with the province of Holstein, Zealand, and some islands in the Baltic. To it also belong the islands of Iceland and Faroe in the Atlantic, with part of Greenland in N. America.

*Boundaries.* Denmark is bounded on the N. by the Scaggerac sea, which divides it from Norway; on the S. by the kingdom of Hanover, from which it is separated by the Elbe; on the E. by the Cattegat sea, the Sound which parts it from Sweden and the Baltic; on the W. it has the German ocean flowing between it and Britain.

*Extent.* From the south border of Holstein to the Skaw, or north point of Jutland, Denmark extends from the 53d degree and a half to the 58th of N. lat. Its length is about 280 miles; and its greatest breadth, including the islands, is 200.

*Capital.* Copenhagen, on the eastern side of the isle of Zealand, in lat. 55 deg. 40 min. N., and long. 12 deg. 30 min. E., being about 4 degrees more north than London.

*Surface.* Denmark, which is almost uniformly level, has many upland moors and marshes, with rich pastures.

*Climate.* From its insular situation, Denmark enjoys a more temperate climate than might be expected from so northern a latitude. The air is moist and mild. The longest day is about 17 hours and a half.

---

\* *Den-mark*, that is the marches,† boundaries, and territories of the Danes.

---

† *March* implies a limit or confine.

*Products.* The products are wheat, oats, and barley; and Denmark being a flat country, with good pasturage, is well adapted for the rearing of horned cattle, of which more than 80,000 are annually sold. The Danish horses are much valued, and are purchased for the cavalry of Europe. Grain is exported; and flax, which thrives best in a moist and low soil, is extensively cultivated.

*Divisions.* 1. North Jutland, *cap.* Wiburg. 2. South Jutland, or Sleswick; *chief places*, Sleswick, the *cap.*, and Tonningen on the Eider. 3. Holstein; *chief places*, Kiel, the *cap.*, Lubec in the S. E., Altona, and Gluckstadt, both on the Elbe.

*Islands.* Zealand; *chief places*, Copenhagen, Elsinour, and Roschild. The island of Funen; *cap.* Odensee.

*Smaller Islands.* Laland, Langland, and Falster.

*Chief River.* The Eider, which separates Sleswick and Holstein, and falls into the North sea below Tonningen. A canal, 27 miles long, beginning a little N. of Kiel, and joining the Eider at Rendsburgh, unites the Baltic with the German ocean.

*Cape.* The Skaw is the N. point of Denmark.

*Straits.* The Sound, with the Great and Little Belt, which are the three entrances into the Baltic.

*Places.* COPENHAGEN, the royal residence, is one of the best built cities in the north of Europe. Its name, *Koebing-haven*, signifies the Merchants' port from its having formerly afforded refuge to merchant vessels when pursued by pirates. The population is about 100,000.

ELSINEUR stands at the entrance and narrowest part of the Sound, it being here only 2840 yards wide. Ships pay a small toll at this place to the king of Denmark, on their entrance into the Baltic, of which Denmark may be said to hold the keys.\* In

---

\* The toll is paid as a compensation for the light-houses kept by the king on the coasts. Between the years 1823 and 1824,

a garden near Elsinour, Hamlet's father is supposed to have been murdered, and hence it is called by his name. To this event we owe Shakspeare's fine philosophic drama of Hamlet.

ROSCHILD, the ancient capital of Denmark, is still the burial place of her sovereigns.

ALTONA, on the Elbe, near Hamburg, has a great commerce.

The island of FALSTER produces so much fruit that it is called the orchard of Denmark.

ICELAND, so named from its cold, is in the N. Atlantic, far to the W. of Norway, and chiefly between the 64th and 67th deg. of N. lat. Though mountainous and stony, it affords good pasturage. "Winter here holds his unrejoicing court;" but fire contends with cold for empire. Hecla, in the S. part of the island, is one of the greatest of the few volcanic mountains in Europe. Iceland has also fountains of boiling water, which are used by the natives medicinally, and to cook their victuals without fire. They form magnificent *jets*; and the most celebrated, that of Geyser, near Skalholt, throws up columns of water to the height of 100 feet. The Iceland falcons are esteemed the best in Europe; and considerable numbers were formerly sent to Copenhagen for the royal amusement of falconry: but this tribute is no longer demanded. Skalholt is usually called the capital of Iceland, but Reikiavik is the best town.

THE FAROE ISLES are between Iceland and Norway, in about 62 deg. of N. lat.

*Inhabitants.* The Danes were formerly a spirited and enterprising nation. Their flag triumphed in the North seas; and the annals of our own country attest their valour and naval prowess; but slavery has exercised its usual depressing influence on the minds and hearts of the people, who have degenerated from the warlike spirit of their ancestors.

*Government.* The crown of Denmark is hereditary and its power absolute. Frederic VI., the present king, was born in 1768, and ascended the throne in 1818. He is the son

---

there passed through the Sound, to and from the Baltic, 10,518 ships. Of these, 3540 were British.

of Christian VII., who married Matilda,\* the youngest sister of George III., late king of Great Britain. The crown was elective and limited until 1660, when the people, oppressed by a proud nobility and plundered by a rapacious clergy, intent on "filthy lucre," voluntarily surrendered their rights and liberties to Frederic III., then King; thus wisely preferring one tyrant to many. The government is, however, at present, mildly administered.

*Political rank.* Denmark is scarcely a nation of the second order; and of the three northern states of Europe is the least powerful. Its geographical position designs it for commercial and maritime enterprise.

*Religion and Population.* The Lutheran is the established religion. The population is about two millions.

## RUSSIA.

The Russian empire, which, for extent, is the greatest in the world, occupies a vast portion of Europe, and all the northern part of Asia. It reaches from the Baltic on the west to the Pacific on the east, a space of more than 9000 miles, and extends from the 18th to the 170th degree of E. longitude.

### EUROPEAN RUSSIA.

*Situation.* Though Muscovy or European Russia extends far to the south, it ranks among the northern coun-

\* Matilda, the queen, was suddenly seized in 1772, under, it is generally thought, a false accusation, confined as a state prisoner, and afterwards banished the kingdom. She died in 1778, at Zell, in Germany. The counts Struensee and Brandt, the former prime minister, and the latter the queen's physician, being implicated in the accusation, were beheaded.



tries of Europe. A small portion, the extreme upper one, lies in the Frigid zone; the rest is in the N. temperate. It formed part of the ancient Sarmatia.

*Boundaries.* Russia in Europe is bounded on the N. by the Frozen ocean and the White sea; on the S. by Turkey, the Black sea, and the sea of Asoph; on the E. by Asiatic Russia, from which it is separated by the Uralian chain; and on the W. by Sweden, from which it is divided by the gulf of Bothnia and the river Tornea in Swedish Lapland.

*Extent.* Reckoning from the N. extremity of Russian Lapland to the S. point of Crim Tartary, or Taurida, Russia in Europe lies between the 68th and 45th deg. of N. lat. Its length is about 1600 English miles, and its middle breadth nearly 1000.

*Capital.* St. Petersburg on the Neva, and near the gulf of Finland, in lat. 60 deg. N., and long. 30 deg. E., being about eight degrees and a half north of London.

*Surface.* Russia is for the most part a vast level. In the south are extensive *steppes*, or continued grassy plains. The soil, near the Don and Wolga, is rich. The range of coast is not very extensive, and as the northern shores are frozen in winter, they are accessible only part of the year.

*Climate.* As European Russia extends through twenty-three degrees of latitude, it has a variety of climate; but cold is its prevailing character. In the north the cold is intense, and water thrown up into the air, freezes before it falls on the ground. The middle tracts, though in the same parallel as Great Britain, are also cold, by reason of their distance from the sea. The extreme south part alone enjoys a delightful climate. In the N. the longest day is of two months' duration, and in the S. of 14 hours' and a half.

*Products and Exports.* Russia exports timber, pitch, and tar, the produce of its immense forests of fir-trees. Hemp and flax, hides, tallow, and marine stores, form also part of its commerce; as does the red leather, called Russian leather, used, among other purposes, as a superior binding for books. A great portion of the foreign trade of Russia is carried on by the English.

*Divisions.* An ukase,\* recently issued by the emperor Alexander, has divided the Russian empire, European and Asiatic, into 51 governments. The whole of 41, and part of four others, belong to Europe. Each government has a capital of the same name.

The following are the principal :

NORTHERN GOVERNMENTS.

Archangel.	Novogorod.
Olonetz.	Petersburgh.
Vyburg.	Revel.
Vologda.	

CENTRAL.

Perme (partly in Asia).	Vladimir.
Vyatka.	Moscow.
Kostroma.	Smolensk.
Yaroslav.	Simbirsk (partly in Asia).
Tver.	Penza.
Pskov.	Riadan.
Riga.	Tula.
Kasan.	Kalouga.
Nisney Novogorod.	

SOUTHERN.

(Beginning on the East.)

Saratov (partly in Asia).	Tchernigof.
Tambov.	Kiev.

---

\* Edicts of the Russian sovereign are called ukases.

Orel.	Katharinoslov.
Voronetz.	Cherson.
Karkov.	Taurida or Crimea.
Novogorod Sieverskof.	

To these may be added the country of the Don Cossacks, whose chief town is Tcherkask.

*Chief Places.* St. Petersburg, Moscow, in the centre of Russia; Archangel, a port on the White sea; Riga and Revel, ports on the Baltic; and Cherson, Odessa, and Sebastapol on the Black sea.

*Mountains.* Those of Olonetz, between Swedish and Russian Finland; the Oural or Uralian, between Europe and Asia; and the Valdai, between Moscow and St. Petersburg. The Uralian extend from the 50th to the 67th deg. of N. lat.

*Lakes.* Lakes Ladoga and Onega, E. of Petersburg. Ladoga, the largest lake in Europe, is 130 miles long and 75 broad. Its waters are discharged into the gulf of Bothnia, by the Neva.

*Islands.* Cronstadt, near Petersburg; Oesel and Dago, in the Baltic; and Aland, which marks the entrance to the gulf of Bothnia.

*Gulfs.* The gulfs of Bothnia, Finland, and Riga.

*Rivers.* The Wolga, the Don or Tanais, the Northern and Western Dwina, the Nieper or Boristhenes, and the Niester.

*Cities.* ST. PETERSBURGH is the wonderful creation of Peter the Great, who began to erect it in 1703. His design in forming this new seat of empire was to create a navy and foreign commerce, and to approach nearer to the circle of European politics. It has some noble structures: splendid palaces crown the banks, which formerly had only fishing huts. The population is about 300,000.

Moscow, the former Russian capital, on the Mosqua, and in lat. 55 N., is, from its central position, well placed for inland

trade, both Asiatic and European. In its cathedral the sovereigns were crowned. Bonaparte took Moscow in 1813, but the inhabitants, to prevent his wintering in the heart of Russia, voluntarily burnt their city, and by thus leaving the French army to the mercy of a Russian winter, caused its destruction, and thereby saved Europe. At Moscow was born, in 1672, Peter the Great; who has gained immortality by promoting the civilization of his subjects.

ARCHANGEL, on the northern Dwina, is the most commercial port in the N. of Russia.

RIGA, on the western Dwina, and near the gulf of the same name, is the second in rank among the Russian trading ports.

CRONSTADT, or the city of the Crown, on Retusari island, and 12 miles from Petersburg, is the chief station of the Russian Baltic fleet.

CHERSON, in the S. of Russia, and on the Nieper, is a commercial and naval port. Here, in 1790, died the philanthropic HOWARD, who chose a peculiar and untrodden path for the exercise of his benevolence, that of visiting prisons, and mitigating the sorrows of their unhappy inmates. A monument has been erected to him in St. Paul's cathedral.

ODESSA, on the Black sea, between the Niester and Nieper, is a port of great rising prosperity. Its chief export is corn.

TULA, S. of Moscow, being the great emporium for hardware, is called the Birmingham of Russia.

SEBASTAPOL, in the S. W. part of the Crimea, is the chief station of the Russian navy on the Black sea.

*Rivers.* The WOLGA, the largest river of Europe, rises in the Valdai mountains, not far from Tver, near to lat. 56. It passes Yaroslaf, Kostroma, Novogorod, and Kazan, and, after a devious course of 1700 miles across Russia, falls into the Caspian sea, near Astrachan, in Asia.

The DON, the Tanais of the ancients, rises near Tula, and, having formed a boundary between Europe and Asia, enters the sea of Asoph.

The NIEPER, the ancient BORISTHENES, the largest river of western Russia, rises in Smolensk, passes Kiow, and flows into the Black sea near Cherson.

The NIESTER rises in Galicia, (the Austrian part of Poland,)

flows by Bender, forms a boundary between Turkey and Russia, and enters the Black sea.

The northern DWINA has its source in Vologda, and falls into the White sea near Archangel.

The western DWINA, which rises in the government of Tver, joins the Baltic near Riga.

*Chief Canals.* Those of Vishuei-Voloshok and Ladoga. The former, communicating between Astracan and St. Petersburg, unites the Twertza, running into the Wolga, with the Shlina, which communicates by other rivers with lake Ladoga, and thence with the Neva and gulf of Finland, a distance of 1334 miles. Ladoga canal, which winds round that lake, extends from the river Volkof to the Neva. These two canals maintain an intercourse between the northern and southern provinces of this vast empire. No capital in Europe is supplied with provisions from such distant quarters as St. Petersburg.

*Inhabitants.* The people of this extensive region are, for the most part, of Slavonic blood and Asiatic origin. The Russian has in his character steadiness mixed with gaiety and good humour; and is patient under suffering. If he is sometimes supple, mean, and cunning, his faults arise from that abject submission and poverty which accompany despotism and feudal sway. The Russian is twice a slave: he is the subject of a despotic monarch, and the vassal of a lord who owns him with his soil.

*Government.* The Russian monarchy is absolute. The sovereign, who has the highest earthly dignity, that of emperor, is also styled Czar and Autocrat of all the Russias. The present emperor, Alexander I., under whose paternal sceptre Russia is rapidly improving, was born in 1777, and ascended the throne in 1801.

*Political rank.* Russia is one of the four leading powers of Europe; and its territory being remarkably compact and united, is secure from foreign foes. Having a line of coast on the Baltic and the Euxine, which has

been recently augmented by the acquisition of Finland, Russia has considerable naval strength, but is chiefly great as a military power.

*Religion.* That of the Greek church, which is a schism from the Latin,\* from which it differs in some doctrinal points; saints are held in veneration, and painted images of them, but no statues, are suffered in the churches.

*Population.* European Russia has about 37 millions of inhabitants.

## BRITISH ISLES, or the UNITED KINGDOM.

*Situation.* The British Isles, or United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, are in the west of Europe, and upper portion of the N. temperate zone. The German ocean and English channel separate them from the continent. Whilst the south east part of England is distant only 18 miles and a half from the French coast,† and the eastern counties of Essex and Suffolk are but 90 miles from the shores of Holland, the northern part of Scotland is about 130 miles from Norway.

### GREAT BRITAIN.

GREAT BRITAIN, the largest island known to the ancients,‡ the greatest in size of any in Europe, and the most important in the whole world, is divided into England, Scotland, and Wales.

\* See the Rev. Dr. Evans's Sketch of Religious Denominations.

† Cape Grisnez, about 12 miles to the west of Calais, in France, and 18 miles and a half from Dover, is the nearest point of the continent to England.

‡ See Butler's Questions in Roman Hist., Agricola, in the Index, Part II.

*Extent.* From the 50th to the 58th deg. of N. lat., and from 2 deg. of E. to 6 of W. long. Its length is 580 miles, its breadth 370, and if the numerous inlets are followed, the coast measures not less than 2000 miles.

## ENGLAND.

*Situation.* England, is the largest and most southern part of Great Britain. Its general shape is triangular.

*Boundaries.* It is bounded on the N. by Scotland, from which it is separated by the river Tweed, the Cheviot Hills, and the Solway Frith; on the S. by the English channel, which divides it from France; on the E. by the German ocean or North sea; and on the W. by St. George's channel and the Irish sea, between it and Ireland.

*Extent.* England extends from the 50th to the 56th deg. of N. lat., and from the 2d deg. of east to the 6th of west long. It is 360 miles long from north to south, that is, from Berwick-on-Tweed to the Isle of Wight; and 300 miles broad from the North Foreland in Kent, to the Land's End in Cornwall.

*Capital.* London, on the Thames, in the county of Middlesex, lat. 51 deg. 30 min. N., and long. 0. It is the largest, most populous, and richest city in Europe.

*Surface.* Various bays and inlets of the sea are formed on the coast of England. In the interior, the northern districts are bleak and comparatively barren; the central and southern are in general fertile. The eastern portion is in many parts sandy and marshy. To the west, Wales is a mountainous region. England has grand and beautiful scenery, and no country is clothed with a verdure so charming and permanent:

Its hills are green, its woods and prospects fair,  
Its meadows fertile.

*Climate.* Seated in a northern part of the Temperate zone, England has not a very warm climate; and it has been said with some truth, that our island is a corner of the earth which the sun appears to light with regret. Many and sudden changes in the weather occur, and westerly winds from the Atlantic frequently bring with them thick mists and heavy rains. Yet the country is on the whole healthy, and it is a known fact that its salubrity is improving and mortality diminishing; more people living now to an advanced age than formerly. The longest day at London is of  $16\frac{1}{2}$  hours, and the shortest of  $7\frac{1}{2}$  hours.

*Products.* Wool is the staple commodity of England, which also abounds in coal, and has copper, tin, lead, and iron. Its cattle, corn, and cheese, are of superior quality, and it has numerous manufactures, particularly in hardware, silk, and cotton goods.

*Divisions.* England has 40 counties.

## NORTHERN.

- |                    |                |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. Northumberland. | 4. Durham.     |
| 2. Cumberland.     | 5. Yorkshire.  |
| 3. Westmoreland.   | 6. Lancashire. |

## MIDLAND.

- | <i>Westward.</i>    | <i>Eastward.</i>     |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Cheshire.        | 1. Nottinghamshire.  |
| 2. Derbyshire.      | 2. Lincolnshire.     |
| 3. Shropshire.      | 3. Leicestershire.   |
| 4. Staffordshire.   | 4. Rutlandshire.     |
| 5. Herefordshire.   | 5. Northamptonshire. |
| 6. Worcestershire.  | 6. Huntingdonshire.  |
| 7. Warwickshire.    | 7. Buckinghamshire.  |
| 8. Monmouthshire.   | 8. Bedfordshire.     |
| 9. Gloucestershire. |                      |
| 10. Oxfordshire.    |                      |



## ENGLAND.

## EASTERN.

- |             |  |                    |
|-------------|--|--------------------|
| 1. Norfolk. |  | 4. Cambridgeshire. |
| 2. Suffolk. |  | 5. Hertfordshire.  |
| 3. Essex.   |  | 6. Middlesex.      |

## SOUTHERN.

- |            |  |               |
|------------|--|---------------|
| 1. Kent.   |  | 4. Berkshire. |
| 2. Surry.  |  | 5. Hampshire. |
| 3. Sussex. |  | 6. Wiltshire. |

## WESTERN.

- |                   |  |                |
|-------------------|--|----------------|
| 1. Dorsetshire.   |  | 3. Devonshire. |
| 2. Somersetshire. |  | 4. Cornwall.   |

*Hills and Mountains.* The Cheviot, one of the three natural boundaries between England and Scotland; the Skiddaw, in Cumberland; the Wolds, in the N. W. of Yorkshire; the Peak, in the N. W. of Derbyshire; the Malvern, in the S. W. of Worcestershire, between that county and Herefordshire; the Wrekin, in Shropshire; the Chiltern, in the counties of Berks, Bucks, and Bedford; and the Mendip, in the N. E. of Somersetshire.

*Rivers.* The Thames, Severn, Humber, Trent, Mersey, the Great and the Northern Ouse.

*Chief Forests.* The New Forest, in the S. W. part of Hampshire; Dean Forest, in the W. part of Gloucestershire; Sherwood Forest, in the central and western part of Nottinghamshire; and Windsor Forest, in Berkshire. Sherwood Forest was the scene of Robin Hood's adventures.

*Lakes.* Windermere or Winandermere, between Westmoreland and Lancashire; Derwent Water or Keswick Lake, and Coniston, in Lancashire. Windermere, the largest lake in England, is about 10 miles long, and from one to two broad.

*Capes.* Land's End and Lizard Point, in Cornwall; Spurnhead and Flamboroughhead, in Yorkshire; N. and S. Foreland, in Kent; and Lowestoffe, in Suffolk. The Land's End is the most western, Lizard Point the most southern, and Lowestoffe the most eastern point of Great Britain. Lizard Point is a little below the 50th deg. of N. lat.

*Straits and Bays.* The strait of Dover, between England and France; Menai strait, between the isle of Anglesea and Caernarvonshire, in N. Wales; Torbay, in Devonshire, which was the landing-place of William III. in 1688, at the time of the glorious Revolution.

### NORTHERN COUNTIES.

**NORTHUMBERLAND**, the most northern of the English counties, is so named from being N. of the Humber.\* Placed on the borders of Scotland, it has often been the scene of warfare between the two kingdoms; and has therefore many castles. *Chief places*, Newcastle, the *cap.*, on the Tyne, Berwick-on-the-Tweed, and Shields.

**NEWCASTLE** is noted for coals and salmon. Its collieries, which are from five to eighteen miles above the town, supply London with coals,† and have proved a richer mine of wealth to Britain, than the mines of Peru have been to Spain. At Newcastle was born, in 1721, "the Bard of Tyne," Akenside, author of that fine philosophic poem, "The Pleasures of the Imagination."

**BERWICK**, being a frontier town, is historically known as the frequent subject of dispute between the sovereigns of England and Scotland when they foolishly thought it their interest to injure each other as much as possible. It was then termed the

\* North-Humber-land; that is, land north of the Humber.

† According to a return made to the Court of Common Council, the consumption of coals amounted, in 1824, to 1,524,807 chaldrons.

Key to the two kingdoms. Berwick is now more agreeably known for its eggs and salmon fishery.

ALNWICK in this county has a castle, the seat of the Duke of Northumberland, which is a fine specimen of the baronial strength and grandeur of feudal times.

CUMBERLAND. This county has beautiful lakes, and more Roman antiquities than any other in England. Among them is Adrian's Wall, which passed through the county, and crossed the whole island from sea to sea, about 100 miles.\* *Chief places*, Carlisle, the *cap.*, on the Eden; Penrith; and Whitehaven, on the sea.

WESTMORELAND. Its name is descriptive of its nature.† It has charming lakes, large slate quarries, and excellent hams. *Chief places*, Appleby, the *cap.*, on the Eden, and Kendal.

DURHAM. Durham, which abounds in coals and iron, is separated from Northumberland by the Tyne, and from Yorkshire by the Tees. *Chief places*, Durham, the *cap.*, on the Wear, Stockton-upon-Tees, and Sunderland.

DURHAM is noted for mustard. At NEVIL'S CROSS, near it, Philippa, queen of Edward III., took David Bruce, King of Scotland, prisoner, in 1346. Philippa had "*the heart to feel,‡ and yet the soul to dare.*"

YORKSHIRE is the largest county in England, and double the size of any other, being 100 miles long and 80 broad. It consists of three parts called Ridings.

NORTH RIDING. *Chief places*, Scarborough and Whitby.

EAST RIDING. *Chief place*, Hull upon the Humber.

WEST RIDING. *Chief places*, York, on the Ouse, the

\* See Butler's Questions in Roman Hist., reign of Adrian.

† West-moor-land, a western region of naked mountains and barren moors.

‡ Witness her intercession for the brave citizens of Calais.

cap. of the county; Leeds, Halifax, Wakefield, Sheffield, and Doncaster.

SCARBOROUGH, placed in the recesses of a beautiful bay and on a rocky cliff, has chalybeate and saline springs.

WHITBY has the best harbour in Yorkshire. Here was born the greatest of navigators, Captain Cook, who went three times round the world.

HULL UPON THE HUMBER, called also Kingston-upon-Hull, is the fourth in rank among the commercial ports\* of England. Its situation on the German ocean is convenient for a trade with Holland, the Baltic, and the Northern nations; while its connexion with the Yorkshire rivers and canals, and with the Trent more to the south, gives it a great inland trade.

The cathedral of YORK is a grand monument of gothic architecture.

LEEDS is the chief of the clothing towns.

POMFRET or PONTEFRAC. In its castle the weak and unfortunate Richard II. was cruelly murdered.

DONCASTER is noted for its races, and SHEFFIELD for hardware and cutlery goods.

LANCASHIRE, a commercial and manufacturing district, has a great cotton trade, and grows immense quantities of potatoes. It is, almost more than any other county, subject to rain, occasioned by the frequent clouds which in their passage from the Atlantic, are here first stopped by the inland ridge of hills. *Chief places*, Lancaster, the cap., Liverpool, and Manchester.

In LANCASTER, cabinet-ware is made. Its ready communication with the Atlantic adapts it for the importation of mahogany from America.

LIVERPOOL, on the Mersey, the second in rank of the com-

---

\* By a commercial port is meant one appropriated to commerce and frequented by merchant ships. A naval port is a station for the navy and where fleets are equipped. London, Liverpool, and Bristol, are commercial, Portsmouth and Plymouth are naval ports.

mercial ports of England, trades with all the world, but more particularly with Ireland, the American continent, and the West Indies, for which it is well placed.

MANCHESTER, a large and wealthy town and the second in England for population, is the centre of the cotton-trade. The cotton is chiefly imported at Liverpool.\*

### MIDLAND COUNTIES.

**CHESHIRE.** Three-fourths of the county are laid out in pasture land, chiefly for cows. Its cheese and salt are much valued. The Duke of Bridgewater's canal, constructed by the celebrated engineer Brindley, has its principal course in Cheshire. *Chief places*, Chester, the *cap.*, on the Dee, and Nantwich.

CHESTER gives the title of Earl to the Prince of Wales. It has two annual fairs remarkable for the sale of Irish linen.

NAMPTWICH has salt.†

**DERBYSHIRE** is distinguished for its natural curiosities: its spars are beautiful. *Chief places*, Derby, the *cap.*, on the Derwent, Chesterfield, Buxton, and Matlock.

DERBY has fine porcelain with ornamental articles, and a silk-mill, the first of the kind erected in England. The model was brought from Italy by Sir Thomas Lombe, in 1737.—Wright, the painter, was born, and died, at Derby. He excelled in the contrasted effects of light and shade as found in moon-light scenes, volcanic eruptions, and a smith's forge as seen at night.—At DERBY also was born Flamstead, the astronomer, after whom the Observatory in Greenwich Park was named.

MATLOCK is distinguished by its warm baths and romantic situation.

\* In 1823, there were 668,400 bags of cotton imported at Liverpool; nine-tenths of the quantity imported there go to Manchester and the neighbouring districts.

† The terminating syllable *wich* means a salt-spring: thus, Nantwich and Middlewich in Cheshire, and Droitwich in Worcestershire, are noted for their salt-pits.

SHROPSHIRE or SALOP is divided into two nearly equal parts by the Severn. *Chief places*, Shrewsbury, the *cap.*, on the Severn, Bridgenorth, and Ludlow.

STAFFORDSHIRE has many potteries and iron works, and its ale is the finest in England. The principal seat of the potteries is near Newcastle-under-Line. Mr. Wedgwood, the proprietor of one of them, acquired eminence by the classic taste displayed in the manufacture which bears his name. *Chief places*, Stafford, the *cap.*, Litchfield, Wolverhampton, and Burton, famous for ale.

LITCHFIELD gave birth, in 1709, to Dr. Johnson, the greatest literary character of his time. In its elegant cathedral has recently been placed the beautiful piece of sculpture by Chantrey representing two female children lying on the same couch in sisterly affection, lovely and placid in the sleep of death.

HEREFORDSHIRE. Of this county, which unites the fertile with the picturesque, it is commonly said by the inhabitants, that it is noted for the four *W*'s, for wheat, wool, wood, and water. To these may be added cider. At the time of the apple blossoming, Herefordshire has the appearance of a beautiful garden. *Chief places*, Hereford, the *cap.*, on the Wye, Ross, and Leominster.

HEREFORD has a cathedral, in which is buried Phillips, the poet, who died in 1708. His chief poem is "Cider," a didactic piece, which teaches the process of making that beverage.

Ross, on the Wye, was the residence of the benevolent John Kyrie, called "the Man of Ross," whose charitable deeds have been sung by Pope. Out of £500 a-year, he reserved only £50 for his own use,

WORCESTERSHIRE is noted for hops, cider, and perry. *Chief places*, Worcester, the *cap.*, on the Severn, Evesham, and Kidderminster.

WORCESTER,\* a large and handsome city, has a manufacture

---

\* At Worcester was born Oct. 12, 1748, the late Mr. Butler, who devoted a long life to the instruction of the rising generation,

of gloves and elegant china-ware. As a great number of roads meet here, it is a place of communication between England and central Wales. In Worcester cathedral King John is buried. Near the city Cromwell gained his crowning victory over Charles II. in 1650. Charles saved himself in the oak tree after this battle.

KIDDERMINSTER has a carpet manufactory.

**WARWICKSHIRE** is the most inland and central of the English counties. *Chief places*, Warwick, the *cap.*, on the Avon, Birmingham, and Coventry.

WARWICK has a noble castle ; one of the best existing memorials of the days when the proud and turbulent barons exercised feudal government over their vassals, and, shutting themselves up in their fortified mansions, defied the sovereign.

BIRMINGHAM, one of the largest, most populous, and richest towns in the kingdom, is celebrated for hardware and a variety of useful and ornamental articles. It has therefore been called the toy-shop of Europe, and a nursery of the arts and sciences. At Soho, near the entrance of the town, Watt and Boulton established their great manufactory for that wonder of the age, the steam-engine.

COVENTRY, which has a riband trade, is the most central and inland town of England.

STRATFORD-UPON-AVON gave birth to Shakspeare, called therefore "the Bard of Avon." He was perhaps the greatest genius Nature ever produced. Here he first conceived those writings which have been the wonder of after ages, and here he happily spent the decline of life, when he had retired from the busy world whose manners he has so well portrayed.

KENILWORTH, between Warwick and Coventry, is renowned for its castle, where the Earl of Leicester entertained Queen Elizabeth with royal magnificence for nineteen days.

MONMOUTHSHIRE, one of the most picturesque counties in England, was formerly a part of Wales, from which

---

and conferred upon it a yet more durable benefit by many ingenious and useful publications. A Memoir of Mr. Butler, by his son, the author of this work, appeared in the Monthly Repository and in the Gentleman's and Monthly Magazines for Oct. 1822.

it is separated by the Wye. *Chief places*, Monmouth, the *cap.*, on the Wye, and Chepstow.

MONMOUTH gave birth to Henry V., the conqueror of France.

At PONTYPOOL is made the ware called after its name.

Near CHEPSTOW, at the confluence of the Wye and Severn, the tide rises higher than in any other part of Britain.\*

GLOUCESTERSHIRE is divided by the Wye from Monmouthshire. It is noted for cheese and the woollen manufacture. *Chief places*, Gloucester, the *cap.*, on the Severn, Tewkesbury, Cheltenham, Cirencester, and part of Bristol.

GLOUCESTER† has a noble cathedral, in which Edward II. is buried. This city had a great pin manufacture, now on the decline. Upwards of 52 millions have been made in a week.

BERKELEY has a castle in which Edward II. was murdered. Near Cirencester the Thames rises.

OXFORDSHIRE or OXON. This county has a very irregular form. *Chief places*, Oxford, the *cap.*, on the Isis, Banbury, Woodstock, and Henley on Thames.

OXFORD contains the finest university in the world.

WOODSTOCK is noted for gloves and ornamental steel articles. In a bower at this place resided the unfortunate beauty, Fair Rosamond, favourite of Henry II.; and here she fell a victim, by poison, to the jealousy of his queen. At Woodstock is **BLenheim House**, a magnificent palace, designed by the architect Vanbrugh,

\* The grand tide of the ocean, which comes from the south, being broken by the Land's End in Cornwall, ascends the Irish Channel, filling the Bristol Channel in its progress, where the confinement of the shores causes an accumulation that gives a rise of forty feet in King's Road.

† The termination *cester* or *chester*, found in the names of many English towns, is a corruption of the Latin word *castrum*, (a fortified place,) which the Roman dominion established and rendered familiar in Britain, and which, under the Anglo-Saxons, having taken the form of *ceaster*, has become *cester* or *chester* indifferently. Places having this termination have been Roman military stations. **D'ANVILLE.**



and built as a national reward to the duke of Marlborough for his great victories over the French in queen Anne's reign, particularly at Blenheim, in Germany.

**NOTTINGHAMSHIRE** has of old been famous for bread and beer. *Chief places*, Nottingham, the *cap.*, on the Trent, Newark, and Mansfield.

NOTTINGHAM is noted for ale and stockings.

At NEWARK UPON-TRENT King John terminated a life of folly, and therefore of sorrow.

**LINCOLNSHIRE** is the third in size among the English counties, and has large fens. *Chief places*, Lincoln, the *cap.*, Boston, and Grantham.

Near GRANTHAM was born, in 1642, that great glory of philosophy, Sir Isaac Newton.

**LEICESTERSHIRE** is a grazing county, and breeds finer cattle than any other part of England. *Chief places*, Leicester, the *cap.*, and Melton Mowbray.

LEICESTER has a great stocking trade. Near it is BOSWORTH Field, where, in 1485, Richard III. lost his crown and life. In Leicester Abbey, died in 1530, the "fallen child of honour," Cardinal Wolsey, a striking proof of the caprice of princes, and the dangers of ambition.

**RUTLANDSHIRE**, the smallest county in England, is only 15 miles long and 12 broad. *Chief place*, Oakham.

**NORTHAMPTONSHIRE** has more counties bordering on it than any other in England. *Chief places*, Northampton, the *cap.*, on the Nen, Peterborough, and Daventry.

At FOTHERINGAY CASTLE, in this county, Mary queen of Scots was beheaded, in 1587. She was buried at Peterborough, but afterwards removed to Westminster Abbey, where she reposes not far from her persecutor queen Elizabeth. Thus death brings together those who could not agree in life.

**HUNTINGDONSHIRE**. As the greater part of this county had been a forest, and was well adapted for the chase, it

was called Huntingdonshire. *Chief places*, Huntingdon, the *cap.*, on the Ouse, and St. Ives.

HUNTINGDON gave birth to Oliver Cromwell.

BUCKINGHAMSHIRE or BUCKS. Lace and paper are its chief manufactures. *Chief places*, Buckingham, on the Ouse, Aylesbury, and Eton, on the Thames.

STOWE Gardens, near Buckingham, are the finest in England, and contain an area of 400 acres, encircled by a noble boundary.

ETON has a distinguished college or public school, founded by that munificent patron of learning Henry VI. Gray, who here received his early education, has celebrated it in an ode full of genius and pathos.

BEDFORDSHIRE trades in lace and malt. *Chief places*, Bedford, the *cap.*, on the Ouse, Woburn, and Dunstable.

WOBURN is noted for fuller's earth, and for its abbey, the magnificent seat of the duke of Bedford.

DUNSTABLE is famous for larks and straw hats.

Near LUTON rises the river LEA, called by Milton, "the sedgy Lea." It flows into the Thames near Limehouse, an eastern suburb of London.

### EASTERN COUNTIES.

NORFOLK has a very compact form, presenting an almost unbroken line to the ocean. It is an agricultural district, abounds with game, and is as much noted for turkeys as Lincolnshire is for geese. Norfolk has more parishes than any other English county. *Chief places*, Norwich, the *cap.*, on the Yare, Yarmouth, and Lynn Regis.

NORWICH manufactures shawls, stuffs, and bombazines.

YARMOUTH, situated, as its name imports, at the mouth of the Yare,\* has a great commerce with Holland and the northern nations of Europe, and a rich herring and mackerel fishery.

---

\* The names of places often mark their locality: thus, Yarmouth is at the mouth of the Yare, Dartmouth at that of the

**SUFFOLK**, an agricultural district, which in many parts resembles Flanders, is divided by the Stour from Essex. *Chief places*, Ipswich, the *cap.*, on the Orwell, and Bury, or St. Edmondsbury.

IPSWICH trades in malt. It gave birth to two persons whose lives and deaths were of a very different character—to Cardinal Wolsey, and to Firmin, the philanthropist. The former sought worldly riches and grandeur, with the smiles of an earthly sovereign: he obtained them; but, being afterwards stripped of his heart's desire, died a mortifying spectacle of fallen greatness, destitute of comfort in this life and of hope in the next.—The latter “laid up riches where the moth does not corrupt;” sought the favour of his heavenly Master by acts of benevolence; lived in faith, and died in peace and hope.

**ESSEX**, an agricultural district, is remarkable for butter, saffron, and the numerous calves which it breeds. *Chief places*, Chelmsford, the *cap.*, Colchester, and Harwich.

NEAR COLCHESTER, which has a baize manufacture, are large oyster beds.

FROM HARWICH the packet boats sail to Helvoetsluys, in Holland.

**CAMBRIDGESHIRE**. The figure of this county somewhat resembles that of the human ear. *Chief places*, Cambridge, the *cap.*, on the Cam, Ely, and Newmarket.

CAMBRIDGE has one of the two universities in England.

NEWMARKET is noted for horse-races.

**HERTFORDSHIRE** or **HERTS** has fine wheat, trades extensively in malt, and abounds with elegant country seats. *Chief places*, Hertford, the *cap.*, on the Lea, St. Albans, and Ware.

ST. ALBANS, the ancient Verulam, older than even London itself, is rich in antiquities. In its large and venerable abbey is

---

Dart, Exeter on the river Exe, and Falmouth at the mouth of the Fal.

buried Humphrey the good Duke of Gloucester, murdered in the reign of Henry VI., at the instigation of Cardinal Beaufort. At St. Albans were fought two battles between the rival houses of York and Lancaster.

**MIDDLESEX.** *Chief places*, London, the capital of the British empire; Brentford, Uxbridge, Kensington, Hampton Court, Hackney, Islington, and Hampstead.

LONDON, WESTMINSTER, and SOUTHWARK, form one city, which may altogether be reckoned the most important city in the world. Its commerce and wealth are unrivalled. The most remarkable buildings are, its fine bridges, the Tower, the Royal Exchange, the Bank of England, the Mansion House for the Lord Mayor, Guildhall, Somerset House, Westminster Hall, (the longest covered place in England which is not supported by pillars,) and the churches, particularly St. Paul's and Westminster Abbey. London, including about 50 villages and hamlets, closely connected, is 10 miles long and 5 broad, and 30 miles in circumference. It has 10,000 streets, squares, lanes, alleys, and courts, and nearly 200 parishes. It is the largest and most populous city in Europe, having about a million of inhabitants.

KENSINGTON and HAMPTON COURT are royal palaces: the former is seated in the midst of fine gardens; the latter was built by cardinal Wolsey, and presented by him to his royal master, Henry VIII. This was, perhaps, the most splendid gift ever made by a subject to a sovereign.

### SOUTHERN COUNTIES.

KENT produces hops, apples, and cherries, and has wealthy yeomen. *Chief places*, Canterbury, the cap., Maidstone, Rochester and Chatham, on the Medway, and Dover, on the sea.

CANTERBURY is famed for brawn and hops. Its archbishop is the metropolitan of the English church. In its cathedral Becket was murdered, and Edward the Black Prince buried.

CHATHAM is the third naval arsenal in the kingdom.

WOOLWICH is both a naval and military arsenal, and the chief place in England for ordnance.

GREENWICH boasts a noble hospital for disabled seamen, and a royal park with an observatory, from which we reckon longitude, and which has one of the grandest prospects in the world.

DOVER, opposite to Calais, is the nearest port to France, and a station for packet boats to that country. Its cliffs are celebrated by Shakspeare in his tragedy of King Lear.

Four miles off DEAL are the GOODWIN SANDS, often fatal to mariners; and between them and Deal are the DOWNS, a road for shipping.

RAMSGATE has a noble pier, built by Smeaton, which incloses a basin of 46 acres.

SURRY, which, from its position, affords a ready intercourse with the metropolis, has therefore more villas than any other county. *Chief places*, Guildford, the *cap.*, Croydon, and Epsom, with Richmond and Kew on the Thames.

RICHMOND, for its enchanting situation, has been called the *Frescati*\* of England, and affords, from its terrace, one of the noblest prospects in the world. Thomson, the poet, who died and was buried at Richmond, was inspired by its scenery with some of the finest passages in his "Seasons."

Kew is distinguished by a fine botanical garden, having a splendid collection of exotic plants.†

SUSSEX. *Chief places*, Chichester, the *cap.*, Lewes, Hastings, and Brighton or Brightelmstone.

At HASTINGS was fought, in 1066, the battle between William the Conqueror and Harold, in which the latter lost his crown and life.

BRIGHTON is the largest town in Sussex and most fashion-

\* Frescati is about 12 miles from Rome. The ancient Tusculum is supposed to have stood on the spot or near where Frescati stands. See Butler's Questions in the Roman Hist. Tusculum in the Index, Part II.

† The total number of exotics in the gardens of this country, in 1821, was 11,970. Of these, 6750 were brought into England in the reign of his late majesty.

able sea-bathing place of England. From a fishing hamlet of 250 houses, standing on a beach only a furlong in length, it has, within a century, or even within the memory of man, expanded into a spacious and magnificent town, with a frontage to the sea of full three miles in extent. Packet-boats sail from Brighton to Dieppe, in France.

**BERKSHIRE** or **BERKS**, has excellent wheat and bacon. *Chief places*, Reading, the *cap.*, Windsor, and Abingdon.

**WINDSOR CASTLE**, a magnificent royal residence, was built by Edward III., in whose reign were confined in it at one time the kings of France and Scotland.

**HAMPSHIRE** or **HANTS**, has excellent bacon and timber. The goodness of the former arises from the acorns of the New Forest, on which the swine feed. *Chief places*, Winchester, the *cap.*, Portsmouth, and Southampton.

**WINCHESTER** was a principal residence of the west Saxon kings, many of ~~whom~~ are buried in its cathedral; in which also is ~~interred~~ William Rufus, slain by Tyrrel in the New Forest. Winchester has a college, or public school, founded by William of Wykeham.

**PORTSMOUTH** is the greatest naval station in England, and has the finest dock-yards in the world.

**SOUTHAMPTON** gave birth to Dr. Watts.

**WILTSHIRE** or **WILTS**. Its ale, cheese, and woollen manufactures, are noted. *Chief places*, Salisbury, the *cap.*, Devizes, Marlborough, and Chippenham.

**SALISBURY** has an elegant cathedral, with a spire the loftiest in the kingdom, 400 feet high. The cutlery goods of Salisbury are excellent.

**DEVIZES** has a woollen trade, and at **WILTON** carpets are made.

## WESTERN COUNTIES.

**DORSETSHIRE**, from its mild air and fertile soil, is called the garden of England. It has spacious downs, which feed great numbers of sheep. In this county the Saxons made their first settlement, and in it more than 30 Roman and

Saxon camps can be traced. *Chief places*, Dorchester, the *cap.*, noted for ale; Pool, Weymouth, and Lime, on the sea.

**SOMERSETSHIRE.** *Chief places*, Bath, Bristol, and Wells.

BATH, on the Avon, is so called from its natural hot baths, for which it was celebrated in the time of the Romans. Its beautiful structures and splendid architectural embellishments render it the most elegant city in England, and it is the seat of fashionable amusement.

BRISTOL, seated near the Severn, at the confluence of the Frome and Avon, and well placed for a trade with Ireland and America, is the third commercial port as to wealth in England. It has glass, paper, and brass-wire manufactures. Near Bristol is the elegant and beautiful village of CLIFTON, celebrated for its hot-wells, which are resorted to by the consumptive.

DEVONSHIRE or DEVON, which is the second in size of the English counties, lies between two seas, and is divided by the Tamar from Cornwall. It is noted for cider. *Chief places*, Exeter, the *cap.*, on the Exe; Plymouth, and Barnstaple.

PLYMOUTH is the second naval station in the kingdom, and has one of the grandest arsenals in the world.

At AXMINSTER carpets are made.

CORNWALL, the most western district of England, is terminated by the promontory of the Land's End. The county is famous for its tin and copper mines, and pilchard fishery. When there is a Prince of Wales he is Duke of Cornwall. *Chief places*, Launceston, the *cap.*, Falmouth, and Penzance, the most westerly town in England.

FALMOUTH, at the mouth of the Fal, the richest town in Cornwall, is the station for packets to Spain, Portugal, and the West Indies.

### RIVERS OF ENGLAND.

The THAMES. This mighty king of British rivers, superior to most in beauty, and to all in importance, rises

in the confines of Gloucestershire with Wiltshire. It passes Oxford, Abingdon, Reading, Windsor,\* Kingston, and Richmond, in its way to London; and then flows by Greenwich, Woolwich, and Gravesend, into the North sea, between Kent and Essex, after a course of 250 miles. The Thames is a clear, tranquil, and majestic stream.

The SEVERN, the second river in England for size and utility, rises in Plinlimmon mountain, near Welshpool, in Montgomeryshire, runs easterly to Shrewsbury, where it turns to the south, and, after passing Bridgenorth, Worcester, Tewkesbury, and Gloucester, enters the Bristol channel.

The HUMBER is a great estuary between Yorkshire and Lincolnshire, formed by the confluence of the Ouse and Trent. Having received nearly all the waters of the former county by the Ouse, and a great portion of those of the midland counties by the Trent, it flows into the German ocean between Spurnhead on the N., and Grimsby on the S.

The TRENT, the third river in England for length, rises in the county of Stafford, crosses Derbyshire, which, having left, it passes by Nottingham, Newark, Gainsborough, and Barton, where, with the Ouse, it forms the Humber. The Trent, though subject sometimes to great floods, has a clear, but not rapid, current, flowing with silvery beauty through rich meads:

Trent, who, like some earth-born giant, spreads  
His thirsty arms along th' indented meads.

MILTON.

The GREAT OUSE rises in Northamptonshire, and, passing Buckingham, Bedford, Huntingdon, Ely, and Lynn, falls into the Wash.

\* Royal-tower'd Thame.—MILTON.



The **MERSEY** rises in the W. of Yorkshire, and enters the Irish sea below Liverpool.

The **WYE**, which for fine scenery is perhaps unrivalled, has its source near the Severn on Plinlimmon mountain, and passes Hereford, Ross, Monmouth, and Chepstow, where it unites with the Severn, thus forming the Bristol channel. Its course is rapid and meandering.

### ISLANDS BELONGING TO ENGLAND.

The isle of **WIGHT**, a beautiful and fertile spot, included in the county of Hampshire, is 21 miles long and 12 broad. Newport, nearly in its centre, is the *capital*. Carisbrook Castle, in the island, was one of the places of confinement of Charles I.

The **SCILLY** isles, a numerous and rocky cluster, of which St. Mary is the largest, and which have tin mines, are distant 30 miles W. of Land's End. They have often been fatal to ships entering the channel from foreign voyages. The most noted and melancholy shipwreck was that of Sir Cloudesley Shovel, with four ships of war, which ran upon the rocks in a dark night of 1707, when returning from the Mediterranean.

The isle of **MAN**, a poor and bleak spot in the Irish sea, is remarkable as being in sight of the three kingdoms.

The isle of **ANGLESEA** will be mentioned under Wales.

The isles of **GUERNSEY**, **JERSEY**, **ALDERNEY**, and **SARK**, lying near the N. coast of France, are subject to England. Guernsey is the largest, but Jersey the most fertile, agreeable, and populous.

*Government.* The British Constitution, which may be termed a limited monarchy, is a happy union of regal, aristocratic, and popular government, and has been a principal source of the national greatness. The executive power belongs to the crown, which is hereditary; the

legislative authority consists in a parliament composed of the King, an hereditary House of Lords, and the Representatives of the people formed into a House of Commons, chosen by the counties and certain towns.

His present Majesty, **GEORGE THE FOURTH**, was born August 12, 1762, came to the throne on the demise of his venerable father, George the Third, January 29, 1820, and was crowned in Westminster Abbey, on the 19th of July, 1821. Under the sceptre of this enlightened and patriotic Prince, Britain is enjoying the greatest prosperity.

*Religion.* The national religion is the Episcopal Protestant, as established at the Reformation in the reign of Henry VIII.; but all others are tolerated. There are two archbishops and 25 bishops, who all sit in the House of Lords, except the Bishop of Sodor and Man.

*Inhabitants.* The people of Great Britain are of various descent; the Roman, Saxon, Danish, and Norman invaders having successively infused their blood into the Celtic or parent stock. In their character they may be described as having good judgment and persevering talent, rather than brilliant imagination or fertile invention. Reluctant in forming new acquaintances, taciturn and reserved, they, notwithstanding, often perform solid acts of friendship. The English are brave, generous, and humane, and, with a few disgraceful exceptions, placable in anger. They are fond of domestic life; in no country, perhaps, are fire-side comforts so much prized and enjoyed as in our own.

*Language and Literature.* The British language, which has the Gothic for its basis, involves also in its construction many Latin and Saxon, with some French words, imported by different invaders.

In the arts and sciences, and in every department of literature, Britain has attained the highest excellence, and boasts a constellation of illustrious characters too numerous

to be specified. In NEWTON, BACON, LOCKE, MILTON, and SHAKSPEARE, we can, however, present five names unrivalled by any other country for wisdom and genius.

*National greatness.* While, as a naval power, Britain is arbitress of the ocean, the true element of her greatness and bulwark of her safety,\* the trophies which she has won on the continent, under the auspices of WELLINGTON, have gained her high military renown. The skill and industry displayed in agriculture and manufactures; the extent of internal navigation† and system of road intercourse,‡ with the vast number of her merchant ships,§ have made the commerce of our country bounded only by the limits of the globe itself.¶ If to these evidences of national prosperity are added her numerous charities, adapted to nearly every want of human life; her elementary schools for the instruction of the poor; ¶ her diffusion of the Sacred Scriptures, and propagation of the Gospel by foreign Missions, it may be safely affirmed that Britain presents, at this moment, an example of greatness, founded on a moral and mental activity, unparalleled by any other nation.

\* In 1824 the naval force of Great Britain consisted of 603 ships of various classes.

† There are at this time 103 canals in Great Britain; their total extent is 2862 miles, about the length from E. to W. of the whole continent of Europe.

‡ The total length of the public roads, in England alone, is more than 46,000 miles.

§ In 1823 Britain employed 22,300 vessels and 100,000 seamen in her commerce.

¶ The exports, in 1824, of British produce and manufactures, amounted to more than 52 millions sterling.

¶ In 1822, more than 700,000 children attended the National and Lancasterian schools.

## WALES.

*Situation.* The principality of Wales, the ancient *Cam-bria*, is to the west of England, and occupies all the central part of its western coast.

*Boundaries.* On the N. by the Irish sea ; on the S. by the Bristol channel ; on the E. by Cheshire, Shropshire, Herefordshire, and Monmouthshire ; and on the W. by St. George's channel.

*Extent.* Wales, which was formerly larger than it now is, having comprehended the counties of Hereford and Monmouth, is about 140 miles long, and nearly 100 broad.

*Surface and Climate.* Wales is a mountainous region, but has rich pastoral valleys. In population and fertility, the southern part is superior to the northern ; but the latter excels in grandeur of scenery. The air is clear and sharp.

*Trade.* Its chief trade, which is inland, is in cattle, lead, copper, tin, slate, and coals, with woollen cloth.

*Division.* Wales has twelve counties ; six in the N. and six in the S.

## NORTH WALES.

*Counties.**Chief Towns.*

Flintshire . . . . .	Flint, St. Asaph, Holywell.
Denbighshire . . . .	Denbigh, Wrexham.
Isle of Anglesea ..	Beaumaris, Holyhead.
Caernarvonshire ..	Caernarvon, Bangor, Conway.
Merionethshire . . . .	Dolgelly, Bala, Harlech.
Montgomeryshire ..	Montgomery, Welshpool.

## SOUTH WALES.

Cardiganshire . . . .	Cardigan, Aberistwith.
Radnorshire . . . . .	Radnor.

*Counties.**Chief Towns.*

Brecknockshire . . . . Brecknock, Builth, Hay.

Glamorganshire . . . . Swansea, Cardiff, Landaff, Merthyr Tydvil.

Caermarthenshire . . Caermarthen.

Pembrokeshire . . . . Pembroke, St. David's, Milford.

*Mountains.* Snowden, in the centre of Caernarvonshire; Cader-Idris, in Merionethshire; and Plinlimmon, partly in the county of Montgomery and partly in that of Cardigan.

*Rivers.* The Dee, in Flintshire; the Usk, in Brecon and Monmouthshire; the Tawe or Taafe, in Glamorganshire; and the Wye, in the counties of Montgomery and Radnor.

*Strait.* The Menai Strait, between the isle of Anglesea and Caernarvonshire. Over this, the celebrated engineer, Mr. Telford, has constructed a magnificent bridge.

*Chief Bays.* Caernarvon and Cardigan in the W., and Swansea Bay in the S.

GLAMORGANSHIRE is the largest, and CAERNARVONSHIRE the most mountainous, county in Wales. The former, which, for its fertility and pleasantness, is called the garden of Wales, is 48 miles from E. to W., and 27 from N. to S.

THE ISLE OF ANGLESEA, the ancient MONA, was a favourite seat of the Druids, who, being the only enlightened class of men when Paganism prevailed in Britain, were its priests, magistrates, and instructors of its youth. Their solemn rites were performed in the gloom of thick groves.\* Paris hill or mountain, in the isle, has a rich copper-mine on its surface. Holyhead, an islet upon the W. point of Anglesea, is a place of passage to and from Ireland.

WREXHAM, which has a flannel trade, is the largest town of North, and BRECKNOCK the largest of South Wales.

---

\* The Druids derived their name from a Greek word signifying an oak, a tree which they greatly venerated.

**CAERNARVON** has a castle in which Edward II. was born, in 1284. To conciliate the Welsh, uneasy under the English yoke, he was created Prince of Wales, a title borne since that period by the king's eldest son.

**CONWAY** has the remains of another noble castle, which Gray has made the scene of his fine poem, "The Bard." The Welsh bards, whose poetry was connected with the national hopes and glory, were massacred by Edward I., that he might extinguish the enthusiasm and spirit of independence excited by their song. So much does tyranny fear knowledge as its most powerful foe!

**CARDIFF** trades to Bristol. In its castle died, after a long and cruel confinement, inflicted by his unnatural brother, Henry I., Robert, the deposed Duke of Normandy, son of William the Conqueror.

**SWANSEA**, a flourishing commercial port and sea-bathing place, gave birth, in 1673, to Beau Nash, who long presided over the amusements of Bath.

**LANDAFF** is the poorest bishopric in the Church of England.

**CAERPHILLY** has the ruins of a majestic castle, which is said to have been the largest in England next to that of Windsor, and has a leaning tower similar to the one at Pisa, in Italy.

At **MERTHYR TYDVIL** are immense iron works.

**MILFORD**. Its harbour, the most capacious in Great Britain, is capable of holding 1000 vessels. It is ten miles long, and from one to two broad, and has five bays, ten creeks, and thirteen anchoring places for large ships. At Milford, the Earl of Richmond, afterwards Henry VII., landed in 1486, for the purpose of disputing the crown with Richard III., which he gained by the battle of Bosworth, near Leicester.

**RIVERS**. The **SEVERN** and **WYE** rise near **WELSHPOOL**, in **Plinlimmon** mountain.

The **DEE**, a stream greatly venerated by the ancient Britons, rises in Merionethshire, divides the counties of Denbigh and Flint, passes Chester, and falls into the Irish sea below that city.

The **USK** rises in Brecon, and, crossing Monmouthshire, flows into the Bristol channel.

The **TAAFE** rises in Brecon, crosses Glamorganshire, and joins the Bristol channel near Cardiff. Over this impetuous stream, near Caerphilly, has been thrown the stone bridge of Pont-y-Prid, presenting a single arch, one of the largest in the world.

It was the work of William Edwards, a common mason, and an untaught genius.

*Inhabitants.* The Welsh are a brave and hospitable people, They are candid, yet jealous of affronts, and irascible, but have the magnanimity to forgive injuries, real or supposed. They boast of their pedigree, and are descended from the ancient Britons, who when the Romans invaded our island took refuge among the rocks and mountains of Wales which served in the place of fortresses. Wales was subjected to England by Edward I., when Llewellyn, its last independent prince, lost his crown; but the laws and privileges of England were extended to it in the reign of Henry VIII.

*Language.* The language of Wales is the ancient British. Whilst it differs entirely from the English, it has an affinity with the Gaelic, Erse, or Irish. It abounds with consonants, and is therefore not harmonious.

*Population.* About 700,000.

---

## SCOTLAND.

*Situation.* Scotland, the ancient *Caledonia*, forms the northern division of Great Britain. In its south-west part, at the Mull of Cantyre, it approaches within 12 miles and a half of Ireland. The form of Scotland is very irregular, and its western shores in particular, being exposed to the force of the Atlantic waves, are much broken, and worn into small gulfs, sea-lochs, and inlets. Hence no place in Scotland is more than 40 miles from the sea.

*Boundaries.* Scotland is bounded on the N. by the Northern ocean; on the S. by the Tweed, Cheviot Hills, and Solway frith; on the E. by the North sea or German ocean; and on the W. by the Atlantic.

*Extent.* From the 54th to the 59th deg. of N. lat., and from the 1st to the 6th deg. of W. long. Its length from N. to S., that is, from cape Wrath to the Mull of Galloway, is about 270 miles. Between Apple Cross and Peterhead it is 150 miles broad; between the friths of Forth and Clyde the breadth is not 30.

*Capital.* Edinburgh, on the Forth, near the German ocean, in lat. 56 deg. N., and long. about 3 W., being four degrees and a half more north than London.

*Surface.* In the north, Scotland is barren and mountainous; cultivation, however, spreads its riches in the south, where the country resembles England. The chief geographical features of Scotland are, its mountains, lakes, glens, and valleys. Scenes beautiful and fertile are interspersed among prospects sublime and romantic.

*Climate.* The northern districts of Scotland which are in the same parallel with part of Norway are very cold. The western coast is subject to frequent rains brought by the Atlantic clouds. In the south, the climate is like that in the north of England. The longest day in the northern part is of about 18 hours and a half, the same as that of Bergen, Stockholm, and Petersburg. In the south it is of 17 hours and a half, which is one hour longer than that of London.

*Products.* Vast herds of cattle; hemp and flax, the source of the extensive linen manufactures; coal, lead, iron, and marble. Scotland has two great fisheries. The rivers abound with salmon; and the numerous inlets and bays which indent the coast are the resort of those countless shoals of herrings which descend from the Arctic seas.

*Divisions.* There are 33 counties, which may be divided into North Scotland or the Highlands, having 13 counties, and South Scotland or the Lowlands, having 20.



## SCOTLAND.

## HIGHLANDS.

<i>Counties.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
1. The Isles of the Orkneys } and Shetland..... }	Mainland.
2. Sutherland .....	Dornock.
3. Caithness .....	Wick.
4. Ross .....	Taine.
5. Cromartie .....	Cromartie.
6. Inverness .....	Inverness.
7. Nairne .....	Nairne.
8. Elgin, or Murray .....	Elgin, Forres.
9. Banff .....	Banff.
10. Aberdeen .....	Aberdeen.
11. Kincardine, or Mearn .....	Bervie, Kincardine.
12. Forfar, or Angus .....	Forfar, Montrose.
13. Perth .....	Perth, Scone, Dunkeld.

## LOWLANDS.

1. Fife .....	St. Andrews.
2. Kinross .....	Kinross.
3. Clackmanan.....	Clackmanan.
4. Stirling.....	Stirling, Falkirk.
5. Dumbarton .....	Dumbarton.
6. Argyle .....	Inverary.
7. Bute (Island) .....	Rothsay.
8. Ayr .....	Ayr.
9. Renfrew .....	Renfrew.
10. Lanark, or Clydesdale .....	Glasgow, Lanark.
11. Linlithgow, or West Lothian ..	Linlithgow.
12. Edinburgh, or Mid Lothian ..	Edinburgh.
13. Haddington, or East Lothian ..	Haddington, Dunbar.
14. Berwick, or Merse .....	Berwick.
15. Roxburgh .....	Jedburgh, Ednam.
16. Selkirk .....	Selkirk.

- 17. Peebles, or Tweedale ..... Peebles.
- 18. Dumfries ..... Dumfries.
- 19. Kirkcudbright, or East Gal- }  
loway ..... } Kirkcudbright.
- 20. Wigton, or West Galloway.. Wigton.

*Chief Rivers.* The Forth, Clyde, Tay, Tweed, Dee, and Spey.

*Lakes or Lochs.* Loch Lomond, between the counties of Stirling and Dumbarton; lochs Awe and Fine, in Argyleshire; lochs Tay and Ketrine, in Perthshire; and loch Ness, in Invernesshire.

*Friths.* The frith of Forth, Murray and Cromartie friths, and the frith of Dornock or Tain, on the E. coast; Pentland frith, a dangerous passage, between Caithness and the Orkney islands, on the N.; and the frith of Clyde, between the island of Bute and Ayrshire, on the W. coast. Through Pentland frith runs the strongest tide that is any where to be found on the whole coast of Great Britain.

*Canals.* 1. The FORTH AND CLYDE Canal, which, connecting those two rivers, preserves a communication between the North sea on the E. and the Atlantic ocean on the W. It passes through Stirling, Dumbarton, and Lanark. 2. The CALEDONIAN Canal, which connecting the North sea and the Atlantic by means of the frith of Murray, avoids the circuitous passage of Pentland frith.

*Mountains.* The Grampian, which run in a westward course from Aberdeenshire to Argyleshire; the Pentland hills, which cross Lothian, and join those of Tweedale; and the Cheviot hills, between England and Scotland. Ben Nevis, in Invernesshire, is the highest mountain in Great Britain, being 4350 feet above the level of the sea.

*Islands.* The Hebrides or Western isles; the isles of Arran and Bute, in the frith of Clyde; the Orkney and Shetland isles, N. of Scotland. The chief of the He-

brides and Lewis, N. and S. Uist, Skye, Mull, Jura, Icolmkill, and Staffa.

*Capes.* Cape Wrath, in Sutherland; Duncansby head, in Caithness; the Mull of Cantyre, S. of Argyleshire; and the Mull of Galloway, S. W. of Wigtonshire. Duncansby head is the most N. E., and cape Wrath the most N. W. point of Great Britain.

*Cities, &c.* EDINBURGH, the capital, is striking from its commanding and picturesque situation. It is divided into the Old and New Town, and has a castle built on a lofty rock. On Calton hill, David Hume, the celebrated historian, is interred. The university of Edinburgh is famous as a medical school.

LEITH, on the Forth, is the port to Edinburgh.

GLASGOW, which, though not the capital, is the first city of Scotland for population and commercial wealth, has an extensive muslin manufacture, and enjoys from its situation near the Atlantic a great trade with America and the West Indies.

ABERDEEN has one of the four universities in Scotland; an extensive stocking trade, and a salmon fishery.

INVERNESS is styled the capital of the Highlands, and has near it CULLODEN. The victory at Culloden which the Duke of Cumberland gained in 1746, over the Pretender, grandson of James II., extinguished the hopes of the Stuart race.

At SCONE, in Perthshire, the kings of Scotland were crowned in the celebrated chair brought by Edward I. to England, and placed in Westminster Abbey. It is used at the coronation of the British sovereigns.

DUNKELD, a most romantic place in the same county, visited on account of its pure air and fine scenery, has near it the seat of the patriotic Duke of Athol, who has planted 4000 acres, and more than 30 millions of trees.\*

On a heath between ELGIN and FORRES, Macbeth is said to have met the three weird sisters who promised him that he should be king.

---

\* Dr. Johnson says, that "he who raises a single blade of grass where it never grew before is a benefactor to his country." How many then are the claims of the duke of Athol on the gratitude of the present and future generations!

AYA gave birth to the poet Burns: who died, in 1796, at Dumfries.—At PEEBLES was born Allan Ramsay, author of "The Gentle Shepherd," a pastoral poem: and EDNAM, near Roxburgh, gave birth to Thomson, whose celebrated poem "The Seasons," created a new era in Scottish literature.

GREYNA GREEN, on the confines of Dumfriesshire and Cumberland is famous for clandestine, and therefore in general unhappy, marriages.

*Rivers.* The FORTH rises in Perthshire, and, after flowing by Stirling and Edinburgh, enters the German ocean.—The TAY issues from loch Tay, and, having divided the Highlands from the Lowlands, flows into the German ocean.—The TWEED rises in Peebles, passes Melross and Kelso, separates Scotland from England, and falls into the German ocean.—The DEE has its source in Aberdeenshire, and flows into the German ocean below Aberdeen. The SPEY, an impetuous stream, and the largest northern river of Scotland, issues from loch Spey in Invernesshire, divides Elgin from Bannock, and discharges itself into the German ocean. The CLYDE rises in Lanarkshire, flows by Lanark and Glasgow, and falls into a frith below Greenock.

*Scotch Islands.* The HEBRIDES or WESTERN ISLANDS, which are more than 300 in number, form two groups. The first is close to the main land, and belongs to Argyllshire; the second is at a considerable distance to the west, and belongs to the county of Inverness.

ICOLMKILL afforded an asylum to St. Columba, who left Ireland in the sixth century, accompanied by the same number of persons as Christ chose for his disciples, and, arriving in the island, first introduced the Christian religion into Scotland. The ancient cathedral of St. Mary contains his remains, and also those of many Scottish, Irish, and Norwegian kings.

STAFFA, situated W. of Mull, and N. of Icolmkill, is an immense pile of basaltic columns, arranged in natural colonades, and exceeding in magnificence every thing of the kind. The cave of Fingal is a natural cavern 260 feet long, 53 broad, and 117 high.

The ORKNEY ISLES, about 26 in number, are to the N. of Scotland, and separated from it by the Pentland frith. Mainland or Pomona is the largest.

The SHETLAND OR ZETLAND ISLES lie N. of the Orkneys, be-

tween the 59th and the 62d deg. of N. lat., the same parallel with Bergen, in Norway, the Isle of Aland, in the gulf of Bothnia, and lake Ladoga, in Russia. They are distant only 132 miles from Norway. MAINLAND is the largest. Their wealth is in their fishery, cattle, and horses. The last are of a very diminutive size. From the wool of the sheep stockings of a very fine texture are made. The longest day of the Unst, the most northern island, is 19 hours and 15 minutes, and of consequence the shortest is 4 hours and 45 minutes.

*Lakes.* LOCH LOMOND, the largest of the British lakes, is, from its pre-eminence in beauty, termed the queen of the Caladonian lakes. It is 30 miles long, and in many places 8 or 9 broad. Its surface has more than 20,000 acres of water. Loch KETTRINE is deemed an epitome of the various features of the Scotch lakes. Sir Walter Scott, has, therefore, with good taste made it the scene of his fine poem, "The Lady of the Lake."

*Inhabitants.* The Scotch are brave and hardy, enterprising and industrious ; of temperate and steady habits. The good morals and intelligence for which they are distinguished chiefly result from the knowledge diffused by a national education. Almost every Scottish peasant makes some proficiency in reading, writing, and accounts.

*Established Religion.* The Presbyterian, introduced in 1560 by the celebrated Reformer John Knox.

*Population.* In 1824, it was 2,135,200.

*Government.* The crowns of England and Scotland were united in the year 1603, in the person of James VI. of Scotland and I. of England. The kingdoms were united in the reign of Queen Anne.

---

## IRELAND.

*Situation.* Ireland, the ancient *Hibernia*, lies to the west of England, in the Atlantic ocean.

*Boundaries.* It is bounded on the N. by the Scottish

sea ; on the S. by part of St. George's channel and by the Atlantic ; on the E. by St. George's channel and the Irish sea, which separate it from Great Britain, and on the W. by the Atlantic.

*Extent.* From the 51st to the 56th deg. of N. lat., and from the 5th to the 10th of W. long. Its length is about 300 miles, and its greatest breadth 180. The coast is more than 250 leagues, or 750 miles, in circuit.

*Capital.* Dublin on the Liffy, near the Irish sea, in lat. about 53 deg. N., long. 6 W., and situated midway between the northern and southern points of the island.

*Divisions.* There are four provinces : Ulster, on the N. ; Connaught, on the W. ; Leinster, on the E. ; and Munster, on the S. ; having in all 32 counties.

### ULSTER.

#### *Counties.*

#### *Chief Places.*

1. Donegal, or Tyrconnel .... Donegal.
2. Londonderry, or Derry .... Derry.
3. Antrim ..... Carrickfergus.
4. Tyrone ..... Omagh.
5. Armagh ..... Armagh.
6. Down ..... Downpatrick.
7. Fermanagh ..... Enniskillen.
8. Monaghan ..... Monaghan.
9. Cavan ..... Cavan.

### CONNAUGHT.

1. Mayo ..... Castlebar.
2. Sligo ..... Sligo.
3. Leitrim ..... Leitrim.
4. Galway ..... Galway.
5. Roscommon ..... Roscommon.

## LEINSTER.

1. Longford .....Longford.
2. West Meath .....Mullingar.
3. Meath, or East Meath .....Trim.
4. Louth .....Drogheda.
5. Dublin .....Dublin.
6. King's County.....Philipstown.
7. Queen's County .....Maryborough.
8. Kildare.....Naas.
9. Wicklow .....Wicklow.
10. Kilkenny .....Kilkenny.
11. Carlow.....Carlow.
12. Wexford.....Wexford.

## MUNSTER.

1. Clare .....Ennis.
2. Tipperary .....Clonmell.
3. Kerry .....Tralee.
4. Limerick .....Limerick.
5. Cork .....Cork.
6. Waterford .....Waterford.

*Chief Rivers.* The Shannon, the Bann, the Boyne, Liffy, Barrow, and Blackwater.

*Chief Lakes or Loughs.* Loughs Neagh and Belfast, in the N. E., and lough Earn in the N. W., loughs Foyle and Swilly in the N., and lake Killarney, in the S. W., in the county of Kerry.

*Mountains.* Those of Mourne and Jeragh in the county of Down; the highest of which is 3150 feet, the mountains of Wicklow and those of Killarney, in Munster.

*Bays and Harbours.* On the west coast are the bays of Donegal (N. W.), Sligo, Galway, and Bantry: in the south-east, Wexford harbour, and the harbours of Cork and Waterford.

*Cities.* DUBLIN, the residence of the Viceroy of Ireland, ranks the second among the British cities, and has a population of 200,000. Its bay, about seven miles broad, is greatly admired as a sea view. DUBLIN has an university, the only one in Ireland, and the barracks are the largest in Europe.

CORK, the second city of Ireland for wealth and population, has a noble harbour, with a great trade in the victualling of outward-bound ships. Barry, the painter, whose works ornament the rooms of the Society of Arts in the Adelphi, was a native of CORK.

WATERFORD, the third commercial town of Ireland, has a fine harbour, and a trade similar to that of Cork.

LIMERICK, on the Shannon, ranks the fourth for commerce, and is well situated for transatlantic trade, whilst COLEMAINE is the centre of the trade in linen. BELFAST is the chief town for its exportation.

At YOUGHALL, potatoes were first planted in Europe, when they were brought from America by Sir Walter Raleigh.

*Rivers.* The BANN rises in the county of Down, in the province of Ulster, flows through lough Neagh, divides Londonderry from Antrim, and falls into the sea near Coleraine.

The BOYNE rises in Kildare, in the province of Leinster, passes by Trim, and enters the Irish sea near Drogheda. On its bank William III. defeated James II., in 1690, and put an end to the hopes of the abdicated prince.

The LAFFY rises in Wicklow, flows through part of Kildare, and falls, in the neighbourhood of the capital, into the bay of Dublin.

The BARROW has its source in Queen's county, flows by Portarlington and Carlow, and enters the Atlantic at Waterford.

The BLACKWATER, in the province of Munster, runs through the county of Cork, passes Lismore, and flows into Youghall bay.

The SHANNON, the largest river of Ireland, rises in Lékrim, falls into lough Allen, divides Leinster from Connaught, flows by Killaloe and Limerick, and enters the Atlantic after a course of 170 miles.

*Coast and Surface.* The eastern and northern coasts of Ireland, are more entire than the western and southern, which, being exposed to the unbroken force of the Atlan-



tic, are cut into deep bays and inlets. Hence Ireland is remarkable for numerous and capacious harbours.\* The general face of the interior is level, the hills and mountains being only in short ridges. One of the most striking features of the country is the quantity of bog.

*Climate.* Exposed to the influence of the Atlantic and its prevailing winds, Ireland abounds in moisture, and its atmosphere is enveloped in clouds and fogs. The beautiful verdure which results from its humid climate has procured for it the name of "the Emerald Isle."

*Products.* Abundance of flax and hemp, for which the wet soil of Ireland is favourable; and, as the moisture of the climate renders pasturage luxuriant, cattle, butter, and cheese, are leading articles of trade. Coal is plentiful, being found in sixteen out of the thirty-two counties. Potatoes are abundant, and this useful vegetable is the chief winter food of the Irish peasantry.

*Government.* Ireland was conquered by Henry II., in 1172, and is now politically united with Great Britain. The king deposes a Viceroy as his representative.

*Established Religion.* The same as that of England, but a great majority of the people are Roman Catholics.

*Population.* Ireland had, in 1821, a population of 6,801,827. Of these, about five millions were Catholics and the remainder Protestants.

---

## KINGDOM OF THE NETHERLANDS.

The Netherlands, which were constituted a kingdom in 1814, consist of seventeen provinces, of which seven be-

---

\* Ireland has 14 harbours for the largest ships, 17 for frigates, and 36 for coasters, besides 24 good summer roads. TUCKER'S *Maritime Geog.*

long to Holland, and ten to the country recently known as the Netherlands, or Belgic Provinces.

### THE SEVEN UNITED PROVINCES, OR HOLLAND.

*Situation.* The Seven United Provinces, anciently called *Batavia*, and more recently Holland, from the name of the chief province,\* form the northern part of the kingdom of the Netherlands. They lie opposite to the eastern coast of England, at the distance of 90 miles across the German ocean; and are in the N. temperate zone. The country is broken into bays and peninsulas, and intersected with rivers and canals. No region of Europe has so singular a combination of land and water.

*Boundaries.* Holland is bounded on the N. and W. by the German ocean; on the S. by the Belgic Provinces; and on the E. by Germany.

*Extent.* From the 51st deg. and half to the 53d deg. and a half of N. lat. The length is 150 miles, and the breadth 100.

*Capital* Amsterdam, on the Amstel, and near the Zuyder Zee, in lat. 52 deg. N., long. 5 E., being nearly in the same parallel of latitude as London.

*Surface.* Holland is in general an unvaried level, and like a large marsh which has been drained. The land being even with, or below the surface of the sea, is defended by artificial banks called dykes. The canals, for which the flat country is favourable, are used, like roads in other countries, for the conveyance of goods and passengers. In winter they serve for the amusement of skating.

---

\* From the German word *Hohl* corresponding with the English word hollow, and implying a low country. Such is the derivation of Holloway, (hollow-way,) a village near London, at the foot of Highgate hill.

*Climate.* The climate is cold and damp; fogs and mists often envelope the land. Amsterdam being nearly in the same parallel of latitude as London, its longest day is of the same length.

*Products.* As the soil of Holland is favourable to vegetation, and to objects of rural economy, butter and cheese are chief articles of trade. Tobacco and madder are planted. Among the manufactures are the linen called holland, sealing-wax, tobacco-pipes, and earthenware.

*Division.* There are seven provinces.

*Provinces.*

*Chief places.*

1. Holland . . . . Amsterdam, the *cap.*, Rotterdam, Leyden, and Haerlem.
2. Utrecht . . . . Utrecht.
3. Zealand . . . . Middleburgh, the *cap.*, Flushing.
4. Friesland . . . . Lewarden.
5. Groningen . . Groningen.
6. Overijssel . . . . Deventer.
7. Guelderland . . Nimeguen, the *cap.*, Zutphen, Harderwicke.

*Chief Rivers.* The Rhine, Maese, and Scheldt. The three branches of the Rhine are, the Yssel, Lech, and Wahal.

*Islands.* Walcheren, Beveland, with others, forming the province of Zealand; Voorn island, S. of the province of Holland; and the Texel, with several islands in regular succession in the North sea.

*Sea.* The Zuyder Zee, or South sea in the North, but so called to distinguish it from the North sea, or German ocean.

*Lakes or Meers.* Holland has several lakes or meers, particularly in Friesland. That of Haerlem, S. W. of Amsterdam, is the largest of the Dutch meers.

*Cities.* AMSTERDAM, the capital, is a place of great trade,

with a population of about 250,000. Having been placed among marshes, it is built on pilcs of wood driven into the ground. The Stadt-house is the finest thing of the kind in Europe.

ROTTERDAM, well situated for trade on the Maese, and near the sea, is the second commercial city of Holland. Erasmus, eminent for penetration, wit, and learning, was born here in 1467. A statue has been erected to his memory, and the house of his nativity is preserved with the veneration due to the birth-place of genius.

THE HAGUE, though called a village, is the finest and most elegant place in Holland. It is the residence of the court, foreign ambassadors, and of many high persons. As in other Dutch towns, the streets are shaded with rows of trees and divided by canals.

LEYDEN has an university of ancient medical fame, in which Boerhaave taught physic, and by his great knowledge attracted pupils from the most distant parts of Europe.

HAERLEM has the largest organ in Europe, consisting of 1000 pipes, and combining the sound of many instruments. The city claims the invention of printing by Laurent Coster, about the year 1428, and observes a secular festival to support and perpetuate its pretension.\* The fields which surround Haerlem display a profusion of tulips and hyacinths, the favourite flowers of the Dutch.†

UTRECHT, a noble town, is famous for the peace signed there in 1713, which put an end to the wars between Queen Anne of England, and Louis XIV. of France.

At SARDAM, Peter the Great of Russia, though an Emperor, worked as a common shipwright, that he might improve himself and his subjects in maritime affairs.

DELFT is noted for earthenware. From the steeple of its

\* The fourth centenary festival was kept, July 10, 1823, when a monument, having an inscription, was raised to the memory of Coster.

† Such was the passion of the Dutch for flowers in the 17th century, that 475 guineas were given for a single hyacinth root; and the roots of the two tulips called the Viceroy and Semper Augustus, were purchased, the one at 2500 florins and the other at 4600.

church is the best view in Holland. At Delft was born, in 1583, Grotius, who wrote on the Law of Nations; and who, looking beyond earthly limits, pointed to the realms of immortality by defending "The truth of the Christian religion."

ZUTPHEN is memorable as the place where Sir Philip Sidney was mortally wounded, in 1586, while fighting for civil and religious freedom against the Spaniards.

FLUSHING, in the island of Walcheren, and HELVEORSLUYS, in that of Voorn, communicate by packets with Harwich, in England.

The TEXEL island, at the mouth of the Zuyder Zee, is a station of the Dutch navy. To the south of Camperdown Admiral Duncan gained a splendid victory over the Dutch fleet, in 1797.

*Rivers.* The RHINE enters the United Provinces in Guelderland, and divides into two branches: the southern one, named the WAHAL, joins the Maese. The northern stream divides into two more branches—the LECH, which, flowing west, unites with the Maese, and the YSSEL, which, running northwards into the Zuyder Zee, gives name to the province of Overysse. Of the once magnificent Rhine, a small stream, which passes by Utrecht and Leyden, alone bears the name.

The MAESE or MEUSE enters Guelderland from the Belgic provinces, flows westward, and falls into the North sea by several channels.

The SCHELDT having entered the Belgic provinces from near St. Quintin, in France, passes by Ghent and Antwerp, and forms at its mouth the islands of Zeeland.

*Inhabitants.* The Dutch are a grave, steady, and calculating people. So great is their diligence that Holland has been called the bee-hive of industry. The domestic virtues prevail, and the chief happiness of the inhabitants is derived from "that best boon of life, a social home." Cleanliness, decorum, and regularity, distinguish their private houses and public streets. Smoking\* and skating are favourite amusements.

---

\* With a pipe in his mouth, a Dutchman rides on horseback, drives in his carriage, and even dances. CARR'S *Tour in Holland*.

*Language, Literature, &c.* The Dutch language is a dialect of the German. Holland has produced men of learning and talent, among whom Erasmus, Grotius, and Boerhaave, shine with peculiar splendour. It has also a school of painting, eminent for its close imitation of nature and delicate finishing. Marine scenes, suggested by the local features of the country, fruits, flowers, and rustic amusements, have chiefly employed the Dutch pencil. Rembrandt, Gerhard Douw, Wouvermans, Cuyp, and Van Huysuns, are among the best painters. For horticulture, the most ancient and peaceful occupation of the human race,\* the Dutch have long been famous, and their florists supply Europe with the choicest flowers.

*Government.* Holland, with other possessions of the house of Burgundy, fell, by marriage, to the family of Austria in the 15th century; but, with some inferior provinces, revolted, in 1566, from the tyranny of Philip II. In 1579 was formed the famous union of Utrecht, by which the Seven Provinces were constituted a Federal Republic, having a states-general and a chief magistrate with the title of Stadtholder. The government is now an hereditary but limited monarchy. The present sovereign, who is styled King of the Netherlands, is William I., of the house of Orange. He was born in 1772, and began to reign in 1815.

*Established Religion.* The Protestant.

*Population.* Nearly three millions; a large number when the small extent of Holland is considered.

## BELGIC PROVINCES.

*Situation.* The Provinces recently termed the Netherlands form the southern part of the kingdom of that name.

---

\* And the LORD God took Adam, and put him into the garden of Eden, to dress it and to keep it. Gen. ii. 15.

They were the ancient *Belgic Gaul*, and are ten in number.

*Boundaries.* They are bounded on the N. by Holland, on the S. by France, on the E. by Germany, and on the W. by the North sea.

*Chief place.* Brussels on the Senne, in lat. about 51 deg. N., and long. about 4 deg. E., being nearly in the same parallel as London.

*Surface.* The country of the Netherlands, as the word implies,\* is generally level. Its rich soil has been made highly productive by the skill and industry bestowed on it. To the Netherlands, England is indebted for the introduction of many useful vegetables in the reigns of Henry VII. and VIII. Two features, resulting from its local character, distinguish the country—its numerous canals and fortified towns. The former are most efficient on a flat surface; the latter are necessary to defend countries for which nature has not provided rocks and mountains, as in Wales and Switzerland, for their protection.

*Climate and Products.* The climate resembles that of England with which these provinces are parallel. The products consist of flax, grain, hops, and fruit; the finest laces and cambrics, with the most beautiful linens, are manufactured.

#### *Provinces.*

#### *Chief Towns.*

North Brabant . . . . .	Breda, Bois-le-duc, Bergen-op-zoom.
Antwerp . . . . .	Antwerp, Maline.
Limburgh . . . . .	Limburgh, Maestricht.
West Flanders . . . . .	Bruges, Ostend, Ypres.
East Flanders . . . . .	Ghent, Dendermonde.
South Brabant . . . . .	Brussels, Louvain.

---

\* *Nether-lands*; that is, the lower lands. *Nether* is of Saxon origin, and is used as a comparative. JOHNSON.

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Hainault .....	Mons, Tournay, Ath.
Namur.....	Namur.
Liege .....	Liege, Spa.
Grand Duchy of Luxemburgh*..	Luxemburgh.

*Rivers.* The *Maese* or *Meuse*, the *Scheldt*, and the *Sambre*.

*Canals.* Those of *Bruges* and *Brussels*. The former connects *Ostend*, *Bruges*, and *Ghent*.

*Places.* *BRUSSELS*, an elegant city, is noted for lace and carpets. Between it and *Nivelles* is *WATERLOO*, ever memorable for the glorious victory gained by the illustrious *Wellington* over *Bonaparte*, June 18, 1815, which annihilated the French Emperor's power.

*ANTWERP*, on the *Scheldt*, had once a great commerce, which the tyranny of *Philip II.*, and the shutting up of the river, transferred to *Amsterdam*. The Royal Exchange of *London* is built after the model of that at *Antwerp*, brought to England by *Sir Thomas Gresham*, in the reign of *Queen Elizabeth*. The splendid cathedral of *Antwerp* has some fine paintings by *Rubens*, particularly his "Descent from the Cross."

*GHENT* stands upon 26 islands, connected by 300 bridges. *Charles V.*, Emperor of Germany, contemporary with *Henry VIII.* of England and *Francis I.* of France, was born at *Ghent*.

*OSTEND*, on the North sea, is the chief port of the Belgic provinces, and the station for packets.

*MALINE* is noted for lace.

*Rivers.* The *MAESE* rises in France in the late province of *Champagne*, and, flowing N., enters the Netherlands, flows by *Namur*, *Liege*, and *Maestricht*, to *Holland*, where it falls into the German ocean.

The *SCHELD* (in French *Escaut*) rises near *St. Quintin*, in France, runs N., and, having passed *Antwerp*, enters the German ocean.

---

\* The Grand Duchy of Luxemburgh forms one of the States of the Germanic Confederacy, but belongs to the King of the Netherlands, who is Duke of Luxemburgh.



The SAMBRE also rises in France, passes Maubeuge and Charleroi, and joins the Maese at Namur.

*Inhabitants.* The people, who are called Flemings, exhibit a happy medium between the volatility of the French and gravity of the Dutch. Though not eminent for literature, they boast a school of painting named the Flemish, which, next to that of Italy, enjoys the greatest fame. Rubens, who was both a scholar and a painter, and who infused the poetry of Homer and Virgil into his pencil, is the great ornament of the school. His *Fall of the Damned* has been pronounced, by Sir Joshua Reynolds, the most perfect piece of composition in the world. Among other Flemish Masters are, Vandyke, Hobbima, Jordaens, Sneyders, and Teniers. Domestic scenes, the exhilarating pleasures of humble life, and faithful representations of rural nature, abound in the works of the Flemish painters.

*Government.* The Belgic provinces were conquered by Julius Cæsar.\* Since his time they have served different masters, and have prospered or suffered according to the good or bad conduct of their rulers. In the fifteenth century, under the government of the dukes of Burgundy, they became the emporium of commerce in western Europe, and the seat of wealth and of the arts. With the heiress of Burgundy they passed by marriage to the house of Austria. The tyranny and persecution of Philip II., carried on by his angel† of wrath and faithful representative, the Duke of Alva, depopulated their towns and destroyed their com-

\* See Butler's Questions in Roman Hist., Index, Cæsar.

† An angel is a messenger, and he may be the minister of evil or good. An angel smote, in the darkness of night, one hundred and eighty-five thousand Assyrians in their camp:‡ an angel administered comfort to the Saviour in Gethsemane.

‡ 2 Kings xix. 35.

merce. To Austria the Netherlands belonged until their conquest, in the late wars, by the French. They are now politically united, under the same sovereign, with Holland.

*Religion.* The Roman Catholic, with much of that pageantry of worship which fascinates the senses and imposes on the imagination. The pulpits in the churches of the Netherlands are remarkable for external decoration.

*Population and Language.* There are about two millions of inhabitants. The language is a mixture of German and Low Dutch.

---

## FRANCE.

*Situation.* France, which, in a great degree, corresponds to the ancient *Gaul*, is in the west part of Europe, and in the North temperate zone.

*Boundaries.* It is bounded on the N. by the British channel and the Netherlands, on the S. by Spain and the Mediterranean, on the E. by Germany, Switzerland, and Italy, and on the W. by the bay of Biscay.

*Extent.* From the 42d to the 51st deg. of N. lat., and from the 5th deg. of west to the 8th of east long. The length is about 600 miles, and the breadth 500. The coast occupies 363 leagues, or 1089 miles.

*Capital.* Paris, on the Seine, in lat. nearly 49 deg. N., and long. 2 deg. 25 min. E., about one degree and a half more south than London.

*Surface.* France does not abound in mountains. Its northern and western sides have a long range of coast, which preserves a commercial intercourse with England and the southern countries of Europe. Though it has delightful scenery, France ranks neither as a very beautiful nor romantic country. In lakes it is deficient.

*Climate.* Placed in a happy portion of the temperate zone, France has one of the finest climates in the world; one highly adapted to the enjoyment as well as to the wants and luxuries of man. In the north, the temperature resembles that of the south of England. The central and southern districts have an increased warmth. The longest day at Paris is of 16 hours and a half, the same as that of London. In the south it is of 15 hours' length.

*Products.* Among the products of France its wines hold the first rank: fourteen hundred varieties of grape are found in the country; and the annual produce of wines and brandy is computed at twenty millions of hogsheads.\* The soil produces tobacco, olive oil, and high flavoured fruits. The chief exports are silks, lace, fine linen, and gloves; porcelain, clocks and watches, with many articles of elegant luxury. The fashions of France were, for many years, adopted by the nations of Europe.

*Division.* France, which, before the revolution of 1789, was divided into Provinces, is now formed into Departments.

#### NORTHERN DIVISIONS.

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Departments.</i>	<i>Chief places.</i>
Late French Flanders..	North..	DOUAY, Dunkirk, Lille, Valenciennes, and Cambray.

---

\* The best sorts of French wine are, champaign, burgundy, claret, muscat, frontigniac, hermitage, coté roti, and rouissillon. The white wines of Burgundy maintain the highest rank among the white wines of France. The red wines of Rouissillon (a province near the Pyrenees) are the strongest and most durable that France produces. Hermitage is the product of a vineyard on the banks of the Rhone, about 12 miles from Valence, and is so named from a hermitage which crowns the borders of the river.

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Departments.</i>	<i>Chief places.</i>
Artois .....	Calais Straits .....	ARRAS, Calais, Boulogne, St. Omer.
Picardy .....	Somme .....	AMIENS, Abbeville.
Normandy ..	{ Lower Seine .....	ROUEN, Dieppe.
	{ Eure .....	Evreux.
	{ Orne .....	Alençon.
	{ Calvados .....	CAEN, Falaise.
	{ Channel .....	COUTANCES, Cherbourg.

## TOWARDS THE N. E.

Alsace .....	{ Lower Rhine .....	Strasburg.
	{ Upper Rhine .....	Colmar.
Lorraine ....	{ Moselle .....	Metz.
	{ Meurthe .....	Nancy.
	{ Vosges .....	Epinal.
	{ Meuse .....	Bar-le-duc.
Champagne ..	{ Ardennes .....	MEZIERES, Sedan.
	{ Marne .....	Chalons.
	{ Upper Marne .....	Chaumont.
	{ Aube .....	Troyes.

## MORE CENTRAL.

Isle of France.	{ Oise .....	Beauvais.
	{ Paris .....	PARIS.
	{ Seine and Marne ..	Melun.
	{ Seine and Oise .....	Versailles.
Orleannois ..	{ Loiret .....	Orleans.
	{ Eure and Loire ..	Chartres.
	{ Loire and Cher ..	Blois.

## TOWARDS THE N. W.

Maine .....	{ Sarthe .....	Le Mans.
	{ Mayne .....	Laval.

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Departments.</i>	<i>Chief places.</i>
Anjou .....	Mayne and Loire..	Angers.
Bretagne, or Brittany .....	{ Ille and Vilaine ..	Rennes.
	{ Lower Loire.....	Nantes.
	{ North Coast .....	St. Brieux.
	{ Morbihan .....	Vannes.
	{ Finisterre .....	QUIMPER, Brest.

## CENTRAL DIVISIONS.

## EASTERN.

Franche Comté {	Upper Saone.....	Vesoul.
	Doubs .....	Besançon.
	Jura .....	Lons le Saunier.
Burgundy .. {	Côte D'Or .....	Dijon.
	Yonne .....	Auxerre.
	Ain* .....	Bourg.
	Saone and Loire ..	Maçon.
Lyonnois .....	Rhone and Loire..	Lyons.

## MORE CENTRAL.

Nivernois .....	Nievre .....	Nevers.
Bourbonnois ..	Allier .....	Moulins.
Auvergne.... {	Puy de Dome ....	Clermont.
	Cantal .....	St. Flour.
Berri .....	Cher .....	Bourges.
	Indre .....	Chatareaux.
La Marche ....	Creuse.....	Gueret.
Limousin.... {	Upper Vienne ....	Limoges.
	Correze .....	Tulle.

## TOWARDS THE W.

Touraine .....	Indre and Loire ..	Tours.
----------------	--------------------	--------

---

\* By the treaty of 1815, Chamberry and Annecy, with a part of Savoy, are annexed to the department of Ain.

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Departments.</i>	<i>Chief places.</i>
Poitou....	Vienne .....	Poitiers.
	Two Sevres .....	Niort.
	Vendée .....	Fontenoy le Comté.

## SOUTHERN DIVISIONS.

## IN THE S. E.

Dauphiny.	Isere .....	Grenoble.
	Upper Alps .....	Gap.
	Drome .....	Valence.
Provence:.	Lower Alps .....	Digne.
	Var .....	Toulon.
	Vaucluse .....	AVIGNON, Orange.
	Mouths of the Rhone.	AIX, Marseilles.

## MORE CENTRAL AND WESTERN.

Languedoc.	Ardeche .....	Privas.	
	Gard .....	Nismes.	
	Upper Loire .....	Le Puy.	
	Lozerre .....	Mende.	
	Herault .....	Montpelier.	
	Tarne .....	Castres.	
	Aude .....	CARCASSONNE,	Nar-
		bonne.	
	Eastern Pyrenees *..	Perpignan.	
	Upper Garonne ....	Toulouse.	
Guienne ..	Arriege .....	Foix.	
	Dordogne .....	Perigueux.	
	Lot and Garonne ..	Agens.	
	Aveiron .....	Rodez.	
	Lot .....	Cahors.	
	Gironde .....	Bordeaux.	

\* Late Province of Roussillon.

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Departments.</i>	<i>Chief places.</i>
Gascony ..	Upper Pyrenees . . . .	Tarbes.
	Landes . . . . .	Marsanes.
	Gers . . . . .	Auches.
	Lower Pyrenees * ..	Bar.
	Corsica Island . . . . .	Bastia and Ajaccio.

*Chief Rivers.* The Loire, Garonne, Rhone, and Seine.

*Canals.* France has many canals. The chief are those of Languedoc, Orleans, and Briare, or Burgundy. The canal of LANGUEDOC, made in the reign of Louis XIV., connects the Mediterranean with the Atlantic by means of the Garonne, and renders a circuitous voyage along the coast of Spain unnecessary. The ORLEANS canal connects the Seine and Loire, and thus joins the British channel to the bay of Biscay.

*Mountains.* The Pyrenees, between France and Spain; the Vosges, in the E., which separate the department of the same name from the Upper Saone and the Upper Rhine; Mount Jura, between France and Switzerland; the Cevennes, in the late province of Languedoc; and Mount D'Or, in the department of Puy de Dome.

*Forests.* Nearly one seventh of the surface of France is forest land. Next to the immense forests in the East and South, those of Fontainebleau, Orleans, Marli, and Ardennes, are the most remarkable.

*Islands.* Ushant, Belleisle, Rhé, and Oleron on the W. coast, and the Hieres on the S.

*Provinces.* The late province of BRITTANY, which is a hilly district, with extensive heaths, resembles Cornwall in England.

NORMANDY, one of the finest districts of France, is similar to England in its air and products.

CHAMPAGNE and BURGUNDY produce fine wines. The dukes of Burgundy were styled *Les Princes des bons vins*.

---

\* Late Province of Bearu.

TOURAINE is sometimes called the garden of France.

The ISLE OF FRANCE is reckoned the most agreeable and richest of all the provinces.

GUIENNE is a province in which the Roman epicures, Vitellius and Apicius,\* or Quin, the English comedian, might have revelled with delight, since it is famous for good eating, and has ortolans, red partridges, and fine hams, to gratify the palate.

*Places.* PARIS,† which is next in rank and population to London among the European capitals, and has 760,000 inhabitants, is a magnificent city, with many fine edifices placed in commanding situations. The most remarkable are, the Luxembourg, Louvre, Thuilleries, Pantheon, and the Hospital for Invalids. Paris is the seat of refined luxury, polished society, and elegant amusement, and is becoming highly commercial by means of the canals which connect the Seine with other rivers. The environs of the city are adorned by the palaces of Versailles, (the pompous creation of Louis XIV.,) of St. Cloud, Marli, and St. Germain's (where James H. of England died).

FONTAINEBLEAU, which is 35 miles S. E. of Paris, and is surrounded by a forest of 34,000 acres, was the favourite residence of Francis I., Henry IV., Louis XIV., and Bonaparte, the four persons most celebrated in French history.

LYONS, seated at the confluence of the Saône and Rhone, where the latter turns southwards, ranks as the second city of France. Silk goods and stuffs, especially those intended for furniture, are its chief manufactures. In the neighbourhood of Lyons almost all the silk ribbons worn in France are made.

BOURDEAUX, a beautiful town, the third place in rank, and one of the first as a commercial port, in France, is on the Garonne, and well situated for trade with the West Indies and America. It is the chief place of exportation for wine, particu-

\* See Butler's Questions in Roman Hist. reign of Vitellius.

† Among the historic events connected with Paris, are, the massacre of the Protestants, in the reign of Charles IX., on St. Bartholomew's day; the assassination of Henry IV., in the streets of Paris, in 1610; and the decollation of Louis XVI., and his queen, Antoinette, in 1792.



larly claret.\* Richard II., son of Edward the Black Prince, was born at Bourdeaux, in 1367.

NANTES, on the Loire, is the chief trading port in Brittany, and exports brandy.

BREST, remarkable for its strength, is the chief naval port of France, on the Atlantic, and the usual station of the French-channel fleet.

TOULON is the chief naval port on the Mediterranean.

MARSEILLES, celebrated in the time of the Romans, is the chief commercial port of France, on the Mediterranean, and has much of the Levant trade.

ROUEN, on the Seine, has extensive linen manufactures. Here Joan d'Arc, the Maid of Orleans, was burnt by the English on the false charge of witchcraft. Her only crime was devotion to her country; the only magic she employed was that which strong minds exercise over weak ones.† Her talents outwitted the English; they therefore feared, hated, and burnt her.

ORLEANS, a large city on the Loire, where that river bends westward, has near it a forest of 14,000 acres. The siege of Orleans was raised, in 1429, by the bravery and enthusiasm of Joan d'Arc.

ABBEVILLE, on the Somme, is the centre of the woollen trade.

LILLE or LISLE, is commercial, but more famous as being the strongest fortified place in Europe, and the masterpiece of the great engineer, Vauban, who lived in the reign of Louis XIV. and fortified most of the eastern frontier towns of France.

STRASBURGH, a strong town on the Rhine, has been called the Key to Germany, from being opposite to its central part. It contends with Mentz and Haerlem for the invention of printing.

RHEIMS has a fine cathedral, in which the French sovereigns are crowned.

MONTPELIER, in the south, having formerly enjoyed a reputa-

\* The annual average return of the Bourdeaux clarets, is about 250,000 tuns.

† Catherine de Medici being asked how she acquired her political power, replied, "By the influence which strong minds exercise over weak ones."

tion for its fine air, was much resorted to by the consumptive. In its botanical garden (the first ever formed in Europe) the great author of the *Night Thoughts* interred with his own hands the daughter, whom he laments as "the gay, the soft, and young Narcissa."

NARBONNE, in the south, is noted for honey; the delicious flavour of which arises from the sweet herbage in its neighbourhood, on which the bees feed.

At BLOIS, which is on the river Loire, the French tongue is spoken with great purity.

AVIGNON, in the south, derives fame from its having been the seat of the sovereign pontiffs for more than half a century; the residence of Petrarch, the Poet, and the birth-place of Laura, whom he has immortalized by his muse.

NISMES has some fine remains of architecture, the performances of the Romans, the conquerors of Gaul.\*

POITIERS, in the department of Vienne (late province of Poitou); CRESSY, in the department of the Somme (late Picardy); and AGINCOURT, in the department of the Straits of Calais (late Artois), shine in the British annals for the victories gained over the French by the English: the first two by Edward the Black Prince, and the last by Henry V.

*Rivers.* The LOIRE, a clear and gentle river, and the largest in France, rises in Languedoc, flows by Nevers, Orleans, Blois, Tours, and Nantes, near to which it falls into the bay of Biscay, after a course of 500 miles.

The GARONNE rises in the Pyrenees, passes by Toulouse and Bordeaux, and there taking, in conjunction with the Dordogne, the name of Gironde, enters the bay of Biscay.

The RHONE, an impetuous river, and the largest in the south of France, enters that country when it leaves Geneva, and, having met the Soane at Lyons, proceeds, by a southern course, to the Mediterranean.

The SEINE rises in the late province of Burgundy, flows by Troyes, Paris, and Rouen, and enters the English channel at Havre.

*Inhabitants.* The French are a gay, lively, and social

---

\* See Butler's *Quest.* in *Roman Hist.*, Index, Nismes.

people; quick, ingenious, and fruitful in invention. None excel them in the arts of conversation, and of saying trifles agreeably. They are polite and complimentary; but their civility too often accompanies an insincere heart. A Frenchman is fond of dissipation and frivolous pleasure, and seeks happiness, not at home, the true seat of enjoyment, but abroad. Following the precept of Horace, he snatches the living moment as it flies;\* sorrow sits lightly on him; "the tear is forgot as soon as shed;" and he even descends into "the house appointed for all the living" more cheerfully than other men.

*Government.* The government of France, which, until the revolution of 1789, was a despotism, is now a limited monarchy. The crown, from which females are excluded, is hereditary. The legislative power is divided between the King, Peers, and Representatives of the nation, who sit in two chambers, which are annually convoked. The King is styled "*His Most Christian Majesty*;" and his eldest son "*The Dauphin*."†—Charles X., the present sovereign, was born in 1759, succeeded his brother, Louis XVIII., in September 1824, and was crowned at Rheims, May 29, 1825.

*Political rank.* From its magnitude and resources, its long range of coast, and intimate connexion with the continent of Europe, France is one of the four leading powers, and must ever hold a high rank as a naval and military state.

*Religion.* The Roman Catholic, with toleration to other sects.

*Population.* In 1824 France had nearly 30 millions of inhabitants.

\* Horace, Ode xi. Book i.

† From the province of Dauphiny.

*Language and Literature.* The French language is a corruption of the Latin, mixed with Celtic and Gothic words. No tongue has so general a currency in Europe. In the sciences, and in elegant literature, the French have attained great excellence, and are surpassed only by the English. The reign of Louis XIV. was the Augustan age of France, when her greatest philosophers, poets, and men of science, reasoned and wrote.

---

## GERMANY.\*

*Situation.* Germany occupies a central part both of Europe and of the N. temperate zone.

*Boundaries.* It is bounded on the N. by the German ocean, Denmark, and the Baltic; on the S. by Italy and Switzerland; on the E. by Prussia, Poland, and Hungary; and on the W. by the Netherlands and France.

*Extent.* Between the 45th and 55th deg. of N. lat.; and from the 6th to the 19th of E. long. Its length is about 600 English miles, and its breadth 500.

*Capital.* Germany, being divided among many sovereigns, has not, properly speaking, a capital; yet it has been usual to consider Vienna as the chief city. It is on the Danube, in lat. 48 deg. N.; and long. 16 E., about three degrees and a half more S. than London. No capital of Europe has more beautiful environs than Vienna.

*Division.* Germany, formerly divided into nine circles, now consists of thirty-eight distinct states, with the titles of kingdoms, duchies, and principalities; to which may be

---

\* The word Germany is derived from two words, which, in the Teutonic, or German language, signify a *warrior*. Ger-man, or a warring man. D'ANVILLE.

added the free cities. These form the Germanic Confederation, the object of which is the external and internal security of the country. The affairs of the Confederacy are entrusted to a Federative Diet, which meets at Frankfort on the Mayne, and of which the Emperor of Austria is President. The votes in the Diet, sixty-nine in number, are proportioned to the rank and extent of the several states. Four new kingdoms have been created, Hanover, Saxony, Bavaria, and Wirtemberg; and the cities of Lubeck, Frankfort on the Mayne, Bremen, and Hamburg, are free cities.\*

The nine circles of Germany were :

NORTHERN.	CENTRAL.	SOUTHERN.
Westphalia.	Lower Rhine.	Suabia.
Lower Saxony.	Upper Rhine.	Bayaria.
Upper Saxony.	Franconia.	Austria.

---

### AUSTRIA, &c.

1. The AUSTRIAN DOMINIONS in Germany comprise the Archduchy of Austria; Bohemia, Moravia, and part of Silesia, with the territory of Salzburg, and a portion of Bavaria called the Tyrol. They also include the more southern districts of Styria, Carinthia, and Carniola.

*Places.* Vienna, the *cap.* of Austria, Gratz in Styria, Clagenfurt in Carinthia, Inspruck the chief town of the Tyrol, with Trieste, a commercial port on the Adriatic, in Istria.

---

\* A free city has its own domain, burgomaster, or chief magistrate, senate, and laws.

## PRUSSIAN DOMINIONS IN GERMANY. 89

**VIENNA**, the imperial residence, is situated in a plain surrounded by picturesque hills and has spacious suburbs. The Danube which passes through and encircles it divides itself into several branches, forming many pleasant islets. The cathedral of St. Stephen, whose tower, 442 feet high, reigns majestically over the city, contains the ashes of Eugene, who shared the glories of the illustrious Marlborough.

**BOHEMIA** is a fertile district surrounded by mountains, and rich in minerals. **PRAGUE**, a large and populous city on the Moldau, is its capital.

**MORAVIA** lies E. of Bohemia, and N. of Hungary. Though mountainous, it is highly cultivated and from its fertility in fruit is called the orchard of Austria. **Olmütz**, on the Morau, is its capital. Of Austrian Silesia, **TROPPAU** is the chief town.

S. E. of Brunn, in Moravia, is **AUSTERLITZ**, where Bonaparte defeated the Emperors of Austria and Russia, Dec. 2, 1805.

The Morau, from which Moravia is named, rises in Bohemia, passes Olmütz, and crossing Moravia joins the Danube at Presburgh.

2. The **PRUSSIAN** dominions in Germany mostly extend from the Oder to the Meuse. They include nearly the whole of **SILESIA**; the eastern side of **POMERANIA**; the greater part of Upper with a portion of **LOWER SAXONY**, and a part of **WESTPHALIA**, and of the **LOWER RHINE**.

Of Prussian Silesia, a district rich in minerals, and noted for gauze and linen manufactures, **BRESLAU**, on the Oder, is the capital.

Prussian Pomerania, has for its capital **STETTIN**, a commercial port on the Oder, near the Baltic.

The chief Prussian towns of Upper Saxony are, Berlin on the Spree, Potsdam, and Brandenburg, with Frankfort on the Oder, and Wittemburg on the Elbe.

In Lower Saxony, Prussia has Magdeburg, a strong town on the Elbe.

The state of MECKLENBURG, a district near the Baltic, is in alliance with Prussia, but is governed by its own Duke.

In Westphalia the Prussian towns are Munster, Paderborn, Minden, Dusseldorf, and Aix-la-Chapelle.

The circle of Lower Rhine has Cologne, Bonn, and Coblenz belonging to Prussia.

BERLIN seated in the centre of the North of Germany, is the residence of the King of Prussia.

POTSDAM, near Berlin has splendid architecture, and a palace named *Sans Souci*, built by Frederic the Great. Here he sought repose from the dangers of the field, and the councils of the cabinet ; here too, that accomplished monarch died in 1781.

At WITTEMBURG, Luther, the Reformer, first preached his doctrines and sent out that light of religious freedom which has since illuminated Britain.

MINDEN, is famous for the victory gained in 1759 by Prince Ferdinand of Brunswick, with 7000 English, over the French who had 80,000 men.

DUSSELDORF on the Rhine has a splendid picture gallery.

AIX-LA-CHAPELLE celebrated for its mineral waters and for the peace of 1748, was the capital of the great empire of Charlemagne who is interred in the cathedral.

COLOGNE has the fragrant *Eau de Cologne*. The steeple of its cathedral, 501 feet in height, is the second as to elevation among the loftiest known edifices.

## HANOVER.

3. The KINGDOM OF HANOVER, of which the King of Great Britain is sovereign, lies in the north-west part of Germany ; and includes a great portion of the late circles of Lower Saxony and Westphalia. In the former are the principalities of Lunenburg and Zell, with the Duchies of Bremen and Verden, and in the latter East Friesland and Oldenburg ; with the bishopric of Osnaburg which has for its secular head the Duke of York, eldest brother of his Britannic Majesty. From Hanover came the illustrious

family now filling the British throne, who succeeded to it on the death of Queen Anne, August 1, 1714.—*Chief places*, Hanover, the capital, Brunswick, Gottingen, Bremen, Osnaburg, Embden, and Zell.

BRUNSWICK is noted for beer, and GOTTINGEN has an university, founded by George II.

BREMEN, a free town on the Weser, has, next to Hamburg, the best foreign trade of any place in Germany.

OSNABURG is famous for its linens.

Between Hanover and Mecklenburg, is the important city of HAMBURG, well placed on the Elbe. It is the chief seat of foreign commerce in Germany, and supplies a great part of northern Europe with merchandise, especially colonial produce.

#### SAXONY.

4. This kingdom, which is a central portion of Germany, includes Saxony Proper, and within its boundaries or connected with it, has, besides other districts, those of Saxe Weimar, Saxe Gotha, and Saxe Coburg. No part of Germany is superior to Saxony in richness and beauty, in industry, or in the arts and elegancies of life.—*Chief places*, Dresden, the cap., on the Elbe, Leipsic to the N. W. of it, and Weimar.

DRESDEN is called the German Florence, because its natural beauties and splendid productions of art render it to Germany what Florence is to Italy. Its gallery\* of paintings is the richest in Europe, and the Dresden mirrors and porcelain are celebrated. The pronunciation of the inhabitants is considered the purest in Germany.

---

\* The two *chef-d'œuvres* of the gallery are the *Virgin* of Raphael, and the *Night* of Corregio. The former has two children contemplating the infant, who afterwards said, "Suffer little children to come unto me," the latter represents the Adoration of the Shepherds. The halo of glory beaming round the infant Jesus, and finely contrasting with the surrounding darkness, is a fit emblem of the light which Christianity sheds over the moral darkness of the world.



## 92 BAVARIA.—WIRTEMBURG.—BADEN, &c.

LEIPSI<sup>C</sup>, near Dresden, is the centre of the German book-selling trade, and has two celebrated fairs. Here, in 1813, Bonaparte experienced from the allied armies a defeat which led to his final expulsion from Germany.

WEIMAR, has, from its literary fame, been styled the German Athens.

### BAVARIA.

5. This kingdom which is to the W. of Austria, includes the former circles of Bavaria and Franconia with a small part of the Lower Rhine. *Chief places*, Munich, the cap., an elegant city on the Iser, Augsburg, Ratisbon, Ingolstadt, and Hochstadt on the Danube, and Nuremburg, the cap., of Franconia.

At BLENHEIM, on the Danube, near Hochstadt, the Duke of Marlborough gained, Aug. 2, 1704, the most glorious of his numerous victories.

NUREMBURG has ingenious works, as prints, mechanical curiosities, and the toys usually called Dutch, which are made here or in the neighbourhood and sent down the Rhine to Holland.

### WIRTEMBURG.

6. The kingdom of WIRTEMBURG, one of the most fertile and populous countries of Germany, comprises the late circle of Suabia. *Chief places*, Stutgard, the cap., on the Neckar, and Ulm, on the Danube.

### BADEN, &c.

7. The Duchies of BADEN, and HESSE DARMSTADT, with the Principality of NAUSAU, are in the west part of Germany. The *chief places* of Baden, are Carlsruhe, Baden, Constance, finely seated on the lake, Mannheim,\* and Heidelberg. The *chief towns* of Hesse Darmstadt, are

---

\* Mannheim; the names of many places in Germany end with the syllable *heim*, the German for *home*. The English word *home* which sometimes awakens so many pleasing, and at other times so many painful recollections, is derived from it.

Darmstadt and Mayence, and Nassau has Hockheim on the Mayne.

CARLSRUHE, the residence of the grand duke, and the seat of government, is a neat town, built in the shape of a fan.

BADEN has celebrated warm baths.

HEIDELBERG, on the Neckar, is renowned for its capacious tun which held 800 hogsheads of generous Rhenish wine.

MAYENCE OR MENTZ lays claim to the invention of printing by Faustus and Guttenberg, about 1440.

HOCKHEIM, seated in the heart of the wine country, gives name to hock.

### MOUNTAINS, RIVERS, SURFACE, &c. OF GERMANY.

The chief MOUNTAINS of Germany are those of Hartz in Hanover; the Erzgebirg, or chain between Saxony and Bohemia; and the Tyrolese Alps in the south.

The chief RIVERS of Germany are the Danube, the Rhine, the Elbe, Oder, Weser, Moselle, and Mayne.

The DANUBE, the largest river of Germany, and the second in rank of European rivers, rises in the Black Forest, in Wirtemberg, passes by Ulm, Ratisbon, Passau, Lintz, and Vienna. At a short distance from Vienna it enters Hungary, and, having flowed through that country and Turkey, falls into the Black sea.

The RHINE, after leaving Switzerland in the neighbourhood of Basle, enters Germany, which it separates from France. Having passed by Spire, Mannheim, Mentz, Coblenz, Cologne, Dusseldorf, and Cleves this noble stream goes to the seven United Provinces: it receives the NECKAR at Mannheim, the MAYNE at Mayence, and the MOSELLE at Coblenz. The RHINE flows among wild rocks crowned with majestic castles rich in historic events, or at the foot of sloping hills clothed with fine vineyards. From the number of vine-covered hills which adorn its banks, the Germans call it the "Father of Wine."

The ELBE, the most commercial river of Germany, rises in Bohemia, flows by Dresden, Wittemberg, and Magdeburg, and enters the North sea below Hamburg, where it separates Holstein and Hanover. Its length is about 500 miles.

The ODER has its source in Silesia, passes by Breslau, Frank-

fort, and Kustrim, and falls into the Baltic near Stettin, after a course of 600 miles.

The WESER, which rises in the N. of Franconia, having passed Minden and Verden, enters the German ocean below Bremen.

*Surface.* In the north, Germany has mostly low land and sandy plains. The south is highly cultivated. Many elevated ridges intersect the country, which has also numerous forests. The largest of these is the Black Forest, in Wirtemberg, a remnant of that which, in the days of Tacitus, covered all Germany under the name of *Hercynian*.\* The forests of Westphalia are haunted by the wild boar, reared to a great size by the mast which falls from the numerous oaks.

To the circumstance of Germany having so many forests is attributable the passion for the chase shewn by its princes, of whom little often is known except that they are poor, proud, and tyrannical, and lovers of hunting.

*Climate.* Placed near the centre of the temperate zone, Germany has, for the most part, moderate heat and cold; but the winters, even in the south, are severe. The longest day is of nearly 17 hours in the N., and about 14 in the S.

*Products.* Germany has rich vineyards, and prolific mines. Among its wines those of the Rhine between Mayence and Cologne, and of Hockheim on the Mayne, rank highest. The hills of Saxony and Bohemia yield silver, copper, tin, and cobalt, with earths useful for the making of porcelain. Carinthia and Styria have fine iron. In consequence of this subterranean wealth, Germany has upwards of 1000 mineral springs, a number exceeding that of any other country in Europe. The most celebrated are CARLSBAD, in Bohemia; TOPLITZ, in Austria; SALTZ, in the Upper Rhine; and PYRMONT, in Westphalia.

*Government.* Most of the German princes are despotic

---

\* See Butler's *Quest.* in Roman Hist. Index, *Hercynian Forest*, Part II.

in their own territory. The two leading monarchies are those of Austria and Prussia.

*Religion.* Different religious sects divide Germany. Of these, the Protestants and Catholics, who are nearly equal in numbers, are the principal. The former are chiefly in the Northern states, the latter in those of the south.

*Inhabitants.* The German people were considered as a primitive nation by the ancients. Among the earliest inhabitants of the northern parts were the Cimbri and Teutones. The modern Germans bear a high character. They are brave, sincere and faithful; kind and hospitable; and possess good sense with a natural excellence of heart, which mixes itself with every thing. With much internal vivacity, and of that cheerfulness of temper which has been aptly called the music of the soul, they are, nevertheless, a reading and thinking people. A love of literature is found even among the lower classes, while the minds of the men and women of superior rank are highly accomplished, and their company is delightful and blameless. From its patient virtue, industry, and reflection, Germany may be called a wise country—a land of seriousness and truth.

*Language, Literature, &c.* The German language, which has the Teutonic for its parent, is copious; but, having many consonants, possesses strength rather than euphony, and, like the Latin, is involved in its construction.

The Germans can boast a greater number of useful discoveries and inventions than any other European country. While, by their having been the first who made clocks and watches, they have enabled man to note, and therefore to improve time, his richest possession: they also claim two out of the four great inventions which have most influenced the destiny of nations\*—those of printing and gunpowder.

---

\* The four inventions which have most influenced the interests of mankind are those of Printing, the Mariner's Compass, Gun-

The universities and literati of Germany are among the most learned in Europe ; though more particularly distinguished for the severer studies of natural philosophy and mathematics, of theology, metaphysics, and philology, Germany now boasts of poets whose works prove that the laurels of the Muses can flourish on its soil. Klopstock, whose genius was inflamed by reading Milton and Young, and who, for his Christian Psalms, has been called the David of the New Testament, was the founder of the German school of poetry, and the mantle of poetic inspiration has fallen on his successors, Wieland, Schiller, and Goëthe.

---

### THE AUSTRIAN EMPIRE.

The Austrian Empire includes, besides its German territories, the following divisions :

A considerable portion of the North of Italy, containing the districts and cities of Venice, Mantua, and Milan, which will be treated of under that country.

Austrian Poland, having the provinces of Galicia and Buckovina, in which are the town of Lemberg and the famous salt mines of Wielitzka, near Cracow.

Istria and Dalmatia, districts on the N. and E. sides of the Adriatic, with the Illyric isles. Istria has the commercial port of Fiume ; and Dalmatia, which is noted for fine timber, has Ragusa for its capital, and the port of Cattaro.

Hungary, Transylvania, Sclavonia, and Croatia.

*Government.* Francis II., the present Emperor of Austria, who was born in 1768, and ascended the throne in 1792, is despotic throughout his dominions. He is the

---

powder, and the Steam Engine. The discovery which will, perhaps, most affect the population of the world is that of vaccine inoculation.

greatest sovereign in Germany, and his empire ranks among the four leading states of Europe.

*Religion and Population.* The Roman Catholic religion prevails in the Austrian territories, the total population of which is about 30 millions.

### HUNGARY.\*

*Situation, &c.* Hungary, which was a district of ancient *Pannonia*, is an eastern portion of the Austrian dominions. It lies between the 45th and 49th deg. of N. lat., and has for its capital Presburg, on the Danube.

*Boundaries.* On the N. by Austrian Poland, from which it is separated by the Carpathian chain ; on the S. and E. by Turkey ; and on the W. by Germany.

*Surface.* Hungary is in general a level country, as may be inferred from the many rivers by which it is traversed. The Carpathian chain in the N., and the mountains of Transylvania in the E., give, however, an elevated character to those parts.

*Products.* The country, which is fertile, has the vegetable products of the N. and S., and in some districts produces the finest grapes in Europe. Hungary is rich in mineral stores, yielding gold, silver, copper, and iron ; and that beautiful gem, the true opal, is its peculiar product. The Hungarian horses are much admired.

*Divisions.* There are two divisions. 1. Upper Hungary : *chief places*, Presburg, the *cap.*, Schemnitz, and Tokay. 2. Lower Hungary : *chief places*, Buda, the *cap.*, and Pest. To the S. E. of Hungary is Transylvania, having Hermanstadt for its capital.

*Rivers and Mountains.* The Rivers Danube, Drave,

---

\* Hungary obtained its modern name from the Huns who settled in it.

Save, and Tiess, with the Krapak or Carpathian mountains.

*Lakes.* Platten See and Neusidler, both in the W. of Hungary.

*Places, &c.* On the banks of lake Neusidler, Prince Esterhazy, who is esteemed the richest subject in Europe, has a magnificent seat.

PRESBURG, the modern capital of Hungary, is beautifully seated on the Danube. The Emperors of Austria are crowned here, and in the castle are kept the regalia.

BUDA, the ancient capital and residence of the Hungarian kings, has magnificent hot baths.

CHEMNITZ and SCHEMNITZ are rich mining towns; the former having gold, and the latter silver mines.

TOKAY is celebrated for its wine, which, as it reaches the lips only of the higher ranks, has been dignified with the title of Imperial Tokay.

*Rivers.* The DANUBE, one of the leading features of Hungary, enters it a little E. of Vienna; having passed Presburg and Buda, it turns short to the S., and then flowing E., enters Turkey near Belgrade.

The SAVE rises in Carniola, separates Austria from Turkey, and joins the Danube at Belgrade.

The DRAVE, which has its source in the Tyrol mountains, unites with the Danube at Esseck, in Sclavonia.

The TIESS, the second in rank of Hungarian rivers, rises in the Carpathian chain, crosses Hungary from the N., and, after a course of 450 miles, falls into the Danube, W. of Belgrade.

*Inhabitants.* The Hungarians are a brave and noble race, and their services are much valued in the cavalry of the Austrian army. In person nature has been bounteous. The Hungarian women are beautiful, and the men are robust, handsome, and finely shaped. Their peculiar dress has been copied by our Hussars.\*

---

\* In the Hungarian language *Huszar* means the twentieth; because twenty peasants were obliged to provide one horseman for the country.

*Government.* The government is a monarchy, formerly elective, but now hereditary in the house of Austria. The States are a kind of aristocratic senate.

*Religion.* The Roman Catholic.

## POLAND.

Poland was partially dismembered, in 1772, by the three neighbouring powers, Russia, Austria, and Prussia; and in 1794 they divided the whole among themselves and entirely abolished the kingdom. By the Congress held at Vienna in 1815, it was, however, agreed to erect a considerable part of ancient Poland into a separate state under the protection of Russia. Warsaw was restored to its former rank of capital, and Cracow was made a free city. Poland, notwithstanding, is only the shadow of what it once was, and we may exclaim with the poet, "Alas! poor country, almost ashamed to know itself!"

*Boundaries.* It is now bounded on the N. by East and West Prussia; on the S. by Galicia; on the E. partly by the river Bug and a line continued northwards to lat. 54; and on the W. by Brandenburg and Silesia.

*Division.* Poland consists of the former districts of New East Prussia (or the greater part of it) on the N.; of Little Poland on the S.; and of Great Poland, sometimes called Southern Prussia, on the W.

*Places.* WARSAW, the capital, on the Vistula, is a large city, in which the two extremes of wealth and poverty, of fine edifices and mean dwellings, give an affecting proof of an oppressed and ill-governed country.

CRACOW, also on the Vistula, was the ancient capital, and here the Polish kings were crowned. This once magnificent city has neither arts nor manufactures, and exhibits a melancholy picture of fallen greatness. The royal palace, once the residence of the Castmirs, Sigismundis, and Sobieskis, is now a poor-house!

*River.* The VISTULA rises in Silesia, not far from the Oder,



flows by Cracow, Warsaw, Thorn, and Dantzick, and falls by different channels into the Baltic, after a course of 600 miles.

*Surface, &c.* Poland is a level country, and has a temperate climate. Its chief products are, corn, copper, tin, and lead. Very recent accounts state that its manufactures are reviving and its general condition improving.

*Government.* The government of Poland, when it was an independent state, had a mixed form, being regal and aristocratic. The crown was elective and the king was chosen by the nobles, gentry, and clergy. Stanislaus, who closed the series of Polish sovereigns, was dethroned in 1794, and sent to St. Petersburg, where he died.

*Religion.* The Roman Catholic.

*Inhabitants.* The Poles, who are supposed to be of Tartarian origin, are of a lively disposition. The higher ranks are polite and elegant in their manners.

## PRUSSIA.

*Boundaries, &c.* Prussia is bounded on the N. by the Baltic; on the S. by modern Poland; on the E. by Russia; and on the W. by Germany. Its capital is Koningsberg, on the Pregel.

*Divisions.* It has two principal divisions, called East and West Prussia. The chief places of the former are, Koningsberg, the *cap.*, and Pilau, its port. West Prussia has Dantzick, the *cap.*, Thorn, and Culm.

*Rivers.* The Vistula, Pregel, and Memel.

*Cities.* KONINGSBERG, a large and populous city, has some fine buildings. PILAU is its port for ships of great burden.

DANTZICK, well situated on the Vistula, near the Baltic, is strongly fortified, and has a great export trade, especially in corn and timber.

THORN, on the Vistula, is dear to science as the birth-place of Copernicus, the astronomer, who taught the true solar system—

the revolution of the earth, and of the other planets, round the sun.

**MEMEL** has the finest harbour in the Baltic.

*Rivers.* The **PREGEL** falls into the Baltic near Koningsberg.

The **MEMEL**, which rises in the government of Grodno, (Lithuania,) under the name of Niemen, having entered Prussia, is called Memel, and falls into the Baltic near the town of Memel. In conjunction with the Nieper, it forms a communication between the Baltic and the Black sea. The products of northern and southern Europe are thus exchanged.

*Surface.* East and West Prussia are level districts. The sea coast is remarkable for two inlets of the sea, spreading into large, but shallow sheets of water, and fenced from the Baltic by long, narrow slips of land. They are named the Frische and the Curische Haf; the word Haf meaning a salt lake.

*Climate and Products.* The air is cold but salubrious. The chief products are, corn, hemp, and flax. Amber, an object of ornament and curiosity, is found on the shores of the Baltic.\*

*Government and Religion.* Frederic William IV., the present king, who was born in 1770, and began to reign in 1795, is a despotic monarch. The religion of Prussia is the Lutheran.

*Political rank.* Prussia, little favoured by nature as to soil and climate, was raised to political distinction by the creative genius and warlike energies of Frederic II., who found two millions and a half of subjects when he ascended the throne, and having withstood the united efforts of the three great continental powers, left six millions of people and an increased territory at his death. Though Prussia is not a power of the very first class, its political influence is great; and in Germany, it is inferior only to that of Aus-

---

\* Amber is supposed to be a kind of bitumen that issues from the earth in a liquid state, and is afterwards indurated by exposure to the air.

tria. It is a military state; but its ports on the Baltic may in time give it commercial and maritime rank.

*Population.* The population of the Prussian monarchy was, in 1823, nearly twelve millions.

## SWITZERLAND.\*

*Situation.* This small, but interesting country, the ancient *Helvetia*, which for its romantic scenery has been called a world of wonders, lies in a central part both of Europe and of the N. temperate zone. It is remarkable for mountains and lakes; is one of the few countries of Europe which have no sea coast; and is the highest region of that quarter of the globe. So great is its general elevation, that one of its *valleys*, Grindelwald, rises 3150 feet above the level of the sea; a height nearly equal to that of Snowdon, the loftiest mountain in Wales.

*Boundaries and Extent.* Switzerland is bounded on the N. and E. by Germany; on the S. by Italy; and on the W. by France. It extends from the 45th to the 48th deg. of N. lat.

*Capital.* Bern, on the Aar, in 47 deg. of N. lat., and about 7° of E. long., being 4 degrees and a half south of London. Bern, which is more than 4000 feet above the level of the sea, is the most elevated capital in Europe.

*Divisions.* Switzerland, formerly divided into 13 cantons, now consists of 22 : viz.

### NORTHERN.

(Beginning on the East.)

<i>Cantons.</i>	<i>Chief Places.</i>
Thurgau .....	Franenfield.

\* Switzerland has its name from the canton of Schweiz, because that district was one of the earliest friends of Swiss freedom.

<i>Cantons.</i>	<i>Chief places.</i>
Appenzel.....	Appenzel.
St. Gall .....	St. Gall.
Schaffausen .....	Schaffausen.
Zurich .....	Zurich.
Aargau , ....	Aargau.
Zug .....	Zug.
Basle .....	Basle.
Soleure .....	Soleure.

CENTRAL.

(Beginning on the East.)

Grisons .....	Coire.
Glaris .....	Glaris.
Schweitz .....	Schweitz.
Uri .....	Altorf.
Underwalden .....	Stantz.
Lucerne .....	Lucerne.

WESTERN.

Bern.....	Bern.
Freyburg .....	Freyburg.
Neufchatel .....	Neufchatel.
Pays de Vaud .....	Lausanne.
Geneva .....	Geneva.

SOUTHERN.

Tessino .....	Bellinzona.
The Valais .....	Sion.

*Chief Rivers.* The Rhine, Rhone, and Aar.

*Lakes.* Constance, between Switzerland and Germany; Zurich, in the canton of Zurich; Lucerne, in that of Lucerne; lakes Neufchatel and Geneva, in the west, and those of Thun and Brientz, in the canton of Bern.

*Mountains.* The vast chain of the Alps; the principal summits of which are, mount Blanc, mount Bernard, mount Cervin, mount Rosa, mount Simplon, and St. Gothard.

*Places.* BERN, the finest town of Switzerland, is in a striking situation, on a bold eminence, at the foot of which runs the Aar, almost encircling the town. Its tranquil grandeur gives it the appearance of a Roman city, and it is a place of singular neatness and beauty; for the former of which it is much indebted to the wise custom of employing criminals in cleansing and repairing the streets.

BAZIL OR BASLE, the largest town of Switzerland, is nobly seated on the Rhine, where that river makes a sudden bend to the north, and becomes navigable. Hans Holbein, the painter, who came to England in the reign of Henry VIII., and painted the portraits of the leading characters of his court, was born at Basil; and the learned Erasmus, who selected it as the retreat of his declining years, is buried in the cathedral.

ZURICH, delightfully seated on a lake of the same name, has, from its love of literature and the number of its eminent men, been called the *Athens* of Switzerland. Geener, the poet, author of the *Death of Abel*, and many pastorals; Lavater, the physiognomist; and Zimmermann, who wrote on *Solitude*, were born here. At Zurich are kept the bow and arrow with which Tell, the hero,\* though not the author of Swiss liberty, is said to have struck the apple off his son's head at Akerf, in the canton of Uri.

GENEVA, finely placed at the W. extremity of the lake, just where its waters flow out and form the Rhone, is the most populous town in Switzerland, having 22,000 inhabitants. It is famed for education, talent, and correct morals; and has been called the metropolis of Protestant Europe, as placed in opposition to papal Rome. Here Calvin preached the doctrines of the Reformation, and here he died in 1549.

LAUSANNE enjoys a charming situation on the N. side of the lake of Geneva. Here was interred Amadeus VIII., Duke of Savoy, who twice resigned his crown, "*a golden care*," and sought in the shades of retirement that happiness which the splendour of courts and marshalled pomp of armies often fail to give. At Lausanne died, in 1823, Mr. Kemble, the first tragedian of his time.

---

\* Stauffacher, Walther Fürst, and Arnold de Melchtal, are regarded as the three founders of the Swiss liberty, because they laid the foundation of the revolt against the Austrian power.

CHILLON CASTLE, whose snow-white battlements are erected on a rock in the lake of Geneva, shines in Swiss history, and is the scenes of one of Lord Byron's poems.

SARNEN valley, which has recently been the subject of an interesting public exhibition at the Diorama, near Regent's Park, is in the canton of Underwalden, one of the wildest regions of Switzerland.\*

HOSPENTHAL, in the canton of Uri, is the highest village in Switzerland, being 4549 feet above the level of the sea. It has 34 houses, with a church and chapel.

*Rivers.* The RHINE springs from three sources near mount St. Gothard, which unite at Coire, in the Grison country. It passes through lake Constance, and, issuing from its W. side, goes to Schaffhausen, near which it has a remarkable fall; then flowing to Basle, it leaves Switzerland, and enters Germany. It afterwards visits the United Provinces, where it divides into branches which fall into the sea by different channels. The length of its *Swiss* course is 220 miles.

The RHONE rises between the Grimsel and Furca mountains, in the neighbourhood of the Rhine, but takes an opposite and westward direction. Having crossed the ~~Valle~~ <sup>Vallée</sup>, it enters the lake of Geneva, and, issuing from it at the opposite end, passes the town of Geneva, soon after which it leaves Switzerland and becomes a French river. The length of its *Swiss* course is 90 miles.

The AAR, an impetuous stream, wholly confined to Switzerland, rises in the centre of the country, flows through lakes Brienz and Thun, passes Bern and Soleure, and joins the Rhine. The rapid REUSS, issuing from lake Lucerne, and the transparent LIMMAT, coming from the lake of Zurich, unite with the Aar.

*Mountains.* The Alps constitute the most remarkable feature of Switzerland. Mount BLANC, so named from the deep mantle of snow, which not only clothes its summit, but reaches far down its sides, rises 15,662 feet above the level of the sea, and has usually been considered the most elevated point in Europe. Mount Rosa is, however, thought by some to be higher.

Mount St. BERNARD, which has on it a religious hospice with

---

\* The town of Sarnen is in lat. 47 N., long. 8 E.

twelve monks and twenty-six domestics, was founded in the eleventh century by St. Bernard de Manche, a gentleman of Savoy. The monks receive the poor without payment, and succour distressed travellers by sending out the domestics every morning during the winter on different routes. In these charitable offices they are assisted by dogs regularly trained to search for persons buried in the snow. The convent of St. Bernard, which is 8314 feet above the level of the sea, is the highest *permanently* inhabited spot in Europe.\*

Mount ROSA, thus named from its resemblance to an expanded rose, is situated N. of mount St. Bernard, in about 46 deg. of N. lat., and 8 of E. long.

Mount SIMPLON is celebrated for the magnificent road which Bonaparte made over it that he might always have a commodious passage for his armies into Italy. This miracle of art, which rivalled the labours of ancient Rome, and triumphed over nature herself, forms a principal entrance into Italy.

*Lakes.* Whilst CONSTANCE is distinguished for its superior depth and size among the Swiss lakes, those of LUCERNE and GENEVA are the most beautiful. Lucerne is called the lake of the Four sylvan Cantons, being surrounded by the districts of Lucerne, Schwitz, Uri, and Unterwalden. The lake of Geneva presents one of the most interesting and elegant of forms—that of a crescent—and has delightful scenery. “The lake of Geneva,” says a celebrated traveller, “seems formed to inspire beholders with a love of nature.”

Delightful lake! whose margin, gay and green,  
Smiles in soft contrast to the rugged scene  
Of stern-browed Alps, whose storms eternal roll,—  
How much thy varied charms entrance the soul!  
With what high passions must thy prospect move  
The heart that beats to liberty and love!  
Around, fair freedom builds her lofty throne,  
And rocks and valour guard it for her own.

AIKIN.

---

\* On the side of mount Rosa, in the region of eternal snow, are some miners' cabins, which are esteemed the most elevated dwellings in Europe, but they are habitable only two months in the year.

*Surface.* Switzerland has been called an epitome of Europe in the sublime and beautiful of nature. The gigantic Alps, their summits crowned with eternal snow, and glittering with ice amidst the regions of storms, boldly rise above the clouds, presenting a magnificent spectacle; while vast tracts of glaciers, separated by forests, corn-fields, and vineyards, together with lovely lakes, and fertile valleys studded with happy cottages, give an interest to scenes which both delight and astonish.

*Climate.* Switzerland has not a very happy climate. Whilst its vast mountains, the nursery of cold and storms, render the winter severe, the summer is often sultry in consequence of the heat reflected from the mountains, and of the confinement of the air by them within the narrow valleys. The longest day is of 15 hours and a half.

*Products.* The linens, silks, and watches, of Switzerland, are much esteemed; and cattle, which in the simplest nations constitute the peasant's wealth, are successfully reared.

*Inhabitants.* A high moral character distinguishes the Swiss, arising partly from their being shut out from the corruptions of the world by their mountains. They are industrious, temperate, and intelligent. Rich in the bounties of nature, and content with a few things, they seem to realize the descriptions of early ages. A Swiss cottage is a lively image of comfort, neatness, and pastoral simplicity. The true value of the Scripture maxim, that a good name is better than riches, is no where more felt than in this comparatively poor, but happy country. Switzerland enjoys no political power, but its name always excites ideas favourable to the inhabitants.

*Government.* Switzerland, as the ancient *Helvetia*, formed one of the early conquests of Cæsar.\* In more

---

\* See Butler's Quest. in Roman Hist., *Helvetia*, Index.



modern times it constituted a part of the German empire. With the house of Austria it remained until the oppression of its rulers excited the Swiss to revolt in 1307, and, after a glorious struggle, they established themselves as a free and independent state. Switzerland is a federative republic, consisting of independent cantons, governed by their own laws and magistrates.

*Religion.* Some of the cantons profess the Protestant and some the Catholic religion.

*Language.* The Swiss speak German, French, or Italian, as the several cantons border on Germany, France, or Italy.

*Population.* The population of Switzerland is computed at 1,700,000. Of these, a million are Protestants.

---

## SPAIN.

*Situation.* Spain, which was known to the ancients under different names,\* is in the south west part of Europe and central portion of the N. Temperate zone. It is strongly marked by nature for a distinct region of the European continent.

*Boundaries.* Spain is bounded on the N. by the bay of Biscay and France, from which latter it is separated by the Pyrenees; on the S. it has the Atlantic and Mediterranean; and on the W., Portugal with the Atlantic.

*Extent.* It lies between the 36th and 44th deg. of N. lat., and from the 10th deg. of W. to the 3d of E. long. The length is about 700 miles, and the breadth 600.

---

\* By the Greeks it was called *Iberia* from the river Iberus (the Ebro), and *Hesperia* from its extreme situation in the west. The Romans called it *Hispania*, the derivation of which has been differently accounted for.

*Capital.* Madrid, on the Manzanares, in lat. about 40 deg. N., and long. 3 deg. 30 min. W. It is 11 degrees and a half more south than London, and being 2,200 feet above the level of the sea, is, next to Bern, in Switzerland, the most elevated capital of Europe.

*Surface.* The interior of Spain is crossed by long mountain-ridges, interspersed with luxuriant plains and valleys. The southern provinces are decorated by fragrant pasturage, and groves of orange, cork, and chesnut trees, with rich vineyards.

*Climate.* Spain has a fine climate; the summer-heat being tempered by sea breezes. In the central parts, the winter is rendered severe by the elevated tracts. The longest day is of 15 hours' duration, in the N., and of 14 in the South.

*Products.* To no country of Europe has nature been a greater friend than to Spain: it has corn, wine, and oil, to strengthen and cheer the heart of man. The Spanish wool is very fine, and the steel, celebrated in the time of the Romans,\* is highly valued for its superior temper, supposed to be acquired from the quality of the waters through which it passes. Among the exports are, cork, anchovies, and barilla.†

*Divisions.* There are fourteen provinces, viz.

#### NORTHERN.

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Galicia .....	Compostella, Corunna, Ferrol.
Asturias.....	Oviedo.
Biscay .....	Bilboa, St. Sebastian.

---

\* And Spaniards temper steel for war. DRYDEN's *Virgil*.

† Barilla is a rich vegetable salt obtained from a plant of expensive and troublesome cultivation. It is used in making glass and soap, and in bleaching linen.

*Towards the Pyrenean Mountains.*

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Navarre.....	Pampeluna.
Arragon .....	Saragossa.
Catalonia .....	Barcelona.

## EASTERN.

Valencia ....	Valencia, Alicant.
Murcia .	Murcia, Carthagera.

## SOUTHERN.

Granada .....	Granada, Malaga.
Andalusia .....	Seville, Cadiz, Gibraltar, Cordova.

## WESTERN.

Leon.....	Leon, Salamanca, Valladolid.
Estremadura.....	Badajos.

## CENTRAL.

Old Castile .....	Burgos.
New Castile .....	MADRID, Toledo.

*Chief Rivers.* The Ebro, in the N. E.; the Minho and Douro, towards the N. W.; the Tagus, in the centre; and the Guadiana and Guadalquivir, in the S.

*Mountains.* The Spanish mountains are arranged in distinct chains. They are, the Pyrenees, between Spain and France; the mountains of Asturias, running along the north coast; the Castilian chain, which extends from Soria on the N. E. and runs S. W. towards Portugal; the Toledo mountains, nearly in the centre of Spain; the Sierra\* Morena, in Andalusia; and the Sierra Nevada, between that province and Granada.

---

\* The term *Sierra*, peculiar to Spain, and derived from the Latin *serra*, (a saw,) implies a chain of mountains whose successive peaks resemble a saw.

Mont Perdu, the loftiest of the Pyrenees, is about 11,000 English feet high. In the Sierra Morena, Cervantes has laid the scene of Don Quixote's exploits.

*Capes.* Capes Ortegal, Estaca, and Finisterre, in Galicia; Trafalgar, S. of Cadiz, in Andalusia; Tariffa, near Gibraltar; Palos, in Murcia; and Creus, in Catalonia.

The point del Estaca, situated a little E. of cape Ortegal, is the most northern; Finisterre, the most western; Tariffa, the most southern; and Creus, the most eastern points of Spain. At cape Trafalgar the illustrious Nelson finished his glorious career, Oct. 21, 1805.

*Islands.* Majorca, Minorca, and Ivica, in the Mediterranean.

*Bays.* The bay of Biscay, between France and Spain, beginning at Ushant isle, off the W. coast of France, and ending at cape Finisterre, in the N. W. part of Spain. Ferrol, Corunna, and Vigo, bays, in Galicia. The bays of Cadiz and Gibraltar in the S., with those of Carthage and Alicant in the E.

*Places.* MADRID, seated in a plain surrounded by mountains, and nearly in the centre of Spain, is about 300 miles from the sea every way. The Manzanares, on which it stands, being a torrent in winter and shallow in summer, gives it few commercial advantages. North of Madrid is the Escorial, one of the largest and most costly palaces in Europe. It was built by Philip II. to commemorate the victory which he gained, in 1557, over the French at St. Quintin, in France. At ARANJUEZ and ILDEFONSO are royal palaces.

SEVILLE, next in size to Madrid, and sometimes called the capital of Spain, has a fine cathedral. Segars and snuff are among the manufactures; and from it the Seville oranges are named.

CADIZ, the first commercial port in Spain, was, before the Spanish American possessions were separated from it, the chief deposit of their wealth.

BARCELONA, the chief commercial port of Spain on the Medi-

terranean, has more flourishing manufactures than any other part of the kingdom. Near it is **MONTSERRAT**, a solitary mountain, having on one of its sides a monastery of peculiar construction: fifteen hermitages are placed among the woods and the pinnacles of its rocks, which have a pyramidal shape, or in cavities hewn out of them.

**MALAGA**, the third commercial port of Spain, is celebrated for raisins, and for the wine called Mountain, from its being the produce of the neighbouring elevations. **CARTHAGENA**, founded by Asdrubal of Carthage, and named after that city, is the place from which Hannibal began his extraordinary march to invade Italy.\*

**GIBRALTAR**, the ancient Calpe, a rock impregnable by nature and art, belongs to the English, by whom it was taken, under Sir George Rooke, in Queen Anne's reign. During the siege by the French and Spaniards, which lasted three years, it was nobly defended by General Eliot, afterwards Lord Heathfield.

**SALAMANCA**, which has the best university in Spain, boasts a splendid victory gained by the illustrious Wellington over the French, in 1812; as does also **VITTORIA**, in Biscay.

At **St. JUSTE**, near Placentia, died, in 1558, the renowned Emperor Charles V., who, weary of empire and of political and religious strife, resigned his crown, and here sought repose in a monastery.

**XERES**, in the S. W. of Estremadura province, gave name to the wine called Sherry.†

*Rivers.* The **EBRO**, the ancient Iberus, rises in the Asturias chain, crosses Navarre, Arragon, and Catalonia, and enters the Mediterranean near Tortosa. The canal of Arragon, 250 miles long, connects, by means of the Ebro, the Mediterranean with the Atlantic.

The **TAJO**, or **TAGUS**, the largest river in Spain, and formerly renowned for golden sands, rises in the west of Arragon, crosses New Castile and Estremadura, traverses Portugal, and, after a course of 450 miles, flows into the Atlantic.

The **GUADIANA** takes its rise chiefly in the Sierra Morena

---

\* See Butler's Quest. in Roman Hist., Punic War.

† The Spanish X is pronounced like our S; hence Xeres is corrupted to Sherez, and from that to Sherry.

chain, crosses Estremadura, and, having formed a boundary between Spain and Portugal, enters the Atlantic near Tavora.

The GUADALQUIVIR also has its source in the Sierra Morena mountains, passes Seville, and, having crossed Andalusia, joins the Atlantic near Cadiz.

The DOURO rises in Old Castile, traverses the province of Leon, enters Portugal a little beyond Zamora, and, after becoming the boundary between that kingdom and Spain, flows into the Atlantic at Oporto.

The MINHO, which is the coast-separation between Spain and Portugal, rises in Galicia and falls into the Atlantic.

*Government.* Spain, which for a long time was divided into separate kingdoms, was first united under one crown in the persons of Ferdinand and Isabella. The efforts recently made to establish a free constitution having failed, the country is still governed by a despotic sovereign. Ferdinand VII., the present king, was born in 1784, and began to reign in 1808.

*Political rank.* With resources which, under a wise government, might render Spain a power of the first class, its political weight is small. Its great extent of coast on the Atlantic and Mediterranean offers a ready communication with southern Europe and the New World, and gives it many commercial and naval advantages.

*Religion.* The Roman Catholic, accompanied by a bigotry and superstition which have peopled numerous religious houses with monks and nuns. There are in Spain, says a learned writer, 200,000 ecclesiastics.

*Population.* The expulsion, in 1492, of the Jews, and of the Moors, in 1614, greatly thinned the population of Spain, which is now about eleven millions.

*Inhabitants.* Spain was originally peopled by the Celts from Gaul, and by the Moors from Mauritania, in Africa. In the north, especially in Biscay and Asturias, the people are active and martial, and inherit the character of their ancestors, who, as Cantabrians, long resisted the Roman

arms. In the central and southern parts the superior ranks are grave and proud, while indolence prevails among all. The Spaniards have warm passions; they are revengeful, and have not learned the Christian precept to forgive.

*Language, Literature, &c.* The Spanish tongue is one of the three great southern dialects which are derived from the Latin. It has also a mixture of the Teutonic, enriched by the Arabic. Spain has literary distinction, and is peculiarly the region of poetry and romance. The sixteenth century was its brightest poetic age. QUEVEDA, author of "The Visions;" LOPEZ DE VEGA, the most prolific writer that ever lived;\* and CERVANTES, who has added so much to the stores of innocent amusement by his immortal Don Quixote, enjoy the highest fame. In painting, MORALES, called the divine, VELASQUEZ, and MURILLO,† are most distinguished.

---

## PORTUGAL.

*Situation.* PORTUGAL, the ancient *Lusitania*, occupies nearly the whole western side of the Spanish peninsula. It is the most westerly country of Europe, and lies in the warm part of the N. temperate zone.

*Boundaries.* Portugal is bounded on the N. and E. by Spain, and on the S. and W. by the Atlantic. The river Minho divides it towards the north from Spain, while the Guadiana is its southern boundary.

---

\* He wrote 2400 pieces: of these, about 300 have been published in 24 vols. quarto.

† Murillo died by falling from a scaffold while engaged in the labours of his divine art; a death similar to that of the late English artists, Stothard and Gibbons. The former died while copying a figure in a church in Devonshire, and the latter while employed at Chatsworth house, in the county of Derby.

*Extent.* Between the 37th and 42d deg. of N. lat., and from the 7th to the 10th of W. long. The length is 300 English miles, and the breadth 100.

*Capital.* Lisbon, on the Tagus, and near the Atlantic, in lat. nearly 39 deg. N., and long. 9 deg. W., being about 12 degrees more south than London. It is better situated for an intercourse with America than any other European capital.

*Surface.* On the western side, Portugal has a long range of coast. It is mountainous in the north-east; but though less fertile than Spain, has some delightful spots. Numerous vineyards, crystal streams, verdant vales, and groves of orange, lemon, and cork-trees, render the scenery varied and beautiful.

*Climate.* The climate of Portugal is remarkably salubrious; the air pure and mild; and the sky serene. At Lisbon, the days of fair weather are computed at 200 in the year, and those of rain seldom exceed 80. Consumptive persons often visit the city on account of its mild climate. The longest day in Portugal is of nearly fifteen hours' length.

*Products.* Portugal has little corn, but abounds in wine, olives, almonds, and oranges.

*Divisions.* There are six provinces :

#### NORTHERN.

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Entre Douro e Minho *	Oporto, Braganza.
Tralos Montes .....	Miranda.

#### CENTRAL.

Beira .....	Coimbra.
Estremadura .....	Lisbon, Cintra, Estremos, Setuval.

---

\* *Entre Douro e Minho*; that is, the province between the rivers Douro and Minho.



## SOUTHERN.

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Alentejo.....	Evora, Elvas.
Algarve .....	Faro, Lagos.

*Rivers.* The Minho, Douro, Tagus, and Guadiana, already mentioned under Spain, with the Mondego. The Mondego, a native stream, rises in the province of Beira, passes Coimbra, and enters the Atlantic.

*Capes.* Cape Mondego, N. of the river Mondego; cape Roca, or the Rock of Lisbon, the northern, and cape Espichel, the southern, limit of the bay of Lisbon. Capes St. Vincent and Mary, in Algarve.

Sir John Jervis, having gained a great victory over the French and Spanish fleets, February 14, 1797, off cape St. Vincent, was created Earl St. Vincent.

*Bays.* Caldoa or Setuval, (commonly called St. Ubes,) and Lagos bay, in the S.

*Places.* LISBON, one of the most commercial cities of Europe, has a population of about 200,000, and some fine edifices. Like ancient Rome, it is built on seven hills.\* An earthquake, in 1755, destroyed nearly the whole city, which has, however, been elegantly rebuilt. The wine called Lisbon comes from this place. The English have a burial-ground here, in which are interred Dr. Doddridge, an eminent Dissenting minister, and Fielding, the celebrated novelist, who wrote Tom Jones.

Oporto, on the Douro, the second city of the kingdom for commerce and population, is the place where most of the Portuguese wine (hence called Port) is shipped.†

CINTRA,‡ near Lisbon, has fine scenery, consisting of stupen-

\* Butler's Quest. in Roman Hist., the Foundation of Rome, chap. 1.

† The number of pipes exported, in 1824, from Oporto, was 26,742; of which 19,698 were sent to England.

‡ Cintra, from some resemblance in its situation, has been compared with Malvern, near Worcester.

dous rocks, wildly interspersed with wood and water ; a convent fixed on a mountain, and seeming to overhang the sea ; with a summer palace of Moresque architecture.

BRAGANZA, noted for shawls, gives title of Duke to the reigning family of Portugal.

*Government.* Portugal was, until these few years, governed by an absolute monarch. But his power has been limited by recent events. The king has the title of " Most Faithful Majesty;" and his eldest son, that of " The Infant." John Maria Joseph, the present sovereign, was born in 1767, and began to reign in 1816. Portugal has little political weight, and is chiefly indebted for its existence, as an independent state, to a close alliance with England. Its geographical position on the Atlantic gives it commercial advantages.

*Religion and Population.* The Roman Catholic is the national religion of Portugal, which has nearly three millions of inhabitants.

*Language, Literature, &c.* The Portuguese tongue, though chiefly derived from the Latin, has many words of French origin. The literature of Portugal rose in the 15th century, the real epoch of her glory. Its genius, like that of Spain, shines in poetry and romance. In the reign of EMANUEL appeared RIBEYRO and SAA DE MIRANDA, the authors of some charming eclogues ; and FERREIRA, the dramatic and lyric writer ; but CAMOENS, at once the glory and shame of Portugal, extinguishes every meaner light by the blaze of his genius. His *Lusiad*, an epic poem, celebrating the expedition of Portugal to the east, has given him immortality.

In the 15th century Portugal attracted the admiration of Europe by numerous geographical discoveries ; and while Columbus discovered a new world in the west, to Portugal belongs the honour of having laid open the east by VASCO DE GAMA's expedition round the Cape of Good Hope.

---

## ITALY.

*Situation.* This interesting region, called *Hesperia* by the Greeks, and *Italia* by the Romans, and which has been so often celebrated by the poet, the orator, and the historian, consists of a large peninsula situated in the south of Europe, and in a central part of the N. temperate zone. In shape it somewhat resembles the human leg.

*Boundaries.* Italy is bounded on the N. by the Alps, which divide it from France, Switzerland, and Germany; on the S. by the Mediterranean; on the E. by the gulf of Venice; and on the W. by the Mediterranean and France.

*Extent.* From the 38th to nearly the 47th deg. of N. lat., and from the 7th to the 10th deg. of E. long. The length is about 600 English miles; but its greatest breadth, that of the northern part, is not half that extent.

*Capital.* Though the different Italian states have their own capital, Rome is usually termed the metropolis of Italy. It is on the Tiber and near the Mediterranean, in lat. 42 deg. N., and long. about 12 E., being nine degrees and a half more south than London.

*Surface.* Italy has a long range of coast on the Adriatic and the Mediterranean. On the north are the Alps and the extensive plains fertilized by the Po and its tributary streams. Tuscany has been called the garden of Italy on account of its fine air and rich soil. In the centre of the peninsula, near the coast, is that fertile but unhealthy district the Pontine marshes. The greater part of the kingdom of Naples is mountainous.

*Climate.* The climate of Italy is various. The air is generally serene, and an Italian sky, has, from its warmth and purity, become proverbial. The mountainous districts are, however, cold; and the low country, near the shores, is unhealthy. The *malaria*, as the exhalations from it are

termed, occasion dangerous slow fevers. The longest day is of 15 hours in the N. and of 14 in the S.

*Products.* In Italy, which is called the garden of Europe, Nature produces her gifts almost spontaneously: it has the richest fruits and most odoriferous flowers. Wine, olive oil, silk, and fruit, with capers, macaroni, and anchovies, are exported to France and England; and Italy manufactures gold and silver stuffs, rich velvets, mirrors, and other glass ware.

*Divisions.* Italy has the following divisions:

#### NORTHERN. \*

##### *Chief places.*

The Kingdom of Sardinia.. Turin, the *cap.*, Alessandria, and Genoa.

Lombardy, or the Austrian } Venice, Padua, Mantua, and  
States..... } Milan.

The Duchies of Parma \* }  
and Modena †..... } Parma, Modena.

#### CENTRAL.

Tuscany, including Lucca ‡.. Florence, the *cap.*, Leghorn, Lucca, and Pisa.

The Pope's Territories, or } Rome, the *cap.*, Ferrara, Ra-  
the States of the Church } venna on the Adriatic, Bo-  
logna, and Urbino, inland.

#### SOUTHERN.

The Kingdom of Naples... Naples, the *cap.*, Capua, Ta-  
rento.

---

\* Parma is subject to Maria Louisa, Archduchess of Austria, and late Empress of France, as consort of Bonaparte.

† Modena is subject to the Archduke Francis d'Este.

‡ Tuscany is subject to a branch of the House of Austria.

*Chief Rivers.* The Po, running across the N. of Italy; the Arno, in Tuscany; and the Tiber, in the centre of Italy.

*Mountains.* The Alps, on the N.; the Appennines, extending through the country from N. to S.; and Vesuvius, eight miles S. of the city of Naples.

*Bay and Gulfs.* The bay of Naples; the gulfs of Gaeta and Salerno; and that of Tarento at the foot of Italy.

*Straits.* The strait of Bonifacio, between Corsica and Sardinia, and that of Messina, between Calabria and Sicily.

In the strait of Messina, and at the distance of 6047 yards from each other, are the Whirlpool CHARYBDIS and the rock SCYLLA, which have been clothed with more than real terrors by geographers. In endeavouring to avoid the whirlpool, mariners sometimes were dashed on the rock: hence the saying, when a person in attempting to avoid one difficulty falls into another—"While wishing to avoid Charybdis, he fell upon Scylla."

*Islands.* Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, Elba, between Tuscany and Corsica, Malta, Capræa, in the bay of Naples, and the Lipari isles, N. of Sicily.

*Capes.* Cape di Leuca, the S. E., and cape Spartivento, the S. W. point of Italy; capes Passora, Faro, and Bocho, in Sicily.

*Lakes.* Lake Maggiore or Lougarno, and lake Como, both N. of Milan; lake Garda, E. of Brescia; lake Perugia, W. of Perugia, and nearly in the centre of Italy.

*Places.* TURIN, an elegant city on the river Po, is the residence of the King of Sardinia. Its situation combines with the beauty of a rich country the sublimity of Alpine scenery. The arcades, which here, as at Bologna, form the lower story in most of the streets, protect passengers from rain and sunshine.

GENOA rises from the Mediterranean like an ancient theatre, and its marble palaces, as viewed from the sea, well entitle it to

the epithet of the Superb.\* Genoa has manufactures of damasks, and of gold and silver tissues. Its rich velvets are used, among other purposes, for the robes of the great while living, and as a covering for their coffins when dead. Genoa boasts of giving birth to Columbus, but has no right to glory in an enterprise which she refused to encourage.

MILAN, the largest and most populous Italian city after Naples, is almost the only one of importance in the world which is not built upon a river.† The cathedral, second only in dimensions to St. Peter's at Rome, is a beautiful specimen of florid Gothic, and is of the finest white marble, which dazzles with its brightness when its pinnacles are lighted up by the sun. Milan has now been for many years the centre of Italian literature.

MANTUA is the strongest fortification in Italy. The city is immortalised by the birth of Virgil, the prince of Latin poets, who was born 70 years before Christ, and flourished in the Augustan age. Mantua-makers received their name from this place, in the same way as milliners, originally spelt *milaners*, derived their appellation from Milan.

VENICE, which seems to float upon the sea, is built upon 72 small islands, and is the most extraordinary city in the world. Instead of streets it has canals, and intercourse is kept up, not by coaches and carts, but by boats called gondolas. A horse is never seen unless exhibited as a sight. The city is magnificent, and has numerous bridges, domes, and palaces. The oriental style of the Ducal palace, of the Cathedral, and other ancient buildings, reminds the traveller of the close connexion of Venice with Constantinople and the East, before the discovery of a passage to India by the Cape of Good Hope transferred its wealth to the central and northern nations of Europe.

PARMA exhibits a melancholy contrast of present poverty and former splendour. Its Cathedral is adorned by the fine paintings of Corregio.

---

\* The Italians designate their principal cities by characteristic appellations; hence the following: Lucca, the Industrious; Genoa, the Superb; Bologna, the Fat; Florence, the Fair; Padua, the Learned; Rome, the Holy; Venice, the Wealthy; Naples, the Noble; Milan, the Great; Ravenna, the Ancient.

† See page 5 of this work.

Near LODI, in the Milanese, the Parmesan cheese is made which is said to be thus called because it was brought into notice by a Princess of Parma.

FLORENCE, delightfully seated on the Arno, and in a plain luxuriant with olive trees and vineyards, has, from its patronage of literature, arts, and sciences, been regarded as the Athens of Italy. It boasts a noble Gallery of Paintings and Antiques, the glory of which is; the famous Venus de Medici, "the bending statue that enchants the world;" and which is deemed a personification of all that is graceful, elegant, and beautiful, in the female form. The church of St. Croce, which has been called the Westminster Abbey of Florence on account of its monuments to the illustrious dead, contains, among others, the remains of Galileo, the astronomer; of Machiavelli, the political writer; and of Michael Angelo, whose comprehensive genius excelled in painting, sculpture, architecture, and poetry. Yet, among those who have immortalized Florence, we look in vain for a memorial of him who was her highest ornament, and perhaps the most exalted genius of Italy—Dante.

LEGHORN, (Livorno,) the port of Tuscany, is the most commercial city of Italy. Among its exports are the straw-hats to which it gives name, and the celebrated LUCCA oil.

BOLOGNA, a large and flourishing place, has the richest collection of paintings of any Italian city after Rome.

ROME, the mistress of the ancient world, and in modern times the seat of a spiritual empire, extensive and despotic, like its former one, is replete with relics of ancient grandeur. The city is still inclosed within the wall of the Emperor Aurelian, a circuit of about 12 miles, but two thirds of this space are covered with vineyards and gardens. Among its ruins we have only room to select the PANTHEON for its beauty, and the COLISEUM for its grandeur.\* The former, which was erected in the reign of Augustus, and dedicated to all the Gods, is still entire, being now a Christian church. The latter was an amphitheatre in which gladiators fought with wild beasts. Among the churches of modern Rome that of St. Peter is pre-eminent, as the largest and the noblest that was ever consecrated to the Deity. The Vatican

---

\* In Butler's Quest. in Roman Hist. will be found a list of the principal ruins at Rome.

palace, the winter residence of the Pope,\* is celebrated for its library, and contains the richest treasures of ancient and modern art, the Belvidere Apollo, and the master-pieces of Michael Angelo and Raphael.

NAPLES, built like a theatre, on the side of a lofty hill, and open to a most beautiful bay, is esteemed, after Constantinople, the finest situated capital in the world, and ranks the fourth in population among the European cities, having about 380,000 inhabitants. Near it were POMPEII and HERCULANEUM, both destroyed, A.D. 71, by the same eruption of mount Vesuvius. They were discovered in the last century, and laid open to the curiosity of visitors, who thus walked in the streets and entered the houses, temples, and theatres, of a people who existed above seventeen centuries ago.

*Rivers.* The Po, which was of classical fame as the Eridanus, and celebrated by the Muse of Ovid and Virgil, is the king of Italian rivers. It rises at the foot of mount Viso, about 30 miles from Turin, and, after a nearly straight course through the great plain of northern Italy of 300 miles, falls into the gulf of Venice, having received, in its passage, thirty rivers; of which the TREBBIA, the TICINO, and the ADDA, are the most considerable.

The ARNO rises in the Apennines, and passing by Florence and Pisa,† in the delightful vale to which it gives name, enters the Mediterranean.

The TIBER, celebrated by poets and historians, has its source in the Apennines, and falls into the Mediterranean, after having its banks crowned by the eternal city of Rome.

The RUBICON, also of historic fame, as the ancient boundary between Italy and Gaul, rises in the Apennines, and flows, under the name of Fiumesino,‡ into the Adriatic between Ravenna and Rimini.

\* The present Pope is Leo XII., who was born in 1760, and was raised to the Popedom in 1823.

† Pronounced as if spelt Peesa. The Italian *t* is sounded like the English *ee*. Thus Guido, the painter, is called Gueedo.

‡ That is, little river. Fiume is the Italian for river.



## ISLANDS OF ITALY.

SICILY, the largest and most valuable island of the Mediterranean, having a length of 170 miles, with a breadth of 70, is a kingdom annexed to that of Naples. Its form is triangular, each angle having a cape, and from its shape it was anciently called Trinacria. That fertility still exists which made it the granary of ancient Rome, and on account of which the Sicilian coins had on them the figure of Ceres, the goddess of agriculture. The vine is a principal object of care, and there are nineteen different kinds of grapes. Sicily also has the finest fisheries in the Mediterranean: two hundred species of fish frequent the Sicilian seas. The chief places are, PALERMO, the splendid and luxurious capital; Messina, Catania, and Syracuse. SYRACUSE was the birth-place of Archimedes, and by its walls and his wonderful machines, it was long defended against the Romans. In the E. part of the island is mount ETNA, the loftiest volcanic mountain of Europe; its height being 10,874 feet, while its circumference is more than 70 miles. It is divided by nature into three zones or girdles, as distinct both in climate and productions as the three zones of the earth. The upper part is marked by a circle of ice and snow,\* in the centre of which is the crater; a girdle of thick and verdant forests surrounds the middle; while the lower region, to the base of the mountain, consists of vineyards, corn-fields, and orchards, rendered fruitful by the lava, which, after a number of ages, becomes a rich soil. The snow of Etna, like that of Vesuvius, forms a valuable branch of commerce.

The LIPARI isles, twelve in number, are off the N. coast of Sicily. Stromboli, one of them, is a volcano. From the perpetual fires of its vast crater, which is a mile in circumference, and inferior in size only to that of Etna, Stromboli is called the Light-house of the Mediterranean.

MALTA, the ancient *Melita*, an island strong both by nature and art, and called the Key of the Mediterranean, belongs to the

---

\* It is in allusion to the snowy region of Etna that the inhabitants of Sicily call it the high-priest of the mountains, who, in his white surplice, offers incense to Heaven.

British. It was given, in 1530, by the Emperor, Charles V., to the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem, when the Turks expelled them from Rhodes. The Maltese oranges are very fine; and, as many of them are from the orange bud engrafted on the stock of the pomegranate, the juice is red. St. Paul was shipwrecked at Malta.\*

SARDINIA, which confers a regal title, is about 140 miles long, with a breadth of 70 miles. It produces wine, oil, fruits, and salt. Cagliari is its capital.

CORSICA, a mountainous and woody island, has Bastia for its chief town. AJACCIO, in the W. part of the island, is remarkable for giving birth, in 1769, to Bonaparte; and ELBA, an island famed on account of its iron mines, was selected by him for his residence when he abdicated the imperial throne of France in 1814. CAPRI or CAPREA, in the bay of Naples, is infamous as the retreat where the Roman Tiberius pursued his guilty pleasures.

*Government and Religion.* The sovereigns of the Italian States are despotic in their dominions. The Roman Catholic is the religion of Italy.

*Population.* The population of Italy, with the islands of Sicily and Sardinia, is about 14 millions.

*Language, Literature, and the Arts.* The Italian language, which is formed from the Latin, is the most beautiful and melodious of the dialects derived from that source.

Italy, the favourite abode of the four sister arts, has had, like England, two splendid epochs of the human mind,† the period usually termed the Augustan, and the age of the Medici. Among the illustrious names which at different periods have dignified Italian literature, are those of DANTE, called the Homer of modern Italy, because he was the father of her poetry; of PETRARCH, who was invited, at one and the same time, by the Senate of Rome and the university of Paris, to accept the poetic crown; of TASSO, who, in the sixteenth century, gave to Italy what she had

---

\* Acts xxvii.

† The reigns of the Queens Elizabeth and Anne were the two Augustan ages of English literature.

received from Virgil in the Augustan age—a noble epic poem;\* and of ARIOSTO, who was decorated by Imperial hands with the meed of poets,† and who has been styled the poetic rainbow of Italy, after her long wars.

Painting has vied with poetry in rendering Italy immortal. Besides the name of RAPHAEL, the prince of modern painters, the Italian school boasts those great masters, LEONARDO DA VINCI, MICHAEL ANGELO, and CORRADO, who have enabled it to snatch the palm of superiority from the rival schools of Holland and Flanders.‡

Italy, concentrating many rays of intellectual greatness, has bestowed on philosophy a GALILEO, whose improvement of the telescope brings the distant glories of the heavens near to us; and to Navigation she has given a GIOVIA, who, by his mariner's compass, enabled mankind to visit the remotest regions of the earth.

---

### THE IONIAN ISLES, or THE REPUBLIC OF THE SEVEN ISLANDS.

The Ionian Isles are Corfu, Paxos, St. Maura, Theaki or Ithaca, Cephalonia, Zante, and Cerigo. The first six are in the Ionian sea, near the W. coast of Turkey; while Cerigo is S. of the Morea.

The Ionian isles were subject to Venice in the days of

---

\* Virgil wrote the Eneid, and Tasso "The Jerusalem delivered," both noble epic poems.

† Three contemporary sovereigns honoured themselves by honouring men of genius. Henry VIII. patronized Holbein; it was in the arms of Francis I., that Leonardo da Vinci expired; and Charles V. crowned Ariosto with laurel.

‡ The Italian school comprised a period of nearly 500 years. Cimabue, its founder, who was called the father of modern painters, died in 1300. Salvator Rosa and Carlo Maratta, its latest ornaments, died, the one in 1673, and the other in 1713.

her splendour. During the late war they were successively occupied by the different belligerent powers; but were constituted at the Peace an independent Republic under British protection; the executive government being vested in his Britannic Majesty, who is represented by a Lord High Commissioner.

CORFU, the ancient *Coreyra*, being near the entrance of the Adriatic, may be termed its key. Its chief place, CORFU, is remarkable for strength, and as being the capital of the Sept-insular republic. The island is called Phæacia by Homer, who describes the lovely gardens of its hospitable King Alcinoüs.\*

ST. MAURA, which resembles the Isle of Man in figure, has the famous promontory of LEUCADIA, or the Lover's Leap, from which the victims of hopeless passion threw themselves as an effectual remedy. Sappho, the celebrated poetess, thus sought relief from the neglect of Phaon.

THEAKI, anciently *Ithaca*, is N. E. of Cephalonia. It consists of rugged eminences, with not a hundred yards of continuous level, which produce the best wine of the isles. Ithaca was the kingdom of Ulysses, the most sagacious of the many Greek princes who besieged Troy, and who was eminent for a knowledge of mankind. He loved the small, barren, and rocky Ithaca, not for its wealth or size, but because it was his own.†

CEPHALONIA, the largest and most commercial of the islands, has a circumference of nearly 120 miles, and, though mountainous, is fertile. The luscious grape and fig, the deep-red pomegranate, the fragrant citron and orange, with the verdant olive, are among its fruits.

ZANTE, the ancient *Zacynthus*, S. of Cephalonia, is, for its finished beauty, called "the Flower of the Levant." It yields currants, wine, and oil. Nearly two thirds of the cultivated land are occupied by the vine which produces the currants.‡

\* See Pope's *Odyssey*, book viii. 142, &c.

† Non quia larga, sed quia sua. CICERO.

‡ The annual average produce, for the last few years, was seven millions of lbs., and in 1812 it was eight millions. The currants are dried and exported chiefly to England, where they

CERIGO was the classical *Cythera*, a favourite abode of *Venus*, and the birth-place of Helen, whose beauty, which occasioned the siege of Troy, has, perhaps, been more destructive to human life than that of any other female, Cleopatra not excepted. Cerigo, though the fabled residence of the queen of love and smiles, is neither lovely nor smiling, but sterile and rocky. It abounds, however, with hares, partridges, and woodcocks, and, above all, with turtle doves, the bird of *Venus*.

*Inhabitants.* The population of the Ionian isles is about 200,000. The greater part being Greeks, the established religion is the Greek; but as many of the principal inhabitants are of Venetian origin, the Roman Catholics enjoy equal privileges. For the same reason the character of the people is a mixture of the Greek and Italian. Among the advantages derived by the Seven Islands from their connexion with Britain, the establishment, at Corfu, of an university, directed by native Professors, is not the least. For this they are indebted to the zeal and munificence of the present Earl of Guildford, who has been appointed Chancellor of an Institution which owes to him its existence.

## TURKEY IN EUROPE.

*Situation.* This fine region, situated in the S. E. part of Europe, and central portion of the N. temperate zone, is, for the most part, in the same parallels of latitude as Spain and Italy.

*Boundaries.* Turkey in Europe is bounded on the N. by the Russian and Austrian empires; on the S. by the Mediterranean; on the W. by the Adriatic; and on the E. by the Black sea, the Archipelago, and the sea of Marmora.

are used in puddings and the Christmas fare of mince pies. The Corinthian grape, from which our word currant is a corruption, must not be confounded with our fruit of the same name, the *Ribes* of the Botanist.

*Extent.* Between the 36th and 49th deg. of N. lat., and from the 17th to the 30th deg. of E. long. Its length is about 900 and its breadth 700 English miles.

*Capital.* Constantinople, on the Euxine and the sea of Marmora, in lat. 41 deg. N., and long. 29 deg. E., being about ten degrees and a half more south than London.

*Surface of Turkey.* The northern part consists in general of extensive plains. The central and southern districts are traversed by mountain-ridges. On three of its sides Turkey is washed by the sea. This long range of coast is marked by more gulfs and islands than are found in any country in the world, and the Grand Signior has more numerous and magnificent harbours than any of the European sovereigns.

*Climate.* Placed in the southern part of the temperate zone, Turkey has a climate soft, warm, and pure, but sometimes interrupted by the cold which results from mountainous tracts. The longest day in the N. is of about 16 hours' length, while in the S. it is of about 14 hours.

*Products and Commerce.* Among the useful products are, wheat, barley, and rice; and among the luxuries, wines, olives, figs, and other delicious fruits. Turkey trades extensively in carpets, raw silk, and cotton; dried fruits and dressed leather.

*Divisions.* European Turkey has the following districts :

#### NORTHERN.

(Beginning in the N. E.)

<i>Provinces.</i>		<i>Chief Places.</i>
Moldavia*	{ Parts of ancient Dacia	Jassy.
Walachia, . .		Turgovisto.

---

\* Moldavia and Walachia are governed by Greek Princes, having the title of Hospodar, who are appointed by the Grand Signior, and removable at his pleasure.

<i>Provinces.</i>		<i>Chief Places.</i>
Bulgaria . . . .	{ Parts of ancient	{ Widin.
Servia . . . . .	{ Moesia	{ Belgrade.
Bosnia . . . . .		Seraio.

## CENTRAL.

Romania, or	{ The ancient	{ Constantinople, Adria-
Rumelia . . . .	{ Thrace	{ nople.
Macedonia . . . . .		Salonichi.
Albania . . . .	{ Part of ancient	{ Durazzo, Scutari.
	{ Elyrieum	

## SOUTHERN.

The ancient Greece.

Thessaly . . . . .	now Jannina . . . .	LARISSA, Jannina, Lepanto.
Epirus, or	{	Chimæra, Missolonghi.
Lower Albania	{	
Livadia . . . .	{ The ancient Bœotia and Attica.	{ Athens, now called Attini; Thebes, the modern Thiva.
The Morea . .	{ The ancient Peloponnesus	{ Tripolizza, the cap., in the centre of the peninsula; Corinth, Argos, Napoli, and Misitra, the ancient Sparta.

*Chief Rivers.* The Danube, on the N.; the Mariza, in Romania; the Vardar, in Macedonia; the Drin, in Servia; and the Pruth, in Moldavia.

*Mountains.* Hæmus, a chain between Bulgaria and Romania, and ascending northwards to Servia; mount Rhodope, in Romania, and prolonging itself by the frontiers of Macedonia; mount Athos, in the S. E. of Macedo-

nia, and called Monte Santo (the holy mountain) from its being exclusively inhabited by monks; Olympus, in the N. of Thessaly; Pindus, a chain separating Macedonia, Thessaly, and Epirus; with Parnassus and Zagara in the W. of Livadia.

*Gulfs.* Those of Contessa and Salonichi, to the S. of Macedonia; the gulf of Lepanto,\* between Livadia and the Morea; and the gulfs of Napoli, Coron, and Arcadia, on the eastern, southern, and western sides of the Morea.

*Straits.* The Bosphorus or Strait of Constantinople, between the Euxine and the sea of Marmora; the Dardanelles, the Hellespont of the ancients.

Over the Hellespont, in a part where the distance between the opposite banks cannot exceed 500 paces, Xerxes threw a stupendous bridge of boats, for the purpose of transporting into Europe, from Asia, a hundred and seventy myriads of his soldiers, when he invaded Greece.

*Islands.* In the Archipelago, and belonging to European Turkey,† are Lemnos, Tinos, Delos, Naxia or Naxos, and Paros, with the large island of Negropont or Egripo, the ancient Eubosa. At the entrance of the Archipelago is Candia or Crete.

---

\* The gulf of Lepanto is famous for the victory gained, in 1571, by the fleet of Spain and of other Christian powers over that of the Turks. This useful victory, which quieted the fears of Christian Europe concerning the increasing power of the Infidels, was the first naval battle of any consequence fought in modern times.

† The islands of the Archipelago may be divided between Europe and Asia by the following limitation, which it may be useful for a scholar to know. A line drawn from the entrance of the Dardanelles, passing between Lemnos and Tenedos, between Skyros and Ipsara, and to the S. E. between Stanpalaia and Cos, and between Candia and Scarpanto, will assign the islands, on its west side, to Europe, and those on the east, to Asia.



The islands of the Archipelago, the *Ægean* sea of antiquity, are supposed to be the summits of mountains in a country submerged by the irruption of the Black sea, the straits being rent asunder by an earthquake. This opinion is founded on their general aspect, most of them appearing to have suffered from a violent inundation, which, washing away the soil, left only naked rock. Diodorus Siculus, the historian, records it as a fact.

*Places.* CONSTANTINOPLE, the ancient *Byzantium*, whose modern name perpetuates the glory of Constantine, its founder, surpasses all the European capitals in beauty and the advantages of situation. On the right is the sea of Marmora, and on the left the Euxine; while the Imperial city commands from her seven hills the opposite shores of Europe and Asia. When approached by water its appearance is magnificent; and the elevations present an imposing mixture of towers, domes, palaces, and mosques, the whole interspersed with rich masses of cypress trees. Within, however, Constantinople has little to recommend it except the mosque of Santa Sophia, formerly the Christian Cathedral, and others in the same style, with the Seraglio. In population the city ranks the third among the European capitals, having, with the suburbs, more than 400,000 inhabitants.

ADRIANOPLE, a city founded by Adrian, the Roman Emperor, is on the Mariza, and has a great trade, ranking as the second place in European Turkey. Before Constantinople was taken by the Turks, it was a principal residence of their Emperors.

SALONICHI, the ancient *Thessalonica*, enjoys, from its situation on the Vardar and gulf of Salonichi, the best foreign trade of Turkey in Europe. The Apostle Paul's two epistles to the Thessalonians were addressed to a Christian church at this place.

MISSOLONGHI, a strong depôt of the Greeks during their present contest with the Turks, is N. of the gulf of Lepanto, and opposite the isle of Cephalonia. Here, April 19, 1824, died the celebrated poet, Lord Byron, who had gone there to assist the Greeks in their struggle for freedom.

ATHENS, the city of Minerva, "the eye of Greece and of the civilized world," was peculiarly dignified by wisdom and genius. Her poets, her philosophers, and her orators, have delighted and instructed all succeeding ages; while her noble ruins, notwithstanding the injuries of time and violence, have excited and still attract their admiration. Among the latter are, the Acropolis,

or citadel, which now exhibits, though in a mutilated state, the works of the age of Pericles, and which has on it the Parthenon, and the temple of Minerva Polias, or Protectress of the city; \* the former of which is deemed the finest remaining specimen of Grecian architecture; the temple of Theseus, which is the most entire ancient edifice in the world; † the octagonal temple of the Winds, said to be built by Pericles; ‡ and the choragic monument of Lysicrates, commonly called the Lantern of Demosthenes. §

CORINTH, happily placed between two seas, had great commercial wealth, and was famous for the arts, especially painting. The Romans, who took and destroyed it 146 years B. C., imbibed their love for the fine arts from the pictures and statues which they found in it and conveyed to Rome. Corinth gave name to the most elaborate of the four orders of Grecian architecture. The Apostle Paul, who resided some time at Corinth, wrote two epistles to the Corinthians, in the first || of which is his argumentative and eloquent demonstration of the resurrection, which has been judiciously introduced into the fine burial service of the Church of England.

MISITRA, in the S. part of the Morea, is within sight of ancient SPARTA, renowned for her stern virtue, the severe discipline of her laws, and the sacrifice of private feeling to the public good.

#### RIVERS OF TURKEY.

The DANUBE enters Turkey at Belgrade, and, after a course of 400 miles through the country, falls, by several mouths, into the

\* The temple of Minerva Polias is as closely copied as the different distinction of the people will admit, in the New Church at Pancras.

† The temple of Theseus was built soon after the battle of Marathon, 430 B. C.

‡ The temple of the Winds has been imitated at the Observatory of Oxford. The steeple and vestibule of the Church at Pancras are also copied from this temple.

§ From the monument of Lysicrates has been taken the cupola of the Chapel in Waterloo Place.

|| Chap. xv.

Black sea between Bessarabia and Bulgaria. From its rise in Germany to its end in Turkey it receives numerous auxiliary rivers, and runs a length of 1700 miles.

The MARIZA, the *Hebrus* of antiquity, rises in mount Hæmus, and, having passed Philippi and Adrianople; flows into the Archipelago.

The VARDAR rises in the mountains which divide Servia from Rumania, separates Thessaly from Macedonia, and enters the gulf of Salonichi.

The PRUTH originates in the Carpathian chain, crosses Moldavia, and joins the Danube.

#### MOUNTAINS.

Poetry and the elegant fictions of Greece have given celebrity to the elevated ridges of Turkey; where, as Addison happily observes, "not a mountain rears its head unsung."

OLYMPUS, which rises 6000 feet, and is now inhabited by Christians, was the fabled abode of the heathen Gods and Goddesses.

ZAGARA, the ancient *Helicon*, PINDUS, and PARNASSUS, were the honoured seats of the Muses; and on the last of these, which has an elevation of 5000 feet, flourished, and still flourishes, the laurel, the meed of heroes and poets.

#### ISLANDS OF EUROPEAN TURKEY.

The islands of Turkey, "those gems of the Mediterranean," are, like its mountains, immortalized in fable and history.

At LEMNOS, which is situated exactly in the centre of the Archipelago, at an equal distance from Europe and Asia, Vulcan is said to have had his workshop, in which he made thunderbolts for "angry Jove," and armour for heaven-descended mortals; \* and it is remarkable that the rocks are of a decidedly volcanic nature.

NAXIA or NAXOS, the largest and one of the most fertile of the Cyclades, of which it is called the queen, was the fabled birth-place of Bacchus, to whom it was sacred. The vine, whose juice

---

\* For Achilles and Æneas. See the description of their shields in POPE's *Iliad*, B. xviii. 551, &c., and in DRYDEN's *Virgil*, B. viii. 830, &c.

he and his numerous votaries have so much loved, flourished in the island.

DELOS, a barren rock, N. of Naxia, is the centre island of the Cyclades.\* Here are still some fine ruins of the temples of Apollo and Diana, of whom this island was the reputed birth-place.

PAROS, six miles W. of Naxia, has quarries which supplied the Grecian sculptors with white marble for those unrivalled works into which their genius apparently breathed thought and feeling.

NEGROPONT, the largest island of the Archipelago, is separated from the coast of Turkey by the strait of Euripus, which is only 100 yards wide, and crossed by a bridge. It was anciently called the granary of Greece, and is still fertile.

CANDIA, the ancient Crete, one of the most beautiful and prolific spots on earth, has, nearly in its centre, mount IDA, the nursing place of Jupiter; and in the south the small river LETHÉ, or stream of oblivion, whose waters induced a forgetfulness of the past to those who drank them.

*Government.* The Emperor or Sultan, whom we have learnt from the Italians to call *Grand Signior*, or the Great Lord, is master of the property and lives of his subjects; yet, though absolute, he is restrained by religion as explained by the Oulima, a body which answers both to our clergy and lawyers, the Koran being the basis of the law as well as of the religion of the Mahometans. Like other despots, he is exposed to danger from popular insurrection, and is often the slave instead of the commander of the Janissaries; that is, his household troops.

*Religion.* The established religion is the Mahometan, of which the fundamental articles are contained in its short and well known creed, "that there is no God but God, and that Mahomet is his Prophet." The name given by the Mahometans to their religion is Islem, that is, the religion which gives peace of mind; and its professors are called

---

\* The Cyclades, a cluster of about sixty in number, round Delos, derive their name from a Greek word denoting a circle.

Moslem, which we corrupt to Mussulmen. Greece and its islands follow the tenets and ceremonies of the Greek church.

*Population.* About eight millions.

*Inhabitants; their origin and language.* The people of European Turkey have a various origin. The Turks themselves are of Tartarian descent. Some tribes issuing from the Altayan chain, gradually advanced to the west, and having subdued Persia, Asia Minor, and other districts, at length, in the middle of the 14th century, crossed over to Europe, where the capture of Constantinople, by Mahomet II., in 1453,\* firmly seated a Turkish empire. The language of Turkey is a harsh mixture of Asiatic dialects. The descendants of the Greeks inhabit the southern provinces, a region which, as ancient Greece, was the nursery of arts and sciences, and once the favourite abode of freedom and patriotism. The Greeks preserve a dialect of their ancient noble language. These people, indignant at the oppression of the Turks, are now engaged in a struggle for their liberty.

*The Turks.* The Turks are a grave and solemn people; rendered proud by ignorance and indolent by habit. Except the satisfaction derived from his horse, the pleasures of the Turk are of a passive rather than of an active kind. Give him his Arab horses, his splendid arms, his pipe, coffee, and sweetmeats, with a seat under the shade of a spreading tree, and he is content with life. In personal appearance the Turks are certainly the finest people in Europe, and their figures are much set off by their dress. A Turkish emir, in his green turban and saffron-coloured robe, is an interesting and picturesque person. Among the good qualities of the Turks are their charity, patience, resignation in adversity, and fervour in religion. Their solemnity, when at devotion, is striking: the whole soul appears to hold communion with the great Object of worship.

---

\* Though by the fall of Constantinople the Crescent triumphed over the Cross, its capture benefited western Europe; for the learned men, and the treasures of learning, which had been shut up in Constantinople, were dispersed over the continent, and the stores of Greek and Roman lore thus became familiar to its inhabitants.

## SUMMARY OF ASIA.

---

**Situation.** Asia, which is the eastern and largest portion of the Old World, forms one continent with Europe, and is connected (though in a smaller degree) with Africa by means of the Isthmus of Suez. The Pacific ocean separates it from America, to which, however, its north-eastern part makes a near approach; East cape, the extreme point of Asia, being only 42 miles from cape Prince of Wales on the opposite shores of America.

Among the four great divisions of the world, Asia is the second in size, but the first in wealth and population. In the eye of the philosopher, it derives a dignity from its having been the primitive seat of mankind and of the earliest civilization; and it is consecrated in the affections of the Christian because it was the scene of the birth, life, and death of Christ.

**Zones.** Asia occupies a space in three of the zones: its northern shores are within the arctic circle; its central regions lie in the N. temperate zone; while its southern districts, extending to within one degree of the equator, are in the torrid.

**Boundaries.** Asia is bounded on the N. by the Arctic or Frozen ocean; on the S. by the Indian ocean; on the E. by the Pacific; and on the W. by Europe, the Black sea, that of Marmöra, the Archipelago, the Mediterranean, and the Red sea between it and Africa.

**Extent.** In length, Asia is about 7,580 miles, and in breadth 5,200. The continent lies between the equator and the 80th degree of N. latitude; but many of the islands

are south of the equator, and extend to the 10th degree of southern latitude.

*Chief geographical features.* The Asiatic continent presents in general a connected mass of land. Whilst the centre of Asia is traversed by lofty mountains, its most southern part is formed into peninsulas. Three of its sides are washed by the ocean; and to the south-east lie numerous islands which are supposed to have been originally united to the continent, but afterwards to have been separated from it by some great operation of nature.

*Population.* Asia contains half of the human race, having nearly 500 millions of people.

*Divisions.* The continent of Asia has the following countries:

#### NORTHERN.

Asiatic Russia, or Siberia.

#### CENTRAL,

Turkey in Asia.		Thibet.
Persia		China.
Tartary, Independent and Chinese.		

#### SOUTHERN.

Arabia. Hindostan. India beyond the Ganges.

*Chief Islands.* Rhodes and Cyprus in the Mediterranean; Ceylon to the S. E. of Hindostan; Sumatra, Java, and Borneo, with the Moluccas and the Philippine islands, in the Indian ocean; the Japan isles N. E. of China, with New Guinea, and the large island of New Holland, in the Pacific.

*Peninsulas.* Kamschatka, the north-east part of Asiatic Russia; Corea, N. E. of China, and Malacca, a southern portion of India beyond the Ganges.

*Capes.* Cievero Vostochnoi, called also Taimura, in the N. of Asiatic Russia; cape Lopatka, the S. point of the

peninsula of Kamschatka ; cape Comorin, the S. point of Hindostan ; and cape Romania, the most southern extremity of Malacca and of the Asiatic continent.

*Mountains.* The Altayan chain which separates Asiatic Russia from Tartary, and, ascending the N. E. side of Asia, sends off a volcanic branch into the peninsula of Kamschatka ; mount Caucasus, between the Black sea and the Caspian ; Taurus, a ridge extending from Natolia, in Asiatic Turkey, across Persia, to India ; the Himmaleh mountains, the ancient Imaus, between Hindostan and Thibet, which are the highest in the world ; and the E. and W. Ghauts in Hindostan. The loftiest peaks of the Himmaleh chain range from 18,000 to 23,000 feet above the level of the sea.

*Seas.* In addition to the seas already mentioned among its boundaries, Asia has the following : the seas of Kamschatka and Ochotsk, to the N. E. of Asiatic Russia ; the Yellow and Chinese seas on the E. of China, with the sea of Arabia, between that country and Hindostan.

*Bays and Gulfs.* The bay of Bengal between Hindostan and the Birman empire ; the gulf of Tonquin to the S. of China ; the gulf of Siam in India beyond the Ganges ; the gulf of Cambay to the N. W. of Hindostan ; with the Persian gulf between Arabia and Persia.

*Straits.* Beering's strait to the N. E. of Asiatic Russia ; the strait of Malacca, between the peninsula of Malacca and the island of Sumatra ; the strait of Sunda between the islands of Sumatra and Java, and the strait of Babelmandel, which is the entrance into the Red sea.

Beering's strait separates Asia and America. It is the great object of Captain Parry's expedition to pursue a *westerly* course by the Frozen ocean, and, passing through Beering's strait, to enter the Pacific. The strait of Sunda is much used as a passage for European ships going to and from China.

*Chief Rivers.* The Oby, Yenesei or Jenesei, and the



## 140 THE RUSSIAN EMPIRE IN ASIA.

Lena, in Asiatic Russia; the Tigris and Euphrates, in Turkey in Asia; the Indus, the Ganges, and the Burrampooter or Sanpoo, in India; with the Hoan-ho and Yang-tse-Keang or Keang-ku in China.

### THE RUSSIAN EMPIRE IN ASIA.

*Situation.* This immense region, which extends through the whole of northern Asia from E. to W., and from the Arctic ocean to the borders of Tartary, forms the eastern and largest portion of the Russian empire. Its northern part is in the frigid zone; while its central and southern districts are in the N. temperate.

*Boundaries.* Asiatic Russia is bounded on the N. by the Frozen ocean; on the S. by Tartary, the Caspian sea, Persia, and Turkey in Asia; on the E. by Beering's strait, with the seas of Kamschatka and Ochotsk; and on the W. by the Ural mountains, the Wolga, and the Don.

*Extent.* Asiatic Russia has about 5,300 English miles from E. to W., and 2000 from N. to S.

*Surface and Climate.* The country, like European Russia, is for the most part level. The extreme northern districts are low and marshy, while the land in the southern part rises and finally terminates in the lofty Altayan chain. The cold in the N. of Siberia is proverbial and intense, lasting more than half the year. On the borders of the Caspian, and in the south, the climate is mild, and the soil fertile.

*Divisions.* In Asiatic Russia, a great part of which is often called Siberia, are the following districts:

#### *Provinces.*

#### *Chief Places.*

Tobolsk, on the W.....	Tobolsk, the cap.,	Tomsk.
Irkutsk, on the E. ....	Irkustk,	Yakustk.
The peninsula of {	} in the N. E. }	Nischey, St. Peter* and Paul.
Kamschatka..		

Astracan and	{ in the S. W. }	Astracan and Orienburgh.
Orienburgh..		
Georgia and Cir-	{ provinces between the Euxine }	Teflia.
cassia .....		

*Chief Rivers.* The Lena in the government of Irkutsk; with the Oby, Tobol, Irtysh, and Yenesei, in that of Tobolsk.

*Lake.* The lake of Baikal in the S. W. part of Irkutsk; which has the river Selenga for its chief feeder, and the Angara for its outlet.

*Places.* Tobolsk, on the confluence of the Tobol and Irtysh, trades with China; the Chinese caravans passing through it on their way to Moscow. Tobolsk has been the place of banishment for Russian state-criminals. Their number, rank, and wealth, have, however, rendered it the seat of enjoyment and luxury rather than of suffering and privation; and the exile, though far from the smiles of royalty, endures not its frowns and averted looks.

ICHIME, on the river Ichime, a little S. of Tobolsk, is celebrated in the tale of "Elizabeth, or the Exiles of Siberia," the principal scene of which is laid in the neighbourhood.

IRKUTSK, on the Angara near lake Baikal, exchanges the furs of Siberia for the silks and tea of China, for which intercourse its situation is favourable.

ASTRACAN, placed most advantageously on the Wolga, and near the Caspian sea, has therefore a very extensive trade, European and Asiatic.

The provinces of GEORGIA and CIRCASSIA are distinguished for the beauty of their females.

The peninsula of KAMSCHATKA is in the N. E. part of Asiatic Russia, between the 51st and 59th deg. of N. lat. Its chief wealth consists in animals of the chase, such as foxes, bears, and rein-deer, whose skins form the principal object of trade. The number of skins annually exported and consumed in Kamschatka is more than 30,000, of which sables and foxes form the chief part. VITTIMI has the finest sables in the world. The dogs of Kamschatka form a great portion of its riches. This faithful

animal draws travellers, and is employed in transporting fish, in supplying the house with water, the cattle with hay, and, in short, in doing all the work of horses. "A carriage, called a *narie*, and drawn by 13 dogs, took me," says a modern traveller, "80 miles in one day."

*Rivers.* The OBY, passes by Kolhyvan, Narim, Samarov, and Berezov, and falls into the gulf of Oby after a course of 1900 miles.

The IRTISH flows by Tobolsk, where it is joined by the Tobol. The united rivers then go to Samarov, where they meet the Oby.

The YENESEI enters the Frozen ocean in a bay to which it gives name, and has a length of 1700 miles. All these rivers rise in the Altai chain.

The LENA, the largest river of Asiatic Russia, rises on the W. side of lake Baikal, flows by Yakustk, and proceeds to the Frozen ocean.

*Products and Trade.* The chief riches of Asiatic Russia are its furs, mines, and fisheries. The country abounds in those animals which a kind Providence, attentive to the wants of his creatures, has provided with clothing adapted to their own comfort or for the supply of man's necessities. The bear, fox, and weasel tribes, with the sable, are common in Siberia, and their skins form valuable articles of commerce. The country has gold, silver, copper, and iron of a very superior quality. Its rivers abound with fish; particularly the sturgeon, which is said to unite the qualities of fish, flesh, and fowl. Its roe, salted, makes *caviare*, a favourite in northern countries, where it is eaten as a stimulus to the appetite; but the most valuable product of the sturgeon is the isinglass prepared from the air-bladders, and which is used in the beer and porter breweries of England.

*Population.* It being in general a bleak and barren country, Asiatic Russia is thinly inhabited. The population is not more than five millions.

*Inhabitants.* Many races of men, differing in appearance,

manners, and religion, are scattered over Asiatic Russia. To the south, Tartarian tribes, who are generally the most civilized of the natives, prevail. Towards the north dwell the SAMOIEDS, OSTIAKS, KORIAKS, and TECHUCKS, with other classes, who are sunk in superstition, and whose habits are gross and brutal. TOBOLSK and IRKUTSK, sister capitals, increase in knowledge, and enjoy both the comforts and luxuries of life; having Lancasterian schools for the instruction of the poor, and numerous private balls, with other amusements, for the pleasure of the wealthy.

### TARTARY.

Tartary, the ancient *Scythia*, included in its most extensive sense all that part of Asia which is between the Frozen ocean on the N., and Persia, Hindostan, and China, to the S. It comprised, therefore, Asiatic Russia, with Chinese and Independent Tartary. The name is now, however, usually applied to that tract of country which forms the middle belt or zone of Asia, from W. to E., and which is divided into Chinese Tartary in the E., and Independent Tartary in the W. The whole of Tartary is in the N. temperate zone.

### CHINESE TARTARY.

*Boundaries.* Chinese Tartary, a country tributary to China, is bounded on the N. by Asiatic Russia, on the S. by China and Thibet, from the former of which it is separated by the Great Chinese Wall; on the E. it has the Pacific ocean, and on the W. Independent Tartary.

*Divisions.* Chinese Tartary, divided into two chief parts, has Mandshuria in the E. and Mongolia in the W. To these may be added Little Bucharía, whose capital is Cashgar.

*Chief River.* The Amur, called also the Sagalien, rises in the Yablonoi mountains, (a branch of the Altai chain,) and having pursued, for nearly 2000 miles, an eastern,

though very devious course, through Mandshuria, falls into the sea opposite the island of Sagalien.

CHINYANG, the capital of Mandshuria, has the mausoleum of Kunchi, a Tartar prince, under whom, in 1644, the Mandshurs conquered China, and deposing the reigning monarch, fixed their leader on the throne, which his descendants still occupy.

KIATKA, the capital of Mongolia, is the principal seat of trade with Asiatic Russia.

*Surface.* Chinese Tartary is in general a vast elevated plain, composed of sandy deserts, yet having some fertile tracts and mountainous ridges. The ascent from China to Tartary has been reckoned at several thousand feet.\* The great desert of Cobi, one of the most remarkable features of Asia, and which is the highest continued level in the Old World, is an arid plain swept by bleak winds, and offering few vegetable productions, but abounding in wild animals.

*Climate.* Though the parallel of Chinese Tartary agrees with that of France and part of Spain, (both warm countries,) its general elevation causes severe cold, and the cold of the polar regions is experienced in the 29th degree of latitude.

*Products.* The principal trade of Mandshur-Tartary consists in gingseng, a medicinal drug much esteemed in China. Pearls, found in the rivers, are also an article of commerce.

## INDEPENDENT TARTARY.

Independent Tartary, a western portion of central Asia, is so named from its being governed by its own khans or rulers, and independent of its three great neighbours, China, Russia, and Persia. Its capital is Samarcand, in lat. 40 deg. N., and long. 65 deg. E.

*Boundaries and Extent.* Independent Tartary is bound-

---

\* The level of the table land of Tartary bordering on the Himalach chain is very far elevated beyond 8000 feet.

ed on the N. by Asiatic Russia ; on the S. by Persia, and some northern parts of Hindostan ; on the E. by Chinese Tartary ; and on the W. by the Caspian sea. It lies chiefly between the 35th and 54th deg. of N. lat. ; having a length of about 1500 miles, and a breadth of 870.

*Divisions.* Independent Tartary has three principal divisions : 1. The country of the Kirgusees, on the N., which, with that between the Caspian and the sea of Aral, has been called Turcomania. 2. The district of Kharism, between the Caspian and the river Jihoon. *Chief place*, Khieva. 3. Great Bucharia, including the provinces of Balk and Gaur. *Chief places*, Samarcand and Balk.

*Rivers.* The Jihoon (called also Anu) and the Sir, or Sihoon.

The JIHOON, the ancient Oxus, which has its chief source in the Belur mountains, having been joined by the Balk, takes a N. W. direction, and falls into the sea of Aral, after a course of 900 miles.

The SIR, or SIHOON, also rises in the Belur chain, and, flowing N. W., enters the sea of Aral.

*Chief Lake.* The sea or lake of Aral, in the W. part of Independent Tartary, is a great salt lake, extending about 200 miles from N. to S., and 70 from E. to W.

SAMARCAND, now an insignificant place, enjoyed great fame as a seat of learning. It was also the residence of Timour, or Tamerlane, who, in the 14th century, defeated Bajazet, the Turkish emperor, conquered Persia, Syria, Asia Minor, and Egypt, and was conducting an expedition against China, through Tartary, when Providence put a hook into the mouth of the great Leviathan and arrested his progress by death.

*Inhabitants.* The Tartars, who are descended from the ancient Scythians, generally lead the same life as their ancestors—that of wanderers.\* They dwell in tents, which are removed from place to place as the land becomes exhausted and pasturage

---

\* Happy the Scythians, houseless train !

Who roll their vagrant dwellings o'er the plain.

FRANCIS'S *Horace*.

fails; or, as they increase, and their flocks and herds multiply, they separate, like Abraham and Lot;\* one proceeding to the right and the other to the left. They subsist principally on sheep and horse-flesh; for the Tartar, as the poet says, first rides his horse, then eats him. The horse is indeed to him what the rein-deer is to the Laplander, and the camel to the Arab—his greatest wealth. The favourite drink of the Tartars is koumis, or mare's milk fermented with ground millet. The different hordes or tribes are ruled by their own Khans or Princes. They have few religious ideas, but Mahometanism has its votaries.

### TIBET.

*Boundaries and Extent.* Tibet is bounded on the N. by Chinese Tartary; on the S. and S. W. by Hindostan; and on the E. by China. It extends from about 27 to 35 degrees of N. lat., and from 75 to 101 of E. long.

*Divisions.* The country is divided into Tibet Proper on the W., and Bootan on the E. The capital of the former is LASSA, and of the latter, TISISUDON.

*Rivers.* In the mountains of Tibet originate some of those mighty rivers which pursue an amazing length of course through China, Hindostan, and other countries. Among them the BURRAMPOOTER† requires here to be noticed, which, under the name of SANPOO, is chiefly a Tibetan river, and traverses the country from its N. W. side to Assam, which it divides into two parts; and after a course of more than 2000 miles unites with the Ganges, and falls with it into the bay of Bengal.

*Surface.* Tibet is a mountainous region. Tibet Proper has for the most part rocky hills without vegetation, or extensive arid plains. The province of Bootan is, however, covered with eternal verdure, and abounds in forests of large and lofty trees.

---

\* See Genesis xlii. 9.

† Burrampooter is a corruption of the words Bramah-pooter, the son of Bramah.

*Climate.* The climate of Tibet, in consequence of its great elevation, is very cold, and the severity of the winters, even below the 30th deg. of latitude, equals that of the Swiss Alps in 46 deg. of lat. The lakes are frozen to a late period in spring, and an English traveller had the pleasure of skating on one of them below the 30th degree of latitude.

*Products.* Tibet produces gold, lead, musk, and tin-cal, which last is a fossil dug out of a lake, and afterwards refined into borax. The wool of which the Cashmere Indian shawls are made, comes from the hair of Tibetan goats. Tibet Proper abounds in animal life, having a great quantity of wild fowl, game, and beasts of prey. Among the quadrupeds is the Yak, or Musk Ox, which delights in a cold climate. His tail, composed of flowing glossy hair, being mounted on a handle, is made into a kind of fan, called a chowry; which is used to drive away the insects generated by a warm climate, and also as an elegant ornament.

*Religion.* Tibet is tributary to China, but a sovereign, who unites the regal and spiritual dignity with the title of Grand Lama, presides over it. Him the people worship, and his soul is believed to pass into and animate the body of an infant, who, on the discovery of his identity, by such testimonies as their religion prescribes, is acknowledged and proclaimed sovereign by the same title as his predecessor. The Lama's palace is on mount Putala, seven miles E. of Lassa. Tibet has many monasteries; the principal one is that of Teshoo Loomboo.

---

## TURKEY IN ASIA.

*Situation.* Asiatic Turkey, once the seat of learning and wealth, rich in historic fame, partly derived from the



exploits of Cyrus and Alexander ; honoured by the birth of the great apostle of the Gentiles ;\* and sanctified by the life and death of our Saviour, constitutes the largest and most valuable portion of the Turkish empire. This interesting region lies in the west of Asia and central part of the temperate zone.

*Boundaries.* Turkey in Asia is bounded on the W. by the Archipelago and the Mediterranean ; on the E. by Persia and the Caspian ; on the S. by Arabia and the Mediterranean ; and on the N. by the Black sea, part of Circassia, and the sea of Marmora.

*Extent and Capital.* Asiatic Turkey extends from nearly the 30th to the 42th deg. of N. lat., and from the 27th to the 46th of E. long. The capital is Aleppo, in Syria ; lat. 35 deg. and three quarters N., and long. about 37 E.

*Surface.* Turkey in Asia has an extensive line of coast on the Mediterranean and the Black seas. The interior is in general mountainous. Asia Minor resembles a large elevated terrace, supported on all sides by chains of mountains. There are, however, wide and fertile plains, the residence of numerous flocks and wandering tribes.

*Climate.* The climate is warm and serene in the plains and valleys, and on the sea coasts. The heat of summer is moderated by the numerous chains of mountains ; and soft breezes, from the three seas on which Turkey in Asia borders, diffuse an agreeable warmth in winter.

*Products.* Asiatic Turkey has many fruits, including the grape, olive, fig, and date. The last of these, a fruit peculiarly strengthening and nutritive,† is an essential article of food, and often the chief support of the common

---

\* The Apostle Paul was born at Tarsus in Cilicia.

† Dates have always been considered strengthening. They

people. The shores of the Black sea, called the orchard of Constantinople, have entire woods of cherry-trees, which derive their name from the town Cerasus, (the modern Keresoun,) near which they stand. The exports of Asiatic Turkey are cotton, silk, leather, carpets, and dying drugs, with Angora and chevron wool.\*

*Divisions.* Turkey in Asia has the following districts :

#### WESTERN.

The Peninsula of Lesser Asia, or Asia Minor,† including	
<i>Provinces,</i>	<i>Chief places,</i>
Natolia .....	Smyrna, Bursa.
Karamania .....	Satalia.
Roum or Rumiya..	} part of ancient Pontus } Amasia, Trebizond.
Armenia or Turcomania.....	
	Erzerum.

#### SOUTH-EASTERN.

Kurdistan (the ancient Assyria) .....	Kurdistan.
Diarbec (the ancient Mesopotamia) .....	Diarbec, Mousul.
Irak Arabi.....	Bassora, Bagdad.

afford much wholesome nourishment, and are extremely restorative. This simple food is sufficient to nourish a traveller a long time.—*Encyclopædia Perthensis.*

\* A soft, silky wool, which is formed on the back of the camel in winter and falls off in summer.

† In some maps Asia Minor is divided into Natolia, Caramania, Abdulla, and Amasia. Abdulla is S. of Caramania, and Amasia is occupied by the district mentioned in this work as Roum or Rumiya. The modern Natolia includes, among other ancient districts, those of Mysia, Æolia, Lydia, Ionia, and Caria, all on or near the Mediterranean. Here also were the seven churches of Asia mentioned in the book of Revelation, viz. Pergamos, Laodicea, Philadelphia, Thyatira, Sardis, Ephesus, and Smyrna.

## NEAR THE MEDITERRANEAN.

*Province.**Chief Places.*

Syria, including Palestine or the Holy Land.	{ Aleppo, Scanderoon or Alexandretta, Antaky the ancient Antioch, Tripoli, Damascus, Jerusalem.
---	---

*Chief Rivers.* The Kizil Ermaak or Red river, the Meander, and the Sarabat, in Lesser Asia; the Euphrates and Tigris, running through the provinces of Armenia, Kurdistan, and Irac Arabi; the Orontes and Jordan, in Syria.

*Mountains.* Mount Taurus extending through Lesser Asia, from the shores of the Archipelago to Persia; Caucasus, between the Black and Caspian seas; Ararat, in Armenia, between Persia and Turkey, in lat. 40° and long. nearly 45°; with the lofty Libanus and Anti-Libanus, the sacred Lebanon, in Syria.

*Islands.* Mytilene, Tenedos, Scio, Samos, and Patmos, in the Archipelago; Rhodes and Cyprus in the Mediterranean.

*Gulfs and Bays.* Satalia in the S. of Asia Minor, the gulf of Samsoun, and the bay of Sinope, in the N. of it; and the gulfs of Smyrna, Scala Nova, and Marmorice on its western side; with the bay of Scanderoon in Syria.

*Places.* ALLEPPO, once large and populous,\* was, by means of the caravans from Bagdad and Bassora, the mart for Persian and Indian commodities. Scanderoon, called by the Franks Alexandretta, is its sea-port.

SMYRNA, the most commercial place of Asiatic Turkey, and the emporium of the Levant trade, contends with six other cities for Homer's birth.

AISALUCK, near Smyrna, stands on the site of ancient EPHEsus, the most illustrious city of Asia, adorned with a superb temple which was built by the common contribution of the

---

\* A part both of Aleppo and Antioch was destroyed by an earthquake in August 1824.

Asiatic cities, and classed among the wonders of the world. Of the grandeur of Ephesus scarcely a vestige remains, nor of its temple, set on fire by Eratosthratus, who either not being able or willing to do any good action worthy of remembrance, destroyed it that he might be talked of by posterity.

JERUSALEM, seated in a sterile country and on the brow of a large hill, is in its modern state about two miles and a half in circuit. "Fallen from its high estate," it yet survives in our affections as the city of the Most High, the metropolis of Israel, adorned with the grandest temple ever consecrated to the true Deity, and as the scene of the Saviour's presence and crucifixion.

DAMASCUS, placed in the centre of a glorious plain, is encircled to the distance of thirty miles by lovely gardens, and has that essential article of eastern luxury, numerous fountains. Damascens, originally called *damaçenes*, damask roses and table cloths, were named from this place. Between Damascus and Jerusalem, Saul, who under his subsequent name of the Apostle Paul became the most zealous of Christians, was converted to their faith.

ANTAKY, the *Antioch* of scripture, in which Christians first received their name, and where "a great number believed,"\* has, among a population of ten thousand, only one hundred and fifty Christian families, who, not being permitted to have a church, resort to a cave near the town for the performance of their religious duties.

BALBEC, situated between Tripoli and Damascus, has a magnificent ruin of the Temple of the Sun; and about 150 miles S. E. of Aleppo are the splendid and extensive remains of TADMOR or PALMYRA, the seat of Zenobia's empire.

BAGDAD, on the Tigris, once the splendid seat of the Saracen caliphs, is renowned in eastern tales.

HILLAH, S. of Bagdad, and in latitude about 32 N., is said to be built on the site of BABYLON, the most ancient city in the world, once the powerful and magnificent, but now only existing in the page of history, in the denunciations of scripture,† and a few mouldering ruins!

BASSORA, on the united Tigris and Euphrates, supplies Euro-

---

\* Acts xi. 21.

† Isaiah xiv. 4—23.

pean Turkey with eastern commodities by means of its happy situation on the Persian gulf.

*Rivers.* The KIZIL ERMAK, the ancient Halys, and the greatest river of Lesser Asia, rises in mount Taurus, and, after a devious course through nearly the whole of the peninsula, flows into the Black sea west of the gulf of Samsoun.

The MEANDER, now called Minder, rises in Anatolia, flows westward, and joins the Mediterranean opposite the Isle of Samos. It has a remarkably winding course : hence rivers having numerous flexures are said to *meander*.

The SARABAT, famous under the name of Hermus for its golden sands, rises in Natolia and falls into the archipelago N. of Smyrna.

The EUPHRATES, the largest and most celebrated river of Asiatic Turkey has its source near Erzerum, in Armenia ; divides that province from Roum, flows through Irak Arabi, and and having joined the Tigris, enters the Persian gulf below Bassora. Its banks are still distinguished by fine willow trees, such as are described in that melancholy strain of the Hebrew captivity when the disconsolate children of Israel hung their harps on the willows, sat down by the side of the stream, and wept as they thought of Zion.\*

The TIGRIS, so named, from its swiftness, and which had on it the ancient Nineveh, rises in the same tract as the Euphrates, flows southward by Mosul and Bagdad, and joins that river near Bassora. The garden of EDEN is supposed by some writers to have been situated between the place where the Euphrates and Tigris unite, and near to the spot where Bassora now stands.

The ORONTES, the principal stream of Syria, rises a little N. of Damascus, and, after many circuits, falls into the Mediterranean.

The JORDAN, renowned in Jewish history, and for the baptism of Christ, rises in mount Lebanon, flows from north to south, and loses itself in the Dead sea.

*Mountains.* ARARAT was the resting-place of Noah's ark when the waters subsided

LIBANUS, the scriptural LEBANON, was famous for its cedars, extolled by the royal Psalmist, and which formed part of the

---

\* Psalm cxxxvii.

various contributions to Solomon's temple.\* Those stately ornaments, those venerable patriarchs of the vegetable world, have almost disappeared.

*Islands.* MYTILENE, the ancient LESBOS, was famous for its exquisite wines, so often extolled by ancient poets.† It was also ennobled by intellectual greatness having given birth to Alcæus, the lyric poet; to Pittacus, one of the seven Grecian sages; and to the poetess Sappho, dignified by the title of the tenth muse, whose fame has survived her poems.

At Cos were born Æsculapius, the father of medicine, and Apelles, the greatest of ancient painters.

SAMOS was the native isle of the philosopher Pythagoras, who taught the doctrine of the transmigration of souls.

At PATMOS, John the Evangelist is said to have written the book of Revelation.

RHODES had at the mouth of its well-frequented harbour the celebrated Colossus, a statue ranked among the wonders of the world. Rhodes was long the residence of the Knights of Jerusalem when they were driven by the Turks from Palestine.

SCIO, formerly CHIOS, one of the loveliest of islands, was celebrated, like Lesbos, for wines.

*Government.* The government of Asiatic Turkey is administered by Pachas nominally subject to the Grand Signior, and whose rank is distinguished by the number of horse-tails which are carried before them like standards.

*Religion and Population.* Mahometanism is the national faith of Turkey in Asia, which has a population of about 10 millions.

## ARABIA.

*Situation.* Arabia, a large peninsula formed by the Red sea, the Indian ocean, and the Persian gulf, is in the west

\* Cedar wood being remarkable for durability was much used by the ancients. The beams and rafters of Dian's temple at Ephesus were formed of it.

† Horace, Ode xvii. Bk. i.; Virgil, Geor. ii. 89, 90.

part of Asia, having its extreme southern portion in the torrid zone, with the northern and central districts in the temperate.

*Boundaries.* On the N. Arabia is bounded by Asiatic Turkey, from which it is partly separated by the Euphrates ; on the S. by the Indian ocean ; on the W. by the Red Sea ; and on the E. by the Arabian sea and the Persian gulf.

*Extent.* Arabia extends from the 13th to the 34th deg. of N. lat., and from 33 to 59 deg. of E. long. From the N. E. to the S. W. corner, its length is about 1500 miles, and its greatest breadth about 1200.

*Divisions.* Arabia has been divided by some geographers into three parts—Arabia Petræa or Stony Arabia, a small province N. of the Red sea, between Egypt and Palestine ; Arabia Deserta or Desert Arabia, in the central part of the country, the inhabited parts of which border on the Red sea ; and Arabia Felix or Arabia the Happy in the S. W. part. By a modern division, Arabia contains six provinces. 1. Hedjas (bordering on the Red sea). *Chief places*, Medina, Mecca, and Jedda. 2. Yemen or Tehama (near the Red sea). *Chief places*, Sana and Mocha. 3. Hadramaut, (on the Indian ocean,) the capital, Shibam. 4. Oman, (near the gulf of Ormuz,) the capital, Moschat. 5. Lascha, (on the Persian gulf,) the capital, Laschas. 6. Nedsjed, (in the interior,) the capital, Kariatain.

*Mountains.* Horeb and Sinai, in Arabia Petræa.

*Islands.* Bahrein, in the Persian gulf, has a productive pearl fishery, and Socotra, lying off the coast of Africa, but belonging to Arabia, is celebrated for aloes.

*Capes, &c.* Rasalgat is the most eastern point of Arabia. The isthmus of Suez separates the Mediterranean from the Red sea, and joins Asia to Africa.

*Chief Places.* SUZZ stands on the celebrated isthmus of the same name.

MECCA, the Holy City, was the birth-place of Mahomet, the False Prophet.

JERDA or JUDDAH, on the Red sea, is the sea-port to Mecca, and the principal medium of trade between Egypt and India.

MEDINA, the burial-place of Mahomet, is the great resort of Mahometan pilgrims, it being considered by all true Musselmén as a religious duty once at least to visit the prophet's tomb.

MOCHA exports the finest coffee, to which it gives name.

MOSCHAT, advantageously situated near Persia and opposite Hindostan, is the most considerable trading port of Arabia.

*Mountains.* HOREB and SINAI are in that part of Arabia Petrea which is at the head of the Red sea, and where it forms two small gulfs. The tract which separates these gulfs is named the Desert of Sinai, into which Moses led the children of Israel when they left Egypt and journeyed to the Promised Land. On Mount Horeb Jehovah appeared to Moses in a fiery bush; and on Sinai the law was given to the Jewish legislator.

*Surface.* The geography of Arabia is denoted by the names of its three great divisions—the Stony, the Desert, and the Happy. The country has been compared to a coarse garment with a rich border: the central part is a dreary desert, destitute of water, trees, and vegetation, and marked only by the tract of caravans. The coasts, having an intercourse with strangers, are more civilized, and the soil more fruitful. Want of water is the great defect of Arabia, which has not any considerable river. Its few streams, in opposition to what is seen in Europe, being absorbed by the sandy tracts which they pervade, decrease as they approach the sea.

*Climate.* The climate of Arabia is sultry. The scorching wind called *Kamseon* prevails part of the year, and



bian sea and the Persian gulf; on the E. it has Tartary and Hindostan; while on the W. are Turkey and Arabia, from the former of which Persia is separated by the Tigris and Euphrates.

*Extent.* Considering the rivers Aras and Kur as the northern boundary of Persia, it may be said to extend from the 40th down to the 25th deg. of N. lat., which will assign it a length of about 1000 miles, while its breadth is nearly the same.\*

*Surface.* The Persian districts bordering on the Caspian, particularly those of Ghilan and Mazanderan, are exuberantly fertile. The western side of Persia has a long mountainous ridge; while the more central and southern provinces are formed either of plains or of elevated land. The tract on the shores of the Indian ocean, which consists of sandy deserts, was the ancient *Gedrosia*, through which Alexander the Great, returning from India, led his army, at the imminent hazard of its destruction by thirst and famine.

*Climate.* The provinces near the Caspian enjoy a delightful climate; the mountainous districts are cold; while in those of the south, near the Persian gulf, the heat for four months is so intense, that even the natives, unable to bear it, are forced to quit their houses and retire to the mountains. On the same account, most of the Persians sleep in the open air, on the flat roofs of their houses, during the summer.

---

\* It is usual in books of geography to include the districts of Daghistan and Schirvan among the provinces of Persia; but their greater part, especially that near the Caspian, is subject to Russia, whose line of navigation on that sea is limited by the river Kur on the W., and the gulf of Balkan (lat. about 40) on the E. The Kur and the Aras may therefore be deemed the N. boundary of Persia. See ARROWSMITH'S *Map of Asia*.

*Products and Trade.* Persia has silk and cotton, particularly in its provinces of Ghilan and Mazandran. It also produces gums, drugs, and assafetida, and on the western coast of the Caspian are very copious springs of naphtha or fossil oil. Near Nishapore, a royal city in Khorasan, are the famous *Turquoise* mines, which so long furnished the world with its chief supply of those beautiful stones. Persia has also exquisite fruits and lovely flowers. The modern taste for the latter is said to have come from Persia to Constantinople, from which it was transferred, in the 16th century, to western Europe. The pearls found in the Persian gulf are deemed superior to those of Ceylon.

*Divisions.* In Persia are the following Provinces :

#### EASTERN.

(Beginning on the N.)

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Chief places.</i>	
Khorasan .....	Meschid.	
Segistan .....	Zarang.	
Mekran ..	} the ancient Gedrosia {	Keg.
Kerman ..		Kerman.

#### CENTRAL.

Mazanderan, S. of the Caspian . . . Fehrabad.  
 Irak Ajemi (the ancient Parthia) .. Ispahan, Tehiran.  
 Fars (Persia Proper) . . . Shiraz, Yezd.  
 Laristan (near the Persian gulf) .. Lar, Gombroon.

#### WESTERN.

(Beginning on the N.)

Ghilan (W. of the Caspian) . . . Rhesd, on the Caspian.  
 Aderjiban (the ancient Media) . . . Tauris.  
 Khosistan (the ancient Susiana) . . . Shuster.

*Chief Rivers.* The Kur and the Aras were called Persian rivers before the union of Georgia and some neigh-

bouring provinces with Russia. Among the native streams of Persia are the Ahwaz, on the W., and the Himmend, on the E.

*Lake.* Lake Zere, in Segistan, said to be ninety miles in length.

*Mountains.* Those of Elwend, running from N. W. to S. E., through Irak Ajemi and Fars; Meder mountain, in the S.; and the Gaur, between Persia and Tartary.

*Places.* TEHIRAN, the present capital of Persia, the circumference of which is between four and five miles, is seated in a plain at the foot of high mountains, backed by the Caspian sea.

ISPAHAN, on the river Zeindehrud, was a magnificent city, adorned with fine palaces, splendid mosques, and large caravanseras for the reception of travellers. The seat of royalty being now transferred to Tehiran, Ispahan, the late capital, has declined in wealth and grandeur.

SHIRAZ has been celebrated by the poets, with some exaggeration, for its splendid gardens, and with greater truth for its wine, esteemed the richest and most potent in the East. The bazaar, or market place, in this city is perhaps the largest in the world. It was built by Kureem Khan, and is nearly half a mile long and 50 feet wide. The whole of this great length is vaulted above, like Exeter Change in London, to exclude heat, yet to admit air and light. Every trade has its separate quarter; it may therefore be styled an epitome of the mercantile world.\* When lighted at night, it has a grand effect. Hafiz, the celebrated Persian bard, wrote amidst the delightful scenery of Shiraz, and drew from it some brilliant images in the same manner as the British poet of "*The Seasons*" derived some fine thoughts from the beauties of Richmond. The tomb of Hafiz, who is buried where he sang, has on it the most expressive of epitaphs, two of his finest odes.

PERSEPOLIS, the ancient and splendid capital of the Persian

---

\* A considerable part of Shiraz, with its stately mosques and minarets, was destroyed by an earthquake in June, 1824. Several of the inhabitants perished. The fine bazaar is still standing, but much shaken and injured.

kings, which stood about 30 miles N. E. of Shiraz, was destroyed by Alexander the Great, in a fit of inebriation, at the suggestion of Thais, a profligate female. Dryden has finely described the scene in his "Alexander's Feast."

YESD, from its central situation, is the great emporium of the Persian trade, particularly in silks and carpets.

The modern town of HAMMADAN is supposed to be on the site of the ancient ECBATANA, chosen on account of its more northern latitude for the summer residence of the Median and Persian kings; while SUSAN, near Shiraz, being more to the south, and therefore warmer, was their winter abode.

*Rivers.* The KUR, anciently Cyrus, rises in the chain of the Caucasus, and falls into the Caspian.

The ARAS, formerly the Araxes, issues from the same mountains, and joins the Kur.

The AHWAZ, anciently the Choaspis, whose waters were the drink of the "Great kings," originates in the Elwend chain, and having flowed by a southern course through the province of Khosistan, joins the united Tigris and Euphrates.

The HIMMEND, the largest *inland* stream of Persia, rises in the province of Segistan from two sources, and flowing W., is absorbed by the thirsty deserts of central Persia.

*Government.* The country is governed by a despotic monarch, who is styled Shah. Females are excluded from the throne. The present court of Tehiran is splendid, and the king's body guard consists of 12,000 men.

*Religion.* Mahometanism is the national faith of Persia. The religion of the Guebres, or ancient fire-worshippers, is still extant, there being in Yesd and its district 4000 families who are its votaries.\*

---

\* This religion was founded by Zoroaster, who lived about the year of the world 2860. He taught his followers to worship the Deity under the symbol of light or fire; considering its bright, pure, active, and incorruptible nature, as the nearest resemblance to the Great Spirit. Thus the Persians honoured the sun as the noblest "image of its Maker;" and offered up their sacrifices in the open air, thinking it impious to worship within

*Population.* There are in Persia about ten millions of inhabitants.

*Inhabitants.* The Persians are a gay and luxurious people; social in their habits and intelligent. They are courteous to strangers and insinuating in their address; but, as no reliance can be placed on their promises, they are pleasing and agreeable companions rather than beneficial or faithful friends.

*Language and Literature.* The Persian language, which is rich, elegant, and melodious, has been spoken by the greatest princes in the politest courts of Asia. For its sweetness and harmony it has been compared with the Italian, and for colloquy it is said to rival the French.

Persia has had great poets. FIRDOUSEE, author of that most stupendous monument of Eastern literature, the *Shu Namu*, an historical poem of sixty thousand couplets; SADEE,\* who, having sung of fruits and flowers, the loveliest products of Persia, may, like the British Phillips, be called Pomona's bard; and HAFIZ, who, for his joyous odes, glowing with love and wine, was styled the Anacreon of the East, are the great masters of the Persian lyre.

## INDIA, OR THE EAST INDIES.

India, popularly called the East Indies, includes two great regions of southern Asia, divided by the course of the

walls Him who "dwelleth not in temples made with hands," and who fills infinite space. We learn from Cicero, that at the instigation of the Persian Magi, Xerxes was said to have burnt all the temples of Greece, because the builders had impiously presumed to inclose within walls the Gods, to whom all things ought to be open and free, and whose proper temple is the whole world.

\* Sadee, who died, it is said, at the age of 116, wrote Gulistan, or the Flower Garden, about the year 1258, and afterwards Bostan, or the Fruit Garden.

**Ganges.** The first, which comprehends the countries between the river Scinde or Indus on the W., the Ganges on the E., and the Indian ocean on the S., is called Hindostan, or India Within the Ganges, and sometimes, though improperly, the Western Peninsula. The second portion, comprising the countries between the Ganges and China, is known as India Beyond the Ganges, or the Eastern Peninsula. Under the name of East Indies are also included many islands in the Indian and Eastern oceans.

## HINDOSTAN.

**Boundaries.** It is bounded on the N. by Tibet, on the S. by the Indian ocean, on the E. by the bay of Bengal, and on the W. by Persia and the Arabian sea.

**Extent.** Hindostan extends from about the 8th to the 35th deg. of N. lat., its length being about 1890 English miles; and from about the 66th to the 92d deg. of E. long., which gives it a breadth of 1600 miles.

**Divisions.** Hindostan is generally divided into three parts: 1. HINDOSTAN PROPER, which includes all the provinces north of the Nerbuddah, a river falling into the gulf of Cambay, in lat.  $21\frac{1}{2}$  N. 2. The DECCAN, or the districts between the Nerbuddah and the Kistna, which falls into the bay of Bengal, in about  $15\frac{1}{2}$  deg. N. lat. 3. The PENINSULA, which comprises the provinces between the river Kistna and Cape Comorin.

## HINDOSTAN PROPER.

(In the N. W.)

Provinces crossed by or near the Indus.

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>To whom they belong.</i>	<i>Chief Places.</i>
Cabul.....	The Afghans.	Cabul.
Cashmire ..		Cashmire.

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>To whom they belong.</i>	<i>Chief Places.</i>
Lahore . . . . {	The Seiks and Hindoo Chiefs.	Lahore.
Moultan . . . . {		Moultan.
Scinde . . . . {		Tatta.

## MORE CENTRAL,

Beginning in the East, with the Provinces crossed by or  
near the Ganges.

Bengal . . . . {	The British.	Calcutta.
Bahar . . . . {		Patna.
Benares . . . . {		Benares.
Allahabad . . . .	British and W. Mahrattas . . . .	Allahabad.
Oude . . . . .	British and Nabob of Oude . . . .	Lucknow.
Delhi . . . . .	British and a King or Mogul . .	Delhi.
Agra . . . . .	British and W. Mahrattas . . . .	Agra.
Agimere . . . . .	British and W. Mahrattas . . . .	Agimere.
Malwa . . . . .	The Western Mahrattas . . . . .	Ougein.
Guzzerat . . . . .	British and W. Mahrattas . . . .	Amedabad; Surat.

## THE DECCAN.

(Beginning in the East.)

The Circars.....	The British.....	Jagernaut.
Orissa.....	{ The British and Eastern Mahrattas. }	{ Cattack.
Berar.....		
	{ The Nizam or Soubahdar of the Deccan and the Eastern Mahrattas. }	{ Nagpour.
Candeish.....	The Western Mahrattas....	Burhampoor.
Aurangabad, or	{ The Nizam.....	{ Aurungabad.
Dowlatabad..		
Golconda, or	{ The Nizam.....	{ Hyderabad.
Hyderabad..		

Visiapour .. { The Nizam and the W. } Visiapour,  
                  {         Mahrattas.         } Poonah.

The Carnatic, on the Coro- mandelcoast, including Tanjore, &c.	{	The British and the Na- bobs of Arcot and Tan- jore.	{	Arcot, Ma- dras, Pon- dicherry.
The Mysore . .		The British and the Ra- jah of Mysore.		Seringapatam, Mysore.
The districts on the Malabar & western coast, including Co- chin, Travan- core, &c. . .	{	Governed by the British, and by Rajahs.	{	Cochin, Ca- licut.

*Rivers.* The Scinde or Indus, the Ganges, the Sanpoo or Burrampooter, and the Nerbuddah, in Hindostan Proper; the Godavery, and the Kistna between the Deccan and Peninsula.

*Islands.* Bombay, in the N. W., and Ceylon, in the S. E.; the Laccadives and Maldives, in the Indian ocean; the Andaman and Nicobar islands, in the bay of Bengal.

**Cape.** Cape Comorin, the S. point of Hindostan.

**Provinces and Places.** CASHMIRE, a small province, romantically encircled by mountains and intersected by the river Behut, is also distinguished by many lakes, ornamented with floating



islands. For its beautiful scenery and delightful climate, it has been called "a garden in a perpetual spring;" and its general elevation caused it to be chosen by the Great Moguls as their summer retreat. Its roses hold the highest rank in the East for brilliancy and odour, and the season when this queen of flowers first opens its charms, is kept as a festival. The shawls of Cash-mire, which are made of wool brought from Tibet, and for one of which it is not uncommon to pay from £500 to £1000, have great celebrity.

The province of LAHORE includes the district called the PAN-JAB, a Persian term signifying the five rivers by which it is traversed,\* and which are celebrated for the exploits of two mighty conquerors—of Alexander the Great, who crossed three of them with 120,000 men and 200 elephants; and of Timur, or Tamerlane, by whom they were passed at the close of the 14th century. An avenue of trees, affording shade, that essential comfort in hot climates, formerly extended from the city of Lahore to that of Agra, a distance of 500 miles.

AGRA and DELHI, two cities on the Jumna, were the principal seats of the Mogul Empire,† and have many remains of ancient grandeur, but through the devastations of those scourges of the earth, named conquerors, are fallen from their greatness. At Agra is the splendid mausoleum of Traje-Mahl, the Begum of the Emperor Shah Jehan, an edifice far superior to that erected by Artemisia for her husband, though it ranked among the wonders of the world. It is entirely of white marble, was twelve years in building, and cost fifty lacks of rupees.‡

\* The five rivers are, the BEHUT, formerly the *Hydaspes*; the CHUNAUB, the *Asines* of Alexander; the RAUTEE, the ancient *Hydraotes*; the BEYAH, the *Hyphasis* of antiquity; and the SER-LEGE. On the *Hydaspes*, Porus, an Indian prince, was defeated by Alexander, the final limit of whose Indian Expedition was the *Hyphasis*.

† The Mogul empire, established in Hindostan by the Mon-guls from Mongolia, a district of Tartary, began with Bahar, A. D. 1526, and ended with Shah Aulum, in 1760.

‡ A lack of rupees is 100,000 rupees; which, supposing them

**BENARES**, a noble and populous city, finely placed on the Ganges, was the chief seat of Braminical learning, and has the most sacred pagoda of the Hindoos, called Vis-visor.

**CALCUTTA** is the capital of Bengal, and also of the British East India possessions, as the residence of the Governor General, who has a magnificent government house. Here are many splendid edifices, and the houses of the Europeans, which are of Grecian architecture, are elegant, commodious, and adapted to the warm climate. Calcutta has an extensive commerce, upwards of 600 ships annually taking their departure from its harbour. In the old fort, now used as a custom house, is the too famous black hole, where, in 1736, Surajah Dowla confined 140 Englishmen, of whom 123 perished by suffocation.

**DACCA**, N. E. of Calcutta, and **MORSHEDABAD**, N. of that city, have successively been the capitals of Bengal before Calcutta. At the former, which is seated on the confluence of the Ganges and Burrampooter, are made the finest muslins.

**OUVERN**, the capital of Malwa, formerly a splendid city, and even now very rich, was selected by the Hindoo Geographers and Astronomers for their first meridian.

**SURAT**, which has a population of half a million, trades extensively with the Persian gulf and the Red sea.

**MADRAS**, or **FORT ST. GEORGE**, on the Coromandel coast, 1000 miles from Calcutta, and on the margin of the sea, is the second in rank of the three British Presidencies.

**PONDICHERY**, S. of Madras, was the capital of the French East Indian possessions.

**GOA**, a fine port on the west coast of Hindostan, is the capital of the few remaining territories of the Portuguese, the first Europeans who had establishments in India, and who once monopolized nearly its whole trade, held the supreme dominion of its seas, and possessed a chain of settlements along its western coast from the mouths of the Indus to the island of Ceylon.

**SERINGAPATAM**, the capital of Mysore, seated on the Cauvery, is a beautiful city adorned with fine edifices and gardens. In 1792 it was taken by the English, and Tippoo Saib, the sovereign

standard, or siccas, at 2s. 6d., amounts to £12,500 sterling. The mausoleum therefore cost £625,000.

of Mysore, fell, during the assault, while nobly defending his territories, assisted by a brave and faithful band. Seringapatam, with a considerable portion of Mysore, is now possessed by the English.\*

The island of BOMBAY, which is near the N. W. coast of Hindostan, and the third in rank of the three British Presidencies, is advantageously placed for trade, having a harbour which, with the exception of that of Trincomalee, in Ceylon, is the only port of Hindostan affording security at all seasons.

The island of CEYLON, the *Tapabrona* of the ancients, is separated from the S. point of Hindostan by the gulf of Manar and Palk's passage. It is of an oval form and nearly the size of Ireland, and has Candy for its capital. Trincomalee, on the E., and Columbo, on the W., are its chief ports. Ceylon has been praised in all ages for its riches and beauty. It boasts the genuine cinnamon tree, which grows spontaneously almost all over the island, to the height of 20 feet. The Ceylon elephants are remarkable for size, beauty, and wisdom, and are more adapted for war than those of the continent of India;† while the peacock, a bird of eastern origin, and the most elegant as well as magnificent of the feathered creation, shines at Ceylon with a plumage of more than usual lustre. The numerous mountains of the island are rich in minerals, producing gold, silver, and a profusion of precious stones; and the gulf of Manar has a valuable pearl fishery. Ceylon was annexed to the British territories in 1815.

#### RIVERS OF HINDOSTAN.

The SCINDE or INDUS, from which India derives its name, is thought to rise N. of the mountains in Little Tibet. It traverses

---

\* The greater part of Mysore was, on its conquest, divided by the British, the Mahrattas, and the Nizam of the Deccan. A small district was granted to a descendant of the family, whose throne had been usurped by Hyder Ally a soldier of fortune, and father of Tippoo Saib. The newly-raised chief, who has the title of Rajah, resides in the town of Mysore, the ancient capital.

† A full-grown elephant, 12 or 14 feet high, is generally sold at the rate of 2000 dollars, which, reckoning the Spanish dollar at 4s. 6d., is a sum of £450.

the N. part of Hindostan, separating the provinces of Cabul and Lahore. As it divides near the sea into several branches, it forms a wide delta, and after a course of more than 1000 miles, falls into the sea between Persia and the gulf of Cutch.

The GANGES originates, according to Major Rennell, in two branches springing from the western side of Kentalisse, a mountain of Tibet; it enters Hindostan at Hurdwar, in the province of Delhi, passes by Canoge, Allahabad, Benares, and Patna, and, dividing into several channels, flows into the bay of Bengal, after a winding course of 2000 miles. The Ganges is a sacred stream to the Hindoos, who, by washing in it, deem themselves purified from moral stains; and the aged, when drawing near their end, desire to be conveyed to its banks that they may die within sight of its waters.

On the HOOGLY, a branch of the Ganges, is the splendid city of Calcutta.

The NERBUDDAH, which rises in the central mountains of Hindostan, having crossed its middle breadth, flows into the sea at the gulf of Cambay.

The GODAVERY rises about 70 miles N. E. of Bombay, and after traversing Dowlatabad and part of Golconda, falls into the bay of Bengal.

The KISTNA, like the Ganges, a sacred river to the Hindoos, has its source near Poonah, in the western Ghauts, and enters the Indian ocean near Masuilapatam.

*Surface.* Hindostan consists of extensive plains, traversed by numerous rivers, and occasionally intersected by mountains. It has many primeval forests of stately height, and composed of various trees which eminently display what a poet calls "the pomp of groves." Among the sylvan ornaments of an Indian forest are the teak tree, which supplies the place of the European oak for house and ship building; the plantane, and the banana, with the palm, which "rears high its naked trunk, crowned with green tufts of light and spreading foliage."

*Climate.* The northern parts of Hindostan being in the temperate zone, and the air being refreshed by the mountains, enjoy a moderate climate; but the southern districts

feel the heat of the tropical regions. Monsoons, or half yearly winds, which blow from the N. E. from October to April, and from the S. W. from May to September, bring with them the rainy season.\* The longest day is of 14 hours and a half in the N., and of 12 hours and 25 minutes in the S.

*Products.* Rice, which, says an able writer, is probably the food of a greater portion of mankind than any other single article, is much cultivated in Hindostan, as also are tobacco, indigo, pepper, and cotton. The cocoa-nut and poppies, from which latter opium is made, are likewise raised. Hindostan has mines of gold and silver; and the diamonds of Golconda and Visiapour are the most famous in the world. The muslins of India are highly valued; the pliant fingers and exquisite touch of the Hindoos being peculiarly adapted to the handling of the finest threads in weaving.

*Animals.* India is the native abode of many of the larger and more powerful animals. The same forest which rears the elephant, the mildest and most docile of large animals, produces the tiger, at once the most beautiful and terrible of carnivorous beasts. The rhinoceros, the great foe of the elephant, and, next to him, the most powerful of

---

\* The alternate change of seasons, on the coasts of Hindostan, is caused by the two chains of Ghauts on its E. and W. sides. The S. W. winds arriving on the coast of Malabar, charged with the evaporations of the equator, strike against the western side of these mountains and pour down heavy rains, while the revolution of the winds produces violent storms. The clouds, thus arrested by the western Ghauts, are prevented from reaching the Coromandel coast, where, consequently, dry weather prevails during the S. W. monsoon; but when the winds change and blow from the N. E., a similar cause produces the rainy season on the Coromandel coast and the dry one on the Malabar.

quadrupeds ; the lion, the monarch of the brute creation ; the panther, the buffaloe, and camel, also range the Indian forests, the feathered tribes of which are distinguished for their brilliant plumage.

*Government.* The Indian Princes are despotic. They are differently styled Nabobs, Soubahdars, Rajahs, and Mahrajahs. In the political system of India, the four leading powers are, the SEIKS ; the EASTERN and WESTERN MAHRATTAS ; the NIZAM or SOUBAHDAR of the DECCAN ; and the BRITISH. The Seiks are a hardy and frugal race, having Lahore for their capital, and whose faith approaches pure Theism ; the Mahrattas, a warlike people, under the rule of many chiefs or princes who acknowledge a common head named the Peishwa, residing at Poonah, which is the capital of the Western ; while Nagpou, the most central town of Hindostan, is the capital of the Eastern Mahrattas. The Nizam of the Deccan resides at Hyderabad, a place named after Hyder Ali. The three British Presidencies are those of Calcutta, Madras, and Bombay. The British government may now be considered as the predominant power of Hindostan, and so great is its influence, that no native state of India dares undertake any important political enterprise without its consent.

*Population.* The population of Hindostan is estimated at 134 millions.

*Character of the Hindoos.* The population of Hindostan, with the exception of the Europeans, is composed of Hindoos and Mahometans. The former, who are the aborigines, are a distinct race in person, customs, and religion. In their complexions there are all the intermediate gradations between a deep olive and a near approach to black ; their hair, though black, is not woolly. Their make is slender and delicate, owing to their simple and light aliment, which mostly consists of rice, milk, and vegetables, the doctrine of metempsychosis prohibiting the use of animal food. The Hindoos are mild and gentle, capable of eu-

during mortification, and strangers to the passions which form both the pleasure and pain of our lives. They are divided into four classes, termed *castes*, viz. the Brahmins or priests; the soldiers; the husbandmen; and the labourers and mechanics. These castes are forbidden to marry, dwell, eat or drink with each other. Polygamy is allowed, but one wife is considered as superior to the others. The affection of the females, who are decorous and faithful, does not end with the lives of their consorts, it having been usual among the higher castes for the favourite wife to burn herself with the body of her deceased partner.\*

*Hindoo Religion.* The Hindoos believe in One Great First Cause, eternal, self-existent, and filling all space; in the immortality of the soul, and its transmigration into other bodies; with a state of future rewards. BRAHMA is considered as a spirit emanating from the Great Supreme First Cause from the creation of the world; but since idolatry has crept in, the three attributes of the one living God have been separately worshiped under the names of SIVA, VISHNA, and BRAHMA—Siva as Supreme and Eternal Justice, who, at the end of the world, will reward and punish; and Vishna, as the Mediator and Preserver, who left his paradise in heaven to appease the wrath of the Eternal.

The island of Ramisseram, or Ramissa, between the S. E. coast of Hindostan and Ceylon, is the utmost limit of the Hindoo religion in modern times.† It has a splendid pagoda.

*Languages.* The most ancient is the Sanscrit, in which the Vedas or sacred books of the Brahmins are written, but which has long ceased to be a spoken tongue. The Mahrattas have their own language, and there are also the Malabar, Bengalee, Hindostanee, and other dialects. On the whole, ten different dialects and languages are reckoned in Hindostan.

---

\* From the returns made in five years, it appears that there had been in Bengal alone 3,400 females burnt; and gentlemen connected with Indian affairs, assured him that the real number would be more like 10,000 than 3000, and this in Bengal alone.

*Speech of Mr. Burton in the House of Commons, in June, 1825.*

† Asiatic Researches, Vol. VI.

## INDIA WITHOUT, OR BEYOND THE GANGES.

*Situation.* This great region lies in the torrid zone, and is for the most part parallel with India Within the Ganges. It is intersected by large rivers and long mountain-ridges, which run from N. to S.

*Boundaries.* India Beyond the Ganges is bounded, on the N. by China and Tibet, on the E. and S. by the Chinese sea, and on the W. by the bay of Bengal and the strait of Malacca.

*Divisions.* There are the following countries in India Beyond the Ganges :

<i>Divisions.</i>		<i>Chief Places.</i>
Assam .....	in the N. W.	Ghergong.
The Birman Empire, including Ava, Aracan, and Pegu.....	{ in the W. }	{ Ummerapoora, the cap., Ava, Aracan, Pegu, & Rangoon.
Tonquin .....		
Laos .....	{ Eastern. }	{ Kesho. Louchong. Hue-fou.
Cochin China .....		
Cambodia .....		
Siam .....	Central	Siam.
Malaya, or the Peninsula of Malacca. ....	{ in the S. }	

*Gulfs.* The gulf of Tonquin, on the N. E. ; of Martaban, on the W. ; and that of Siam in the S.

## ASSAM.

Assam is a fertile valley N. E. of Bengal, and in the upper part of India Beyond the Ganges. It extends from the 25th to the 28th deg. of N. lat., is divided by the course of the Burrampooter into Upper and Lower, and has Ghergong, on the river Dhekoun, for its capital. The inhabitants of Assam are described as lawless and unprincipled.



*Rivers.* The number of rivers in Assam is said to exceed that of any tract of similar extent, there being, including the Burrampooter, no less than sixty-one, many of which are auriferous.

### THE BIRMAN EMPIRE.

*Situation.* The Birman Empire, which occupies both a central and western part of India Beyond the Ganges, comprises the former kingdoms of Ava, Aracan, and Pegu, whose sovereigns were dethroned in the middle of the last century by the famous Alompra, the founder of the present dynasty, or by his successors. The capital is Ummerapoor, on the river Irrawaddy, in lat. nearly 22 deg. N., and long. 96. deg. E.

*Boundaries.* The Birman Empire is bounded on the N. by Tibet, on the S. by the gulf of Siam and Malacca, on the E. by Laos, and on the W. by the bay of Bengal.

*Extent.* This empire, which equals in extent that of Germany, reaches from the 9th to the 28th deg. of N. lat., and from the 91st to the 102nd of E. long. The length is about 1300 miles, and the breadth, where widest, about 800.

*Divisions.* 1. Ava, *cap.* Ummerapoor. 2. Aracan, *cap.* Aracan. 3. Pegu. *Chief places,* Pegu, the *cap.*, and Rangoon, on the sea.

*Chief River.* The IRRAWADDY, one of the greatest streams of Eastern India, has its source in the mountains of Tibet, and consists of two main branches, which unite at Ava, and, flowing southward, enter the gulf of Martaban by numerous mouths, after a course of more than 1000 miles.

AVA, an inland district, has Aracan on the W. and Pegu on the S. The city of Ava, fifteen years ago its capital, is in ruins; Minderagee, the late emperor, having built Ummerapoor, and made it the seat of empire.

ARACAN comprises a valley between Ava and Bengal, traversed by the river Naafte, which divides it from the British territory.

PEGU. Pegu, the S. western portion of the Birman Empire, is divided from Siam by mountains. PEGU, its capital, on the river Pegu, is in ruins, having been razed, in 1757, by the conqueror Alompra, and the inhabitants dispersed. A new city, containing that extraordinary edifice the Shomadoo,\* has been erected on its site. RANGOON, the chief port of Pegu, has, from its situation opposite to Hindostan, a great commercial intercourse with that country. It is in lat. 16 deg. 47 min. N., and long. 96 deg. E.

*Products of the Birman Empire.* ARACAN trades in salt, bees' wax, and elephants' teeth. PEGU is rich in minerals, and its rivers have gold. The true ruby, a stone next to the diamond in value, and often the most splendid ornament of crowns, is almost peculiar to Pegu, which also boasts amethysts, sapphires, and jaspers, with amber, &c. near the Irrawaddy. Its banks abound with the teak tree, large quantities of which are exported to British India.† Rice, cotton, tobacco, and indigo, are cultivated.

*Surface and Climate.* The northern part of the Birman Empire is barren and mountainous; the southern districts have luxuriant plains and valleys. The climate is in general healthy.

*Government & Political Rank.* The Birman government is strictly monarchical, and the emperor's will absolute. He

---

\* The Shomadoo is a pyramidal edifice, composed of brick and mortar, seated on a double terrace, and 361 feet in height. It is octagonal at the base and spiral at the top. At the summit is a Tee, or sacred umbrella, of open iron work, gilt, and 56 feet in circumference.

† In 1795, teak, to the value of £200,000, was exported to British India.

is, however, assisted by a council. The court is splendid without prodigality, and numerous without confusion. The emperor, who is sole proprietor of all the elephants in his dominions, has in the royal collection 6000. Among the nations of Eastern India, the Birman Empire may claim the first rank. Seated between British India on the west, and China on the east, it is an object of anxiety to the government of both those countries; and during the last and present year a serious warfare has been carried on between the British and Burmese.

*Religion.* The religion of the Burmese is the Hindoo, but of the sect of Budha, who in the Hindoo mythology is the ninth descent of the Deity in his capacity of Preserver, with the title of the author of happiness, and whose image is generally worshiped between Bengal and China. The Burmese believe in the metempsychosis, and that, after a certain number of transmigrations, their souls will be received into happiness on mount Menu,\* or suffer torment in a place of punishment. Mercy "which droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven," is esteemed by them the chief attribute of the Deity.

*Population.* Colonel Symes states the population of the Birman Empire at 17 millions.

*Inhabitants.* The Burmese are of low stature, but strong, active, and expert in athletic games. In true bravery they excel all other Asiatics, and are dextrous in warlike stratagem. The bow and arrow, and a short sword called *dah*, having a blade of about a foot and a half in length, are their favourite weapons. Their war boats, which are managed with skill, are generally from sixty to one hundred and twenty feet long. Like many inhabitants of tropical climates, the Burmese are warm and irascible in temper, but do not indulge in that unforgiving malignity which disgraces the savage Malay, and they are friendly

---

\* Menu, the celestial north pole of the Hindoos, is their seat of happiness.

and hospitable to strangers. As a nation they are accomplished, the higher ranks being fond of music, poetry, and general literature, while almost all the lower orders read and write. Their books are made of the palmyra leaf, the letters being engraved on it, after the manner of the old Romans, with the stylus.\* The Burmese temples, palaces, and barges, display great excellence of gilding.

## SIAM.

*Situation, &c.* SIAM, which occupies a central part of Eastern India, is a wide vale, between two ridges of mountains. It is bounded on the N. by Pegu, (part of the Birman empire,) from which it is separated by mountains; on the S. by the gulf of Siam and the peninsula of Malacca; on the E. by Laos and Cambodia, and on the W. by the bay of Bengal. Yuthan, on the river Meinam, is the capital.

*Chief River.* The Meinam, called the Mother of Waters.

The Meinam, which is thought to rise in the Chinese province of Yunnan, flows southward, crossing nearly the whole country, and falls into the gulf of Siam. Like the Nile of Africa, it periodically overflows, fertilizing the country. Its banks are, at particular seasons, illuminated with swarms of fire-flies which appear like meteors.

*Products.* Rice, in exuberant crops, minerals, and precious stones. The elephants of Siam are unrivalled in the east for beauty and sagacity. The white variety is highly valued, and looked upon as sacred. In Yuthan, the capital, are vast stables for these appendages of eastern grandeur.

*Government and Religion.* The King of Siam is despotic, the laws are severe, and the punishments cruel. The Hindoo religion prevails, including a belief in the metempsychosis.

---

\* See Butler's Quest. in Roman Hist.

*Inhabitants.* The Siamese are indolent, fond of amusements, and excel in a species of dramatic exhibition. Literature is cultivated. Their houses, which are raised on posts to avoid inundations, are formed of timber and bamboo, and thatched with palm-leaves and rice-straw.

### LAOS.

LAOS, an inland district of India beyond the Ganges, is bounded on the N. by Tibet; on the S. by Cambodia; on the E. by Tonquin, from which it is separated by a mountainous ridge; and on the W. by Siam, from which also it is divided by mountains. Its capital is Lanjang, on the river Maykaung. Laos is a flat country, but, being encompassed by mountains, is thereby secured against its more powerful neighbours. It produces gums, cotton, gold, silver, and precious stones. Its chief river is the MAYKAUNG or Mecon, which rises in Tibet, and is common both to Laos and Cambodia, running in a southern course and nearly a straight line of 1500 miles through those countries into the Chinese sea. When it enters Cambodia, it is called by the name of that district.

### TONQUIN.

TONQUIN, a mountainous district in the E. part of India beyond the Ganges, is bounded on the N. by China; on the W. by Laos; on the E. by the gulf of Tonquin; and on the S. by Cochin China, with which last district it is said to be now incorporated by conquest. Tonquin has Kesho for its capital.

### COCHIN CHINA.

*Situation.* COCHIN CHINA is a populous country, extending more than 400 miles along the Chinese sea, and having for its western boundary a chain of mountains. The latter run parallel to the coast. Between them and

the sea is a tract of exuberant fertility. The prefix of Cochin denotes that the country lies west of China. Whilst Cochin China was the eastern boundary of the world known to the ancients, the island of Ferro, one of the Canaries, was its western limit. The intervening space includes 127 degrees of longitude.

*Extent.* In length, Cochin China, exclusive of Cambodia, extends from nearly the 9th to the 17th deg. of N. lat.; the average breadth is not more than 100 miles. Its geographical position, with its fine bays and harbours, adapt it for maritime and commercial enterprise.

*Divisions.* Cochin China, including CAMBODIA, which has recently been annexed to it, has three provinces. 1. Hue on the N., *cap.*; Hue-fou. 2. Chang in the centre; *Chief places*, Quinhone and Turon. 3. Don-nai, which is the large district generally known as Cambodia, and whose capital, Cambodia, is on the river of the same name.

*Places.* HUE-FOU, the capital of Cochin China, was chiefly erected by the late monarch, an ambitious and military despot, who employed twenty years in its construction; for which purpose he lavished great sums and sacrificed the lives of thousands by constant labour. This stupendous object is surrounded by a ditch nine miles in circumference, and has a fortress mounting 1200 guns.

TURON, on the east coast, is the chief port of Cochin China, and has a noble harbour.

*Products.* Cochin China is fruitful. Spices, cotton, ivory, and rice of six different kinds, are among its riches. The mountains abound with the precious metals, and the forests with woods useful in the mechanic arts. The edible bird-nests, so much prized by the Chinese, are found in Cochin China.\* Its elephants are the largest in the world,

---

\* The bird which forms the nests is called the Salangane by the Malays, and is the *Hirundo Esculentus*, or edible swallow of Linnæus. It is a small bird, not more than two inches and half

## 180 PENINSULA OF MALAYA OR MALACCA.

and their flesh is said to be esteemed a delicacy by the inhabitants. Cambodia produces a peculiar gum of a fine yellow colour, called, from the name of the country, Gamboge. It is used as a colour and medicine. In its liquid state it is run into joints of the bamboo, which gives it that cylindrical form in which we see it imported.

*Religion.* The Cochin Chinese are of the sect of Budha, but without the doctrine of metempsychosis. Their anticipations of bliss in another life consist principally of sensual enjoyment. They shall, they believe, have plenty of rice and no work.

*Inhabitants.* A modern traveller gives an unfavourable character of the Cochin Chinese; whom he represents as filthy in person and depraved in morals. Polygamy is general.

### THE PENINSULA OF MALAYA OR MALACCA.

The peninsula of MALACCA, the ancient *Golden Chersonesus*,\* forms the most southern part both of India Beyond the Ganges, and of the Asiatic continent. From the confines of Siam it has a S. E. direction of about 560 miles, and is divided into two parts. Malacca is rich in tropical fruits; and its pine-apples are said to be the finest in the world. In the peninsula are found the edible bird-nests.

---

in length, and the substance of its nests is the spawn of fishes, which it collects while skimming the surface of the sea, or on the shore, and the threads of which, seen hanging to the bill of the bird, gave rise to the idea of its drawing it from its breast. The nests are found adhering to the sides and roofs of caverns in the rocks. Their taste is like that of insipid isinglass; they are valued on account of their nutritious quality.

\* Chersonesus is the Greek term for a peninsula: Malacca was called the golden Chersonesus on account of its riches, to distinguish it from the other Chersonesi.

*Inhabitants.* The Malays are pirates by profession, and may be styled the Algerines of the Eastern Archipelago. They infest all the neighbouring seas with their prows, or sailing vessels, and, like beasts of prey, are always on the watch to gratify a thirst of blood and pillage. "To their enemies they are remorseless, to their friends capricious, and to strangers treacherous." Yet no people are more attentive to religious observances, nor more strict in repeating the five daily prayers enjoined by Mahomet.

*Language.* The smoothness and sweetness of the Malay tongue have gained it the appellation of the Italian of the East. It is the trading language of the eastern world, and the vernacular tongue used by the people who inhabit that vast chain of islands which are between the 93rd and 135th deg. of E. long., a space of about 2,220 miles, and extending from the 14th deg. of N., to the 11th of S. lat., comprehending 25 deg. A learned orientalist\* states, that the Malay tongue has the Egyptian Coptic for its basis, with a copious mixture of the Sanscrit and Arabic.

An Anglo-Chinese college has been established at Malacca, where the Chinese study English, and Englishmen study Chinese, but which is shortly to be removed to Singapore. To this Institution the celebrated missionary, Dr. Morrison, has made the munificent gift of £2000.

## CHINA.†

*Situation.* This great region, the first as to population, and, inclusive of Chinese Tartary, the second as to extent

\* Professor Lee.

† When the northern part of China was conquered by the grandson of Gengis Khan, it was called Cathay, a name often used in poetry and romance. "The permanent name of Chinese Proper is 'The *Chung* Nation.' *Chung*, means the middle or central part, in contradistinction from the circumference; the inside,



in the world, forms an eastern portion of Asia, and has its extreme southern part in the torrid zone, while its central and northern districts are in the temperate. The territory of China is compact and circular on its eastern and southern sides, with a coast measuring 2500 English miles.

*Boundaries.* China Proper is bounded on the E. by the Pacific, called by the Chinese the Eastern ocean; on the W. by the Tibet; on the N. by Tartary; and on the S. by the Chinese sea, the gulf of Tonquin, and India Beyond the Ganges.

*Extent.* China lies between the 20th and 41st deg. of N. lat., and between the 98th and 123rd deg. of E. long.

*Capital.* Peking, in the province of Pechele, in lat. 40 deg. N., and long. about 116 deg. E.

*Surface.* China has many level tracts intersected by rivers. It has also much elevated land running in parallel lines across the country, which is traversed by a mountainous chain for above 1000 miles to the N. and W. China has also five mountains of superior height named after their geographical position; four of them from the cardinal points, and the fifth from its central locality.

*Climate.* The winter of China in the north is cold, in consequence of the elevated land of Tartary. Peking, therefore, though situated in the 40th deg. of lat., nearly the same as the latitudes of Lisbon, Rome, and Constantinople, does not enjoy the moderate winter of those capitals. The summer months bring, however, great heat, during which the Emperor and Court retire to the cooler,

---

in opposition to the outside. The Chinese anciently conceived that they were the principal people in the world, and inhabited the middle of it, whilst the rest of mankind were placed at the extremities or ends of the earth."—*China, a Dialogue for the use of Schools, by an Anglo-Chinese.*

because higher, region of Tartary. The southern districts of China, near the torrid zone, feel the tropical warmth.

*Divisions.* China has now 18 provinces.\*

#### NORTHERN.

Shantung (N. E.), Pechele, Shanse, Shense.

#### EASTERN.

Keang-Nan, Tchekeang, Fokien, Keangse.

#### CENTRAL.

Honan, Hooquang, Koetcheu, Sechuen.

#### SOUTHERN.

Quantung, Quangse, Yunnan.

*Chief Places.* Peking, the *cap.*, Nanking, in the province of Keang-soo (late Keang-Nan), and Canton, in that of Quangtung.

*Chief Rivers.* The Whang-ho, or Yellow river† (sometimes called the Hoan-ho); and the Yang-tse-Keang or Keang-Kow.

*Islands.* Formosa, on the S. E., and Hainan on the S.; Macao, in the gulf of Canton; the Loochoo, or Lekyo islands, N. E. of Formosa; and Tchu-shan, on the E. coast.

*Cape Princess Charlotte.* In the district of Lentong, between the peninsula of Corea and the province of Pechele, a sharp point of land projects into the sea; this has recently been named by some English navigators, the PRINCESS CHARLOTTE'S CAPE, in memory of the

---

\* Fifteen only of them are here introduced, because the maps in general use contain that number. The provinces of Keang-nan and Hooquang have each been divided into two parts, and a district to the N. W. of Shense has been formed into a province.

† Whang, yellow; Ho, river; Keang is also the Chinese for river,

illustrious personage whose premature death occasioned so general a grief.

*Peninsula.* The peninsula of CORŒA, N. E. of China, is governed by its own king, on the condition of doing homage, and the payment of a small tribute. KING-KI-TAO is the capital.

*Places.* PEKING,\* the capital, placed at the northern extremity of China, and 50 miles from the Great Wall, forms a square, and is divided into two parts, the Chinese and Tartar cities. The word Peking signifies the northern court, and it was, in 1423, made the capital, that the Emperors might be ready to check any invasion of the Tartars. The city is 18 miles in circumference, and contains a million and a half of inhabitants. The imperial palace, with its extensive gardens, and the public offices, are in the Tartar city, which was so named because it was constructed by the Tartars. The houses of Peking, which, like others in the East, are only of one story, have a terrace with a railed balcony in front, on which are placed shrubs and pots of flowers. The streets are spacious. As no person is allowed to be buried within the city, the nine gates of Peking are sometimes crowded with the funerals of the dead, as well as with carts of provisions for the living.

NANKING, or the Southern court, and the former capital, is on the Yang-tse river, 100 miles from the sea, and is said to be 30 miles in circumference. Its most remarkable building is a lofty octagonal pagoda, incrusting with white porcelain; which has nine stories, 884 steps, was nineteen years in building, and cost £800,000. The province of Keang-Nan has the species of cotton, of a yellow tinge, known in Europe by the name of nan-keen.

CANTON, being now the only Chinese city where Europeans are suffered to trade, the English and other Europeans have in it factories from which their tea is exported. Canton consists of three towns, each surrounded by its wall. Many thousands of people here live on the river in covered boats, their only home, and support themselves by fishing, trafficking in fruit and small wares, or plying for passengers.

---

\* Pih (Pe) is the north, and King the court or royal residence.

*Rivers.* The WHANG-HO, the largest river, not only of China, but of Asia, rises in two lakes in that part of Tartary which is in about the 35th deg. of N. lat. and 96th of E. long. Having pursued a very devious course, it reaches the province of Shense, where it turns N. into Chinese Tartary; thence it returns with a great bend to the S., and finally flowing due E., reaches the ocean in about the 34th deg. of lat., after a course of 2150 miles.

The YANG-TSE-KIANG rises in the same ridge as the Whang-ho, but more to the W. Its course is at first southern, down to the 26th deg. of lat. Thence it crosses the middle of China in a N. E. direction; and after passing Nanking, enters the sea about 100 miles S. of the Whang-ho. Thus these two great streams, rising nearly in the same source, passing almost close to one another in a particular spot, but separating afterwards to the distance of 15 degrees, finally discharge themselves into the sea within two degrees of each other.

*Products.* China, from its vast extent and variety of soil, has many riches. Rice, which is the most productive of all grain, and which, in many southern countries of Asia, is a substitute for our bread, forms a principal article of food in China, which also cultivates silk, cotton, and tobacco. The china-ware is unrivalled for purity and fineness; and the Chinese paper, which is made chiefly of the bamboo beaten down to a pulp, and was invented as early as 1100 years before the Christian era, has great reputation. The TEA-SHRUB, which may be termed the national plant, is, however, the most celebrated product of China, and has become a necessary of life in a large portion of the world. It is a plant of a low size, with a narrow leaf resembling a myrtle, and a white blossom, and, like the vine, thrives best in hilly land, on the sides of mountains, and in southern aspects. There is one species having two varieties. The shrub producing the imperial and gun-powder teas resembles the gooseberry bush in size and figure.\*

---

\* The province of Fuhkëen, or Fokien, produces the Bohea

*Government.* The Emperor is absolute, and the source of all authority. His power is, however, generally exercised in a paternal manner, and he is revered as a father rather than dreaded as a monarch.\* There is an imperial council to assist him, composed of six persons, three of whom are Tartars and three Chinese, the former always having precedence. Of the public officers, who are called by Europeans, Mandarins, but by the Chinese, Kwang-foo, there are nine ranks, distinguished by an ornament worn at the vertex of their caps, which is about the size of a large marble, and made of gold, or crystal, or of precious stones, or coral of various colours, according to the different ranks.

The now ruling sovereign of China is of the Tsing dynasty, the founders of which were Eastern or Manshur Tartars, who, in 1644, under their leader, Shun-che, effected the conquest of China with ease, in consequence of a rebellion which then convulsed the empire. The present Emperor, who has the title of Taou Kwang, is the sixth of the Tsing dynasty, which has reigned 181 years.

*Religion.* The principal religious sects in China are those of Budha,† Laoukeun, and Confucius, who make the three chief guides of human opinion in the eastern world. Budha, before his spiritual ascendancy and deification, resided, under the name of Shakù Moone, at Benares, in India, about the age in which King David reigned over Israel; while both Laoukeun and Confucius lived in China nearly 500 years before the Christian era. The religion of Budha denies the existence of an Eternal and Supreme Being, but teaches the doctrine of metempsychosis, or

---

tea, which is made of the leaves of the older shrubs, and derives its name from the *Woo-e* hills, where it grows. The Souchong tea, which is made of the leaves of plants three years old, is so called from *seow-chung*, small seed or plants.

\* Among the useful customs of China is one adopted for the encouragement of agriculture: every year, at the vernal equinox, the Emperor, after a solemn offering to Heaven and earth, goes through the ceremony of holding the plough while it passes over a tract of land, and is followed by the viceroys and officers of state.

† Budha is generally called Fo by Europeans.

transmigration of souls, and therefore forbids the destruction of animal life: the systems of Laoukeun and Confucius relate purely to moral and social duty. The Chinese are Polytheists, having "gods many and idols many"—deities of the land and sea; of hills, winds, rivers, and fire; and, like the Romans, they have their penates or domestic gods.\* Though in China there is no national religion expressly recognised by the state; though the priests, who live in monasteries, never preach; and though there is no sabbath or fixed day of rest or worship, there are, however, public festivals and sacred offerings; numerous temples are daily open to worshipers, in which the priests perform ceremonies, recite prayers, and sell books and tracts, exhorting the people to social virtues, not to eat flesh meat, and to repeat very often the name of Budha. On the first and fifteenth of each moon, the public officers worship their two great deities—the Heavens and the Earth; in spring and autumn they make offerings to the gods of the land and grain; during the second and eighth moons of the year, sacrifices are made to Confucius; † and in April, people repair, as was the custom among the ancient Romans, to the tombs of their parents and relations to sacrifice and offer oblations of wine to the manes of departed friends.‡

*Population.* The population of China, which was formerly greatly overrated by the ignorance or vanity of the Chinese, is now ascertained, from correct statements, to be about 150 millions. Of these nearly two millions live in boats, and about twelve hundred thousand may be assigned to the army. China, even on this moderated calculation, is the most populous country in the world, and its sovereign reigns over more human beings than any other monarch.

*Language.* The Chinese language has no alphabet; all the

\* See Butler's Quest. in Roman Hist., art. Roman Deities.

† From the work called Shingmeaou-che it appears that there are in China 1560 temples dedicated to Confucius, and that, during the spring and autumnal sacrifices performed to him, there are annually immolated above 62,000 cattle. There are offered, at the same time, 27,000 pieces of silk. What becomes of these does not appear.

‡ See Butler's Quest. in Roman Hist., FERALIA.

words which compose it consist of one syllable only. Of these the number is 411, but two or even three syllables are often joined together, and they cannot be understood unless thus combined. The syllables have neither number, case, nor gender, person, tense, nor mood; but they are rendered intelligible by their combination and by tones and accents. The Chinese language has separate characters for every word; the number of which, though commonly reckoned at 80,000, is stated by a distinguished proficient in Chinese literature,\* to be not more than 45,000 as now used. Of these written symbols, 214 are leading or radical characters.

*Inhabitants.* The Chinese have small eyes, a face rather square than oval, high cheek bones, and an olive complexion, more or less dark according to the latitude. They always shave the top of their heads, and plait the remaining hair into a long tail, reaching almost to the ground; a mode introduced into China at the last Tartar Conquest, in 1644.

In character the Chinese are mild and affable; respectful to the aged and to parents; industrious, and desirous of shewing that their conduct is reasonable. In their intercourse with strangers they are polite and ceremonious to excess, but distrustful and circumspect, and often more expert than honourable in trade. They have a taste for mechanics, especially for making

---

\* Some of the facts contained in this work, relative to China, are derived from Dr. Morrison's "Chinese Miscellany," and his "View in China for Philological Purposes." An interesting little tract, entitled, "China, or a Dialogue for the Use of Schools, by an Anglo-Chinese," has also been consulted. The last of these contains much useful information concerning a country of which young persons are often very uninformed. I have likewise to acknowledge some valuable hints which the learned author of these works has condescended *personally* to give me on the subject. Gratitude and a sense of duty, therefore, impel me to offer a tribute of respect to the indefatigable zeal which he has manifested for the propagation of Christianity in China—to his magnificent sacrifices of time and property—and to his laborious researches in Chinese literature, all of which have been directed to the accomplishment of the noblest end.

toys, tinkets, fire-works, and for cutting ivory. The workmanship of a Chinese fan is exquisite.

*Curiosities.* China possesses two public works both unrivalled in any other country—the GREAT WALL and the IMPERIAL CANAL. The Great Wall, which is the most stupendous work ever produced by man, was built by the Emperor Tsin as a barrier against the Huns, the Tartar shepherds and warriors. It consists of a vast mound of earth, cased on each side with brick or stone, and terraced with a platform of square bricks. Though built 2000 years ago, it is but little decayed. Separating Tartary and China, it extends from Lintaou on the west to Leaoutung on the east, upwards of 1500 miles, passing over mountains three or four thousand feet high, and across deep valleys and wide rivers. Its general height is 25 feet, while its breadth, which is eleven, admits of five horsemen travelling on it abreast. The average thickness is fifteen feet.—The IMPERIAL CANAL, which was the first commencement of the Chinese inland navigation, was begun in the dynasty of Yuen.\* It crosses China from N. to S., intersecting its two great rivers, and thereby preserving a communication between the northern and southern parts of the empire, as those rivers do between the eastern and western. Thirty thousand men were employed for forty years in the construction of the canal.

Among the curiosities of China may be classed the PAGODAS, which are lofty, circular buildings, having diminishing turrets, adorned with bells. They are erected for show and ornament, and also from a superstitious notion that they impart sacredness and a beneficial influence to the circumjacent country. The Pagoda in Kew Gardens is a faithful representation of these edifices.

### EAST INDIA ISLANDS.

To the south east of Asia are numerous islands, some of which are among the largest and richest in the world. They are supposed to have been united with the Asiatic

---

\* The Yuen dynasty of sovereigns lasted from A. D. 1281 to 1366.



continent, but severed from it by some great operation of nature. By the term EAST INDIA ISLANDS may be understood Sumatra and those included between it and New Guinea, together with the large group extending northwards into the Chinese sea. Many of these islands are rich in the three great kingdoms of nature—the animal, vegetable, and mineral. The animals are remarkable for size or beauty. Numerous aromatic forests, formed of trees elegant or grand, adorn the surface. The tall and majestic palm, rising often to the height of one hundred and fifty feet: the luxuriant bread-fruit tree, the elegant and prolific banana, and the noble cocoa-nut tree, are abundantly spread over the soil, and either afford sustenance to the inhabitants or protect them by their expansive leaves from the fervid rays of a vertical sun. Of fruits there are not less than three hundred species, while the subterranean wealth of the islands is apparent in the rich metals and variety of precious stones which they yield. The surface of some of the oriental isles is marked by a peculiar softness of vegetation devoid of every harsh feature, but in others are mountains covered with lava and volcanic matter, the work of extinct volcanoes, and producing frequent and violent earthquakes.\* The inhabitants, who partake of the Malay character, are supposed to have come from the peninsula of Malacca, the nearest point of the continent, from which the islands proceed in regular succession all over the southern and eastern seas as far as New Guinea. The Mahometan religion, with Paganism, prevails.

---

\* Another remarkable feature of the eastern isles is the infinite number of coral reefs interspersed among them, which are the work of that compound of animal and vegetable life, the zoophyte. Between Sumatra and Java is a coral group called, from its multiplicity, the 1000 islands.

## SUMATRA,

An island 950 miles in length, and 200 in breadth, lies almost parallel with the coast of Malacca, and is divided by the equator into nearly two equal parts. Besides gold and precious stones, it produces pepper, (a plant always thriving best near the equator,) cotton, camphor, and sago, a farinaceous substance found in a species of palm-tree. To these may be added the mangusteen, perhaps the most elegant, delicate, and agreeable fruit that the earth produces.\* The Sumatra pheasant surpasses even the bird of Paradise in its plumage. The bread-fruit tree first appears in the eastern archipelago at Sumatra, thence extending itself through the other isles. BENCOOLEN, or Fort Marlborough, on the S. W. part, was until of late a settlement of the English, who traded chiefly in pepper.

## BORNEO,

Situated N. of Java, and parallel with Sumatra, is, next to New Holland, the largest island in the world, its length being 800 miles and its breadth 550. It is crossed by the equator. Gold, diamonds, pepper, sandal, and other fragrant woods, are some of its products. Tigers are numerous in Borneo, and among its animals is the ourang-outang, said to have the faculty of lighting fires and cooking victuals.

## CELEBES,

One of the four Asiatic isles intersected by the equator, lies E. of Borneo. Its shape is very irregular, as it is composed of four peninsulas enclosing three deep gulfs. The scenery is said to be more beautiful and romantic than that of any other eastern isle.

## JAVA,

An island S. E. of Sumatra, and divided from it by the strait of Sunda, is the chief seat of the Dutch East India Company. BATAVIA, the capital, seated on a bay, has a harbour safe

---

\* The Mangusteen is of a round form, has a bright or dark purple colour, and bears, like the orange, flower and fruit at the same time.

at all seasons, and perhaps capable of containing the whole British navy. The town has many good public edifices; but, as it has been built after the ideas of the Dutch, in a low, marshy situation, and has canals which corrupt and stagnate, the air is very unhealthy, and it has been called the grave of Europeans. Of newly-arrived persons, three out of five die the first year, and very few reach middle age. The interior of Java is salubrious, and has many interesting scenes.

### THE MOLUCCAS, OR SPICE ISLANDS.

————— the spicy isles  
Like incense urns set in the purple sea.

The term Moluccas, an Arabic word signifying Royal Island, and originally confined to five small islands, is now extended to a large group between Borneo and New Guinea. GILOLO, the largest, resembles Celebes in its irregular shape, having four peninsulas, with three large bays. The equator crosses the southern part.

#### - AMBOYNA,

S. W. of Ceram, is noted for cloves and for numerous forests clothed with a rich variety of wood. A little cabinet presented to Cosmo III., Grand Duke of Tuscany, was inlaid with 400 sorts of only the choicest and handsomest woods of Amboyna.

### THE BANDA, OR NUTMEG ISLES,

Form a scattered group S. of Ceram. Great Banda, the principal, produces the genuine nutmeg, which is nearly round and smaller in size: the others are oval.

### THE PHILIPPINE ISLANDS,

A numerous cluster, discovered in 1521 by Magellan, and named from Philip II. of Spain, lie N. E. of Borneo, extending from the 6th to the 18th deg. of N. lat. They belong to the Spanish crown. The three principal are Luzon, Magindanao, and Pulowa. Manilla, on the W. coast, is the capital of Luzon. Between this place and Acapulco, which is situated nearly in the same parallel on the coast of New Spain in S. America, a celebrated commerce was formerly carried on, and a ship called a galleon, richly laden, annually sailed between the ports.

## ISLES OF JAPAN.

The empire of Japan, a Chinese term signifying the country of the rising sun, consists of ~~three~~ large and several small islands, which are situated near Corea, between the 30th and 40th deg. of N. lat. KIU-SU, NIPHON, and SIKOKU, are the three principal islands.

## JEDDO,

The capital of the empire, situated in Nippon, is sixty-three miles in circumference; and the Emperor's palace is said to be environed by a stone wall measuring fifteen miles.

*Products.* The Japan Isles have the products usual within the tropics, with many valuable trees and shrubs: among them are the camphor tree, the Indian laurel, and the Camilla Japonica, the last of which is so bright an ornament of English green-houses. The cedar, a tree considered even in the days of luxurious Rome as a costly product,\* is so common in Japan, that bridges and the masts of vessels are made of its wood.

*Inhabitants.* The Japanese, though a grave people, have plays, sports, and festivals. Their religion is Paganism, which includes different sects; while each has its temples and idols. The dead bodies of persons of distinction are burnt to ashes, as was the custom at ancient Rome;† but those of inferior ranks are buried. During the interment, fragrant spices are cast into the grave, and upon it the finest flowers are afterwards planted. The Japanese excel in making cabinet ware, which they cover with a varnish extracted from the *rhus vernix*, and they embellish it with gold and silver flowers. Their principal drink is tea, and a beer called *saki*, prepared from rice.

*Population.* The Japanese empire has 32 millions of inhabitants.

\* See Horace, Bk. iv. Ode i.

† See Butler's Quest. in Roman Hist. art. Roman Funerals.

## SUMMARY OF AFRICA.

---

**AFRICA**, which forms the south-western part of the Old World, is separated from Europe by the Mediterranean sea, and united to Asia by the isthmus of Suez.

In size, Africa ranks as the third, and in population as the smallest, of the four great divisions of the globe. In political, moral, and intellectual rank, it is the lowest; and though it anciently contained Egypt, the parent of science, and Carthage, the rival of Rome, it now possesses not one great empire holding an exalted rank among nations. One of its great physical features is, the small number of navigable rivers and of ports fit for the reception of ships. In this, among other causes, originates its depressed condition. That great medium of civilization, intercourse with the world, is thus prevented; while despotic government, a climate so warm as to indispose man to exertion, and a soil often so fruitful as to render his labour unnecessary, exert their baneful influence over the unfortunate people.

*Zones.* Africa occupies a space in three of the zones. The northern and southern parts are in the temperate zones, and the central is in the torrid zone.

*Boundaries.* Africa is bounded on the N. by the Mediterranean; on the S. by the Southern ocean; on the E. by the Red sea and the Indian ocean; and on the W. by the Atlantic.

*Extent.* From cape Serrat, the most northern point of Barbary, to the cape of Good Hope, Africa includes about

70 degrees of latitude ; and its greatest breadth, from cape Verd in the west to that of Guardafui in the east, reaches from the 18th deg. of W. to the 51st deg. of E. long. Its length, therefore, may be stated at about 4900 miles, and its breadth at 4800.

*Geographical features.* The form of Africa is strikingly peninsular ; almost all the northern, the whole of the western and southern, and most of the eastern side, being surrounded by the ocean. The interior presents a great mass of land unbroken by any sea. While in the north Africa is spacious, in the south it diminishes to a point.

*Population.* Africa, as known at present, has 150 millions of inhabitants.

Africa has the following countries :

#### NORTHERN.

Barbary and Egypt.

#### CENTRAL.

Zahara, or the Great Desert, and Soudan, or Nigritia.

#### EASTERN.

Nubia, Abyssinia, Adel, Ajan, Zanguebar, and Mozambique.

#### SOUTHERN.

Caffraria and the Hottentot Country.

#### WESTERN.

Upper and Lower Guinea.

*Chief Islands.* In the Atlantic are the Azores or Western isles, between Europe and America. Near the N. W. coast of Africa lie Madeira, the Canary isles, and Cape Verd isles. The gulf of Guinea has Fernando Po, Prince's isles, St. Thomas, and Anaboa ; and more southerly are

**St. Matthew, Ascension, and St. Helena.** On the eastern side, Africa has the islands of Madagascar, Bourbon, and Mauritius; with the Comoro isles in the channel of Mozambique, the Amirante isles N. of Madagascar, and the island of Socotra N. E. of Ajan.

**Capes.** NORTHERN: Capes Bon and Serrat, in Barbary.—WESTERN and SOUTH WESTERN: Capes Verd, St. Mary, Palmas, Formosa, and Voltas.—SOUTHERN: the cape of Good Hope and that of Aguillas. In the EAST is cape Guardafui.

**Mountains.** Atlas, between Barbary and the desert of Zahara; the Sierra Leone, N. of Guinea; and the mountains of the Moon, traversing central Africa.

**Gulfs and Bays.** The gulf of Cabes, between Tunis and Tripoli; and that of Syrtis or Sidra, between Tripoli and Barca; the gulf of Guinea, on the western coast; Saldanha and Table bay, near the cape of Good Hope.

**Straits.** The strait of Gibraltar; the channel of Mozambique, between the island of Madagascar and the continent; and the strait of Babelmandel, which is the entrance to the Red sea.

**Chief Rivers.** The Nile, flowing through Abyssinia, Nubia, and Egypt; the Niger or Joliba, in Nigritia; the Senegal, between the desert of Zahara and Guinea; the Gambia, S. of the Senegal; the Zaire, between Loango and Congo, on the W. coast; and the Orange river in Caffraria.

---

## NORTHERN AFRICA.

### BARBARY.

**Situation.** Barbary occupies, with the exception of Egypt, the northern coast of Africa. It comprehends four Mahometan states, the empire of MOROCCO, ALGIERS,

TUNIS, and TRIPOLI, all which seem to constitute one great political confederacy, though independent of each other in internal policy and government. These states formed the Mauritania, Numidia, Africa Proper, and Lybia of antiquity. Barbary is said to derive its modern name from *Bar*, a desert; and hence the first inhabitants called themselves *Barbares* or *Berberes*, a name still retained.

*Boundaries.* On the N. by the Mediterranean; on the S. by the desert of Zahara; on the E. by Egypt; and on the W. by the Atlantic.

### MOROCCO.

*Boundaries, &c.* The empire of Morocco is bounded on the N. by the Mediterranean; on the S. by the desert of Zahara; on the E. by Algiers, from which it is separated by the river Mullia, and on the W. by the Atlantic. Situated between the 29th and 36th deg. of N. lat., it has a length of about 500 miles, while its breadth is about 200.

*Divisions.* 1. The kingdom of Fez: *chief places*, Fez, the *cap.*, Mequinez, and the ports of Ceuta, Tangier, and Sallee. 2. Morocco Proper: *chief places*, Morocco, the *cap.*, and the port of Mogodore. 3. Tafilet: *cap.*, Tafilet.

*Mountains.* The chain of Atlas, which is intersected by deep and beautiful valleys, and extends from the E. to the W. part of Barbary, dividing it into two parts. It abounds with lions, tigers, wolves, and large serpents.

*Places.* Morocco, a large inland town, is situated in a beautiful valley, diversified with shrubs and palm-trees, and watered by many small streams flowing from mount Atlas, from which the city is 20 miles distant. The mosques, which are the only public buildings, except the palace, worth notice, are more numerous than magnificent.

Fez and MEQUINEZ, the latter of which is the usual residence of the Emperor, have fine mosques and palaces.

CEUTA and TANGIER seem, by their position, to guard the



eastern and western extremities of the strait of Gibraltar. The former, a place of great strength, opposite to the rock of Gibraltar, belongs to Spain, and often contains some of its state prisoners. Tangier once belonged to England, having formed part of the royal dowry of the Infanta of Portugal when she married our Charles II.

SALÉE, on the Atlantic, is the safest and most convenient port of the Morocco empire, and has acquired disgraceful notoriety from the piracies of its vessels.

The ATLAS MOUNTAINS are named from Atlas, King of Mauritania, from whom also the Atlantic ocean derives its appellation; and collections of maps, by being called *Atlases*, perpetuate that monarch's love of geography and astronomy. Thus does knowledge reward its votaries by giving them immortality! Atlas having frequented the lofty summits of the mountains for astronomical observations, is represented as supporting the world on his shoulders.

*Climate and Soil.* Though the climate of its southern provinces is very hot in summer, Morocco is one of the healthiest of the African states. Refreshing breezes from the snow-clad Atlas temper its heat; and the same ridge also defends it from the scorching *sirocco*, or hot wind, which blows from the Great Desert. The soil is naturally fertile; but the bounties of Providence are rendered useless by a bad government.

*Products.* Dates, wax, ostrich feathers, elephants' teeth, and the leather known as Morocco leather, which is used, among other purposes, as a superior binding for books. That singular animal the chameleon, which is chiefly supported by flies and not by air, is found in Morocco. It is remarkable not only for the power of changing its colours, but for the construction of its eye, the ball of which it can move quite round; and it is the only known instance in animated nature of a creature which is able to direct its vision to different objects at the same time, however those objects may be situated.

*Government.* The Emperor of Morocco is despotic. "In no country has tyranny assumed a more savage and terrific aspect." Yet among other titles adopted by the sovereign is that of *Most Gracious!*

*Religion.* In one respect the inhabitants, who are Mahometans, are worthy the imitation of Christians—they treat the holy name of God with profound veneration. The profane custom of swearing is held in abhorrence.

## ALGIERS.

*Situation, &c.* Algiers, which occupies a line of coast on the Mediterranean of about 460 miles, includes the *Numidia* and part of the *Mauritania* of antiquity. It is bounded on the N. by the Mediterranean, on the S. by mount Atlas, on the W. by Morocco, and on the E. by Tunis, from which it is divided by the river Zaine. Its chief places are Algiers and Oran. The products are the same as those of Morocco.

ALGIERS, the capital, is on the Mediterranean, from which the white houses gradually rise so as to afford a fine prospect of all the buildings. The circumjacent hills and valleys are beautified with gardens and villas.

*Government.* The government of Algiers is a military despotism, administered by a Dey, nominally subject to the Grand Signior of Turkey, and assisted by a council of thirty bashaws, whom, however, he does not often trouble to attend.

*Inhabitants.* The Algerines live chiefly by piracy. The Mediterranean and its neighbourhood are infested by their vessels, named Corsairs, the exploits of which have furnished many romantic tales recording the adventures of the captive and the ransomed. Christian slaves form an object of commerce in Algiers.

## TUNIS.

*Situation, &c.* Tunis, in which the African continent reaches its most northern point, is the central and most commercial state of Barbary. It is bounded on the N. by the Mediterranean; on the S. by mount Atlas; on the E. by the Mediterranean and Tripoli; and on the W. by Algiers. Its chief places are Tunis, the *cap.*, Cables, and Porto Farino, the ancient Utica.

*Chief River.* The Mejerdah, between Tunis and Algiers, was formerly called the Bagrada, and is noted as the river where Regulus, the Roman general, killed, it is said, a serpent of enormous size, which molested the Roman army.\*

*Cities.* TUNIS lies in a valley between two hills. About ten miles N. E. of it stood CARTHAGE, long the rival of Rome, but destroyed 146 B. C., by Scipio Africanus. The plough now passes over a great part of its ruins. At UTICA, near Tunis, Cato, the stern republican, killed himself rather than survive the liberties of his country, overthrown by Cæsar.

*Government.* The Tunisians, who are deemed the most polite and civilized among the people of Barbary, are governed by an hereditary Bey, despotic and independent in his own state.

## TRIPOLI.

*Situation.* Tripoli, which, including Barca, is the largest state of Barbary, lies between Tunis and Egypt, and extends 800 miles along the Mediterranean, from Egypt on the E. to the gulf of Cables on the W. Of this space, the desert of Barca, which includes the ancient Lybia, occupies the portion between Egypt and the gulf of

---

\* See Butler's Quest. in Roman Hist., Index, Regulus.

Sidra. Tripoli, the capital, is distinguished for a magnificent mosque.

## EGYPT.

*Situation.* This celebrated country, which, we learn from the most ancient record of the human race, was distinguished in the earliest periods for culture and population, and from whose intellectual light other nations kindled the fires of art and science, through a long series of ages, lies in the north-east part of Africa and southern portion of the temperate zone.

*Boundaries and Extent.* Egypt is bounded on the N. by the Mediterranean; on the S. by Nubia; on the W. by Barca; and on the E. by the isthmus of Suez and the Red sea. Commencing at Assuan, the ancient Syene, it extends from the 24th to a little beyond the 31st deg. of N. lat., and is 600 miles long, whilst its width is various.

*Capital.* The capital of Egypt is Grand Cairo, on the Nile, in lat. 30 deg. N., and long. about 31 deg. E.

*Divisions.* Egypt consists of two parts. 1. Lower Egypt, on the N.; *chief places*, Grand Cairo, Alexandria on the Mediterranean, and Rosetta and Damietta on the Nile. 2. Upper Egypt, in the S.; *chief places*, Said or Thebes, and Cosseir, a port on the Red sea.

*Bay.* The bay of Aboukir, four miles E. of Alexandria, in which, near the mouth of the Nile, Lord Nelson gained a glorious victory over the French fleet, August 1, 1798.

*Places.* CAIRO, dignified with the epithet of Grand, and seated on the Nile, just above the division of the river into branches, is large and populous, and not only the emporium of Eastern Africa, but one of the most commercial cities in the world.

ALEXANDRIA, once a splendid city, planned by Alexander, designed by Dinocrates, the burial-place of its magnificent founder,

and sumptuously embellished by successive kings,\* had, at one time, the greatest commerce in the earth.† At the mouth of its harbour stood the Pharos, or Light-house, an edifice numbered among the seven wonders of the world; while, within the city, a noble library of four hundred thousand volumes shed a rich light on the intellectual fame of the inhabitants.

ROSETTA, on a branch of the Nile, is embosomed in fields of rice and perfumed groves of citrons, oranges, and lemons, variegated with plantations of palm trees. It enjoys, therefore, the appellation of the garden of Egypt, and is the commercial medium between Cairo and Alexandria.

SAID stands on the site of the once opulent and splendid THEBES, which poured her heroes out to war through a hundred gates, and whose superb ruins, the finest existing specimens of Egyptian architecture, have been recently illustrated by Belzoni. Thebes, Memphis, Alexandria, and Cairo, have been successively the capitals of Egypt. Cairo was founded, in 973, by the Saracens.

COSSIR, which is on the Red sea, at the entrance of several valleys running into Egypt, and but 100 miles from the Nile, has, from its good position, been always chosen for the medium of commerce between Egypt and Arabia.

*River.* The NILE, the glory and benefactor of Egypt, rises in Abyssinia, traverses Nubia and Egypt, and enters the Mediterranean, after a course of about 2000 miles. The Nile, like most of the African rivers within the tropics, annually overflows its banks. The inundation is caused by the heavy rains which, in the torrid zone, follow the course of the sun on each side of the equinoctial line.‡ The rise, therefore, commences about the

---

\* The Arabic historians say, that when Alexandria was taken by the Saracens, soon after the establishment of the Mahometan religion, it was so magnificent and extensive, that it had 4000 palaces, as many baths, and 400 squares.

† Alexandria was the emporium of Eastern commerce. Bishop Newton, in his work on the Prophecies, says, that the tide of commerce flowed from Tyre to Alexandria, from Alexandria to Venice, from Venice to Antwerp, from Antwerp to Amsterdam, and from Amsterdam to London.

‡ The north wind beginning to blow about the latter end of

17th of June, or near the summer solstice, and continues to the beginning of September. As the Nile is the great source of fertility to Egypt, its progress is measured by a pillar called a Nilometer; and so much are the hopes and fears of the people excited, that the gradations are regularly proclaimed by a crier through the streets of Cairo.

*Surface.* Egypt is a long and narrow vale on both sides of the Nile, and bounded by parallel ridges of hills and mountains. The DELTA, a tract of land contained between the two extreme branches of the Nile and the sea was so named from its triangular shape, resembling that of the fourth letter of the Greek alphabet; it is the broadest, and, being intersected by the channels of the river, is the most fertile part of Egypt.

*Climate.* The sandy nature of the soil of Egypt and its situation between two ranges of mountains render the air very hot in summer; and even in winter the sun shines powerfully in the middle of the day, though the nights are cold. In one respect the climate of Egypt is almost peculiar, a shower of rain being scarcely known; but its absence is supplied by the inundation of the Nile. The atmosphere, from March to November, is inflamed by a scorching sun and cloudless sky: the other months are comparatively temperate. Winds, pernicious to health, destructive to vegetation, and called *simoom* or *samiel*, sometimes prevail, and the natives are obliged to shut themselves up in their houses, while people in the desert throw themselves on the ground to avoid their influence. About the vernal equinox they blow for nearly two months, and are then called the winds of fifty days. The north

---

March, drives the clouds, formed by the vapours of the Mediterranean, as far southward as the mountains of Ethiopia, which stopping their course, they condense and fall in torrents of rain, thus producing the overflow of the Nile. To the vapours of the Mediterranean are also added those brought over the Atlantic and Indian oceans by the south and north-west winds.

winds, anciently called the Etesian, afterwards begin, and, refreshing the air, seem "redolent of joy" and health. The longest day in Egypt is of 13 hours and a half.

*Soil and Products.* Egypt, celebrated in the time of Joseph \* for its fertility, still preserves, in part, its reputation—"There is corn in Egypt," having become a proverbial expression to denote plenty. The soil is rendered luxuriant by the inundation of the Nile, which, when it has subsided, leaves a rich sediment. Among the chief products of Egypt, besides corn, are coffee, cotton, senna, and the water-loving plants, rice, hemp, and flax, with dates, an universal article of food in the country. The sugarcane, and the acacia tree, which yields the gum arabic; the lotus, a species of water lily; and the celebrated papyrus, on which the ancients wrote, and which gave name to paper, grow in Egypt. The mulberry tree also has been recently introduced into the country for the encouragement of the silk worm and its ingenious labours.

*Government.* On the division of the Roman empire, Egypt fell to the Emperors of the East; but was wrested from them in the seventh century, by the Saracens from Arabia, under the caliphate of Omar. The country was governed by different families, until, in 1270, the Mamluke government was established, under which constitution a slave was usually advanced to the chief power in prejudice to the right of lineal succession. This singular mode was suppressed by the Sultan Selim, and since his time Egypt has remained annexed to the Turkish empire. It is governed by a Pasha, who, though nominally subject to the Grand Signior, is the efficient ruler of the country.

Under the enlightened administration of Mohammed Aly, the present Viceroy, Egypt is making rapid advances in knowledge, agriculture, and commerce. A college near

---

\* See Genesis lxii. 1.

Cairo for one hundred students has been founded, a printing press established, an hospital for persons infected with the plague built, and such precautions taken as it is hoped will free Egypt from that distemper: the children have been vaccinated, and telegraphs established from Alexandria to Cairo.

*Religion.* Mahometanism predominates in Egypt. There are, however, among the Copts, who are the descendants of the ancient Egyptians, many sects of Christians.

*Language.* The Arabic language, which has succeeded the ancient Coptic, is mostly used in Egypt; but persons who have any commercial intercourse with Europeans speak French or Italian, which have a considerable currency in all ports of the Levant.

*Inhabitants.* Egypt has a population of about two millions and a half. Formerly renowned for knowledge, it has been for ages the land of mental darkness, from which, however, it may perhaps emerge under the wise government of its present ruler. The modern Egyptians are in general indolent and effeminate, and derive their pleasures chiefly from drinking coffee and smoking, listening to eastern tales, or seeing the sports of conjurers.

*Animals.* The Crocodile, formerly the animal emblem of the Nile, and the Hippopotamos, or river horse, both amphibious creatures,\* frequent the banks of the great river. In Egypt also is found the Ibis, an elegant bird of a fine crimson colour, formerly deemed sacred on account of its devouring the noxious reptiles said to have been engendered by the inundation of the Nile. Nor can we here omit mentioning the peculiar manner in which chickens are hatched in Egypt, particularly at Cairo. Large ovens are heated to a temperature as near as possible to that of nature, into one of which about 8000 eggs are put, and the chickens are hatched in twenty-two days. This employment is continued for four months, during which some hundred thousand chickens are produced.

*Curiosities.* Egypt abounds in monuments of antiquity, and

---

\* The crocodile is supposed to be the Leviathan, and the hippopotamos the Behemoth of Scripture. Job xl. 15, and xli. 1.



the remains of its once superb temples and extraordinary sepulchres evince the skill and industry of its ancient people. The Egyptian architecture was remarkable for solidity and magnitude rather than for elegance. Its most renowned and magnificent relics are the PYRAMIDS. The destination of these immense fabrics, and the nature of their contents, are now a subject of doubt and mystery; but it is generally believed they were all intended as places of sepulture, perhaps of the mighty of the earth, whose names have passed away, while the structures remain to attest the pride, folly, and industry of man. These stupendous works, situated in a flat and extensive desert, about ten miles from Cairo, are the oldest buildings existing, having been erected, it is supposed, more than 3000 years. The Great Pyramid, the loftiest known edifice in the world, is 543 feet high, has a base 771 feet long, with a summit 28 feet wide, and covers 11 acres of ground, which is the size of Lincoln's-Inn Fields.

---

## NORTHERN CENTRAL AFRICA.

### ZAHARA, OR THE GREAT DESERT.

A wild expanse of sun and sky.

THOMSON.

*Boundaries.* Zahara, or the Great Desert, is bounded on the N. by Barbary; on the S. by Soudan or Nigritia; on the E. by Fezzan and Barca; and on the W. by the Atlantic.

The central part of northern Africa is bounded by an immense barren tract, which, including the districts of Zahara, Barca, and Libya, constitutes the largest desert in the world, and presents a surface equal in extent to about one half of Europe. The western division of this tract, called ZAHARA, OR THE GREAT DESERT, and comprised between Fezzan on the E. and the Atlantic ocean on the W., is no less than fifty days' journey, for caravans, across from north to south, or from 750 to 850 geographical miles. This

immense space, "where the traveller has nothing to contemplate but grounds that have no visible boundaries, and where the night and the day are equally solitary and equally safe," is a vast sandy plain, with the exception of a few fertile parts decorated with flowers that "*waste their sweetness on the desert air.*" Zahara is destitute of inhabitants, unless, where, being spotted with pastures, it supplies the flocks of a few poor Arabs, who wander from one well to another. These sterile regions are indeed scarcely inhabited by wild animals. The ostrich and antelope alone are found to interrupt the dreary silence, their amazing swiftness enabling them to reach the distant springs. The only domestic animal that can bear the fatigue of crossing the desert is the camel. The sands are sometimes carried away or tossed upwards; and the caravans which attempt to cross by the bearing of the sun by day or of the stars by night, are overwhelmed. Yet so bounteous has Providence been to man, that even the Desert administers to his wants. Zahara abounds in salt, and the southern part, near Nigritia, has salt-pits which supply the Moorish states.

### SOUDAN, OR NIGRITIA.

*Situation.* This great portion of central Africa is called SOUDAN by the Arabs, and NIGRITIA by geographers, both terms signifying the Land of Negroes or Black people. Nigritia extends along the parallels of the Desert of Zahara and of the river Niger, from Bambarra on the west to Bornou inclusive on the east. Its prominent features are the river Niger, which intersects its central parts, and the great chain of mountains, which, traversing Africa, forms its southern boundary. The whole of Nigritia is in the torrid zone.

*Boundaries.* It is bounded on the N. by the deserts of Zahara and Barca; on the S. by Guinea and some unexplored countries; on the E. by Nubia and Abyssinia; and on the W. by Senegambia.

*Extent.* Soudan or Nigritia extends from about the 9th

to the 20th deg. of N. latitude, and from about the 5th of west to the 25th of east longitude.

*Divisions.* Nigritia contains several kingdoms, among which are the following :

<i>Countries.</i>	<i>Places.</i>
Kong .....	Kong.
Bambarra .....	Sego,* on the Niger.
Massina .....	Janny.
Tombuctoo.....	Tombuctoo, Kabra, Taslima.
Haoussa .....	Haoussa and Boussa.
Kassina or Kashna.....	Kassina.
Ghana ..	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{S. of Kassina, of} \\ \text{which it is a} \\ \text{province.} \end{array} \right\} \text{Ghana.}^\dagger$
Bornou .....	Bornou, Akom.
Wangara.....	Ghanara.

*Lake.* Lake Kanga, in the S. part of Bornou. Some geographers, and among them Major Rennell, think that the Niger terminates in this lake, which is in lat. 16 N. and long. 25 E.

*Mountains.* Those of Komri, the great mountainous chain of central Africa.

*Places, &c.* **TOMBUCTOO**, celebrated in the travels of the renowned but unfortunate Mungo Park, is seated in a plain surrounded by eminences, and nearly 12 miles N. of the Niger. It is about 12 miles in circumference, and the residence of the King of Tombuctoo, an opulent prince, surrounded by a court in some degree splendid. Tombuctoo is the great mart of commerce

---

\* Sego is in lat. 15 deg. N. and long. 2 deg. W.

† Ghana, which is in 16 deg. 10 min. N. lat., and 13 deg. 2 min. E. long., is the most central place yet known in Africa, being at an equal distance from the Eastern and Western oceans.

between the Arab and Negro states. Kabra, on the Niger, is its trading port.

HAOUSSA, a populous, commercial, and well-cultivated district of central Africa, has manufactures of cotton goods, carpets, gold trinkets, and cutlery. HAOUSSA, its capital, is said to be larger and more populous than Tombuctoo.

A little to the west of the city of Haoussa is Boussa, on the Niger, in about 15 deg. N. lat., and nearly 4 E. long. While that celebrated traveller, Mr. Park, was sailing in a canoe on the Niger, the vessel struck among the rocks of Boussa, and was dashed to pieces. Mr. Park, with the white men who accompanied him, was precipitated into the stream, which being much agitated, prevented their swimming, and this distinguished traveller was seen to sink in it. Thus the Niger received into its bosom the scientific and adventurous man whose life was devoted to its investigation. A more costly sacrifice to the genius of the stream could scarcely have been offered.

BORNOU is, without exception, the most powerful and extensive monarchy in Africa. Akom, being the residence of the sultan, is considered the capital. The prince is a Mahometan, but the greater part of his subjects are idolators.

*River.* The source, and especially the termination, of the NIGER,\* being as yet unknown, form an object of geographical inquiry, not less interesting than that formerly excited by the mysterious Nile. Of the known course of the Niger, it may be stated, that it flows through Bambarra, passing by Sego, its capital; then visits the districts of Tombuctoo and Massina, having on it Kabra, the port to Tombuctoo; it afterwards pervades Haoussa and Kassina, and then turns S. of Bornou. By some, the Niger is supposed either to be finally absorbed in the thirsty sands of Africa, or to lose itself in the lakes of Wangara and Ghana; while others maintain that it joins the Nile; and a

---

\* In the map prefixed to the 2d vol. of Mr. Park's Travels, the head of the Niger is placed in long.  $4\frac{1}{2}$  deg. west, and latitude 11 N. Mr. Dupuis, in his Travels in Ashantee, thinks the Niger may rise near Kong, the capital of Kong, in long. 7 deg. west, and latitude  $11\frac{1}{2}$  N. Captain Laing saw the river flowing in longitude  $9\frac{1}{2}$  deg. west, and in latitude  $9\frac{1}{4}$  deg. north.

fourth opinion makes it run southwards, and having united with the Zaire or Congo of Lower Guinea, to flow with it into the Atlantic.\*

*Products.* Nigritia has metallic wealth. Gold, nearly the heaviest of all metals, but which is rendered by the wants and desires of man one of the most active, is found in its rivers, and, being made up into trinkets, is dispersed by the Arab traders over the northern states of Africa. The other manufactures are leather, iron, and cotton cloth. A peculiar product of Nigritia is the Shea tree, the fruit of which affords a vegetable butter, having, according to Mr. Park, the advantages of its keeping a whole year without salt, and of being whiter and richer than the best butter made from cows' milk.

*Climate.* Placed in the centre of the torrid zone, Nigritia feels its most intense fervour. The scorching heat of a vertical sun upon a dry and sandy country, makes the air insufferably hot; and when the solar rays are seconded by the sultry wind of the desert, the ground is often so much heated as not to be borne by the naked foot; and even the Negroe slaves will not run from one tent to another without their sandals.

*Governments.* The chiefs of Nigritia govern despotically. Three-fourths of the population are slaves.

*Religion.* The Mahometan religion prevails in some parts of Nigritia, but the majority of the people are said to be Pagans. Mr. Park, however, affirms, that the belief of one God and of a future state of reward and punishment, is

---

\* Major Clapperton, who has very recently arrived in England from an expedition to discover the source of the Niger, has, according to some of the public prints, ascertained, beyond a doubt, that the river flows, not as generally supposed in an *eastern*, but in a *western* course, and empties itself into the Atlantic between the gulfs of Benin and Biafra.

universal. The Negroes do not deem it necessary to offer up prayers except on a new moon.

*The Negroes.* The geographical limits of the Negro race are from the river Senegal on the N. to the 20 deg. of south latitude. They are distinguished from all other people, especially from Europeans, by the thickness of their skull. The food of the Negro is chiefly rice; his drink, the sap of the palm tree; his habitation, a conical hut composed of the branches of trees; his chief amusement, that of dancing, of which the whole race are so fond, that a traveller in describing them says, "After sun-set all Africa dances;" even the slave forgets his bonds, and will dance in his fetters to the sound of a small drum.

---

## EASTERN AFRICA.

### NUBIA.

*Boundaries and Extent.* Nubia is bounded on the N. by Egypt, on the S. by Abyssinia, on the E. by the Red sea, and on the W. by Nigritia. Its length is about 600 miles, with a breadth of 500. The Nile flows through Nubia, but its bed is in general much narrower than in Egypt.

*Divisions.* Nubia is divided into several states; the chief of which are DONGOLA on the N., and SENNAAR on the S., with small capitals of the same names.

*Climate and Products.* In the narrow and rocky parts the heat is intense, but the climate, owing probably to the aridity of the atmosphere, is in general healthy. The low shrub of the Senna, and the tamarisk and date trees, abound in Nubia.

*Government and Inhabitants.* Nubia is now governed by three brothers under the title of Kashefs. DERR, a village consisting of about 200 houses, in a grove of date

trees, is their chief residence. A modern traveller, the late Mr. Buckhardt, represents the men of Nubia as honest and kind, and the women as virtuous.

### ABYSSINIA.

*Boundaries.* Abyssinia is bounded on the N. by Nubia, from which it is parted by the river Abawi, on the S. and W. by Ethiopia, and on the E. by Adel and the Red sea. Its capital is Gondar, and its chief trading place Massowah, on a small island in the Red sea, with some fortifications, and the houses formed of reeds lined with mats.

*Mountains.* The mountains of the Moon, extending through Abyssinia to the Arabian sea.

*River.* One of the principal sources of the Nile, and which is called the Blue river and eastern branch, is in Abyssinia, in the mountains of the Moon, near the village of Geesh, lat. 11 deg. N., and long. 37 deg. E. The western branch, called *Bahr-el-Abiad*, or the White river, and which is the superior stream, rises in Donga in the same chain, and unites with the former at Touthi, a town of Nubia.

*Climate, &c.* Abyssinia, being an elevated country, enjoys a temperate climate. It has gold and silver, and its soil, which is fertile, though in some parts rocky, produces the tamarind, coffee shrub, and acacia tree.

*Government and Religion.* The former is a despotic monarchy; and the latter is a mixture of the Mahometan, Jewish, and Christian religions.

The RED SEA, which is a gulf of the Arabian sea, about 1500 miles in length and 200 where broadest, is entered by the strait of Babelmandel, and separated from the Mediterranean by the isthmus of Suez, through which it was formerly proposed to cut a channel, and thus unite the two seas. The Red sea abounds with coral. It is not known that any single stream of fresh water reaches it.

**ADEL, AJAN, ZANGUEBAR, MOSAMBIQUE, AND  
MOCORANGA OR MONOMOTAPA.**

**ADEL**, a fruitful district between Abyssinia and Ajan, was a province of the former, but is now independent. Zeila, on the coast of the Arabian sea, is its port.

**AJAN**, a district S. E. of Adel, exports gold, ivory, and ambergris.

**ZANGUEBAR**, S. of Ajan, has Melinda for its capital. The Portuguese, by whom it was first discovered, have many settlements on the coast.

**MOSAMBIQUE**, the principal settlement of the Portuguese on the E. coast of Africa, lies S. of Ajan. Its capital, of the same name, has the best harbour on the coast. From Mosambique the Portuguese export many slaves to S. America.

**MOCORANGA OR MONOMOTAPA**, S. W. of Mosambique, is the most powerful and civilized kingdom in the S. E. part of Africa. **SOFALA** and **SABIA** are its dependencies.

---

**SOUTHERN AFRICA.**

**CAFFRARIA.**

**CAFFRARIA**, a southern portion of Africa, extending from the 20th to about the 28th deg. of S. lat., and separated by the Kambanni mountains from the Hottentot country, has many tribes. Among these, the **BICHUANAS**, **DAMARRAS**, and **CAFFRES PROPER**,\* are most known. Of

---

\* The word Caffre is of Arabic derivation, and means an Infidel, a term given by the Moors of Northern Africa to all persons not of their own faith. Caffraria, therefore, means the land of Infidels.



the Bichuanas, LATTAKOO, in lat. 27 S. and long. about 24 E., is the capital.

*Inhabitants.* The Bichuanas, who are emerging out of barbarism into civilization, are chiefly occupied in war, hunting, and the preparation of skins for clothes. The Caffres, an open, good-humoured, and hospitable race, dwell in permanent villages consisting of 40 or 50 huts, tent-fashioned, and placed near the banks of rivers for their own convenience and that of their cattle. A collection of these huts, formed in a circle, constitute a village or *Kraal*. The Caffres believe in an invisible Being, but are not known to have any religious ideas. Missionaries are, however, zealously employed in teaching them the principles of the Christian religion.

*Chief River of Caffraria.* The great ORANGE river, or the GARIEP, principally formed by the meeting of the two rivers of the same name. This stream, superior in depth and breadth to any other of southern Africa, crosses Caffaria from E. to W., and falls into the Atlantic near cape Voltas.

### COUNTRY OF THE HOTTENTOTS.

This country extends from about the 28th deg. of latitude to the extremity of Africa, and includes many tribes, with the colony of the Cape. Among the former are the NAMAQUAS, KORAS, and BOSJESMEN, or the men living in the woods. The last of these are a miserable class, so poor that they often feed on the wild roots growing round their dwellings. Hunger, cold, and every species of distress, have dwindled them down to a stature probably the most diminutive of the human race. The middle size of the men is about four feet six inches, and that of the women even less.

### COLONY OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

*Situation.* The territory of the cape of Good Hope, which lies between the 30th deg. of S. latitude and the

southern extremity of Africa, was but of small extent when first formed by the Dutch East India Company. It now extends 500 miles from E. to W. and nearly 300 from N. to S. It belongs to Great Britain. The chief place is Cape Town.

CAPE TOWN, at the head of Table bay, and backed by a magnificent amphitheatre of mountains, is large and populous, and the seat of the British government. The British East India-men, and, in times of peace, the ships of other nations, take in provisions at this place, when outward bound.

*Bays.* Table and False bays, and that of Saldanha, which has the finest harbour of southern Africa, is capable of holding the largest fleets.

*Capes.* The cape of Good Hope, and that of Aguillas.

The southern promontory of Africa is a vast peninsular mass of rocky mountains joined to the main land by a sandy isthmus. Cape Aguillas is the extreme southern point of Africa, being in 34 deg. 58 min. 30 seconds of S. lat. The passage to the East Indies by the cape of Good Hope, was first made in 1497, by Vasco de Gama, a Portuguese. The discovery was one of those events which have most affected the fortunes of nations and individuals: the tide of commerce having been thereby diverted from the southern to the central and more northern countries of Europe.

*Surface.* The country round the Cape has grand scenery, distinguished by stupendous cliffs, rugged rocks, and spiral-topt mountains. Some of the elevations are named from their configuration, the Table (3500 feet high), the Lion, and the Sugar Loaf.

*Climate.* Though the climate of the Cape is generally salubrious, it approaches to that of the torrid zone; the greatest cold in July and August only producing light snow on the summits of the mountains, and it is rarely sufficient to render fires even comfortable. "So great," says a modern traveller,\* "was the heat while passing over the

---

\* Mr. Campbell.

country, that I could not touch without pain part of the waggon which had been exposed to the sun, and the thermometer was then at 100."

*Products.* The Cape produces wines, some of which are exported under the name of cape Madeira. The celebrated Constantia, the produce of two vineyards only, is made at the village bearing its name. The country round the Cape abounds with fragrant and beautiful plants, and the English green-house derives from it much of its exotic beauty. The numerous and elegant families of heaths and of geraniums, with "their crimson honours," and the fragrant and delicate jessamine,\* are among the beauteous ornaments which we owe to Southern Africa, whose entire Flora may be fairly estimated at not less than ten thousand.†

*Inhabitants.* The name of Hottentot has hitherto been used proverbially to express a want of decent and civilized habits. There is reason, however, to hope that, under the mild and reforming influence of the Christian religion, and of the arts of civilization now extended to them, the Hottentots will cease to be a reproach to our nature. They are of a mild and docile temper—one of the best qualities for the reception of knowledge.

*Animals.* No country in the world has a greater variety of animals than those found within the narrow compass of eight degrees of latitude from the Cape. In it exist the largest as well as the minutest in numerous classes of zoology. The ostrich, the largest bird, and the creeper, one of the smallest, known to man; the elephant and the black-streaked mouse, the one weighing 4000 pounds, the other about the fourth part of an

\* —————her jessamine remote

Caffraia sends.

COWPER'S *Task*, the Garden.

† For this information I am indebted to Messrs. Loddiges, who have, in their delightful garden at Hackney, not less than fourteen hundred species of Cape plants now in cultivation. "The Botanical Cabinet," a work published by those skilful horticulturalists, has many beautiful coloured delineations of the exotics of the Cape.

ounce; the camelopardalis, the tallest of quadrupeds, and of the astonishing height of 17 feet, and the little elegant zebu, of three inches,—are found here. In this district, which may be called the *menagerie* of Africa, are the hippopotamus, the rhinoceros, the antelope, the beautifully striped zebra, the lion, the leopard, the panther, the tiger-cat, the wolf, and the hyæna.

---

## WESTERN AFRICA.

### SENEGAMBIA.

Under this name are included some districts near the rivers Senegal and Gambia, the western boundary of which is, in general, the Atlantic ocean. They are distributed into distinct governments, but the natives may be divided into four classes—the FOULAHs, JALOFFs, FELOOPS, and MANDINGOES.

The Foulahs, who live in the neighbourhood of Guinea, and between the Senegal and Gambia, are a mild and gentle race, fond of a pastoral life, and skilful as herdsmen.

The Jaloffs, who live between the same rivers, are a powerful and martial people.

The Feloops, who reside S. of the Gambia, are wild, gloomy, and unsociable. They are supposed never to forgive an injury, not even one which their own folly or wickedness may have excited; and exhibit that most disgusting of all earthly sights—a father inculcating a vindictive spirit on his children; since they transmit quarrels as deadly feuds to their posterity.

The Mandingoes, a tribe between the country of the Feloops and the district of Kong, (a part of Nigritia,) are sociable, and so kind and gentle in disposition, that a traveller has called them the *Hindoos* of Africa. These different races have made little progress in civilization. Their dwellings are small and incommodious. A circular mud wall, four feet high, with a conical roof made of bamboo cane, and thatched with grass,

forms alike the palace of the king and the hovel of the slave. The religion is a mixture of Mahometanism and Paganism.

*Mountains.* The Sierra Leone mountains, between Senegambia and Guinea, and those of Kong. The former are so called because frequented by the lion. The mountains of Kong are the highest portion of the great central belt of Africa.

*Rivers.* The Senegal, Gambia, and Rio Grande, or Great river.

The SENEGAL, which rises in long. nearly 7 deg. W. and lat. 11 N.\* in the mountains of Kong, flows N. W., and falls into the Atlantic. The GAMBIA, the most commercial river of Africa, rises in the same mountains about 100 miles W. of the Senegal, in long 9 W. and lat. 11 N., and having flowed N. W., enters the Atlantic between capes Verd and St. Mary.† The Gambia is much frequented by the crocodile and hippopotamus. "I counted at one time," says Mr. Park, "thirteen crocodiles and two hippopotami on the banks." The English and French have factories on the Senegal and Gambia. The RIO GRANDE rises S. of the Gambia, and falls into the Atlantic. South of it is cape SIERRA LEONE, near which is FREE TOWN, a philanthropic establishment formed in 1784 by the English, for the introduction into Africa of the arts of civilized life.

*Products.* Ivory, from the elephants' teeth; gold dust, found in the sands of rivers; bees' wax, collected in the woods by the slaves; and ostrich feathers. Gum Senegal is procured by incisions in, or natural exudations from, the acacia tree; and many woods used in dying grow in Senegambia.

---

\* The latitudes here given as those of the sources of the Senegal and Gambia, are taken from the map prefixed to Park's Travels.

† Near the banks of the Gambia, died, in 1824, that enterprising traveller Mr. Bowditch.

## GUINEA.

*Boundaries.* Guinea is bounded on the N. by Nigritia; on the S. by Caffraria, and the gulf of Guinea; on the E. by Ethiopia; and on the W. by the Atlantic. It is often divided by geographers into UPPER GUINEA in the N., and LOWER GUINEA in the S.

## UPPER GUINEA.

Upper Guinea, which extends from the Mesurado on the W., to Cross river on the E., has four divisions, each named after its chief commercial wealth, viz., the Grain coast, between the Mesurado and cape Palmas; the Ivory coast, between cape Palmas and the river Lagos; the Gold coast,\* between the rivers Assinee and Volta;† and the Slave coast, between the rivers Volta and Cross. Upper Guinea includes also the States of Ashantee, Dahomey, and Benin.

*Rivers.* The Mesurado, Assinee, Volta or Aswady, and the Benin or Formosa. The Formosa is thought by some travellers to be a branch of the Niger.

*Mountains.* Those of Kong and Komri.

*Capes.* Capes Mesurado, Palmas, Three Points, Lahore, and Formosa.

*Islands.* Fernando Po, St. Thomas, Annobona, in the gulf of Guinea.

*Surface.* A mountainous ridge runs to the N. of Guinea, while the ocean washes its S. and W. sides. The Grain, Ivory, and Gold coasts are low and thickly wooded, but inland, the country has hills and fertile plains.

\* Our gold coin called a guinea received that name because the gold of which the first was struck had been brought from Guinea. It formerly bore the impression of an elephant, that animal being the symbol of Africa.

† The Ivory and Gold coasts are often termed Guinea Proper.

*Climate.* The climate of the western coast of Africa, from the lat. of 20 N. to the equator, is in general very destructive to Europeans; the rainy season, and exhalations from the marshes, producing many disorders. In Senegambia the thermometer rises in the open air, during July, to 120 or even 130 degrees.

---

### ASHANTEE.

The kingdom of Ashantee, an inland country north of the Gold coast, was established as a powerful state about a century ago, by Sai Tootoo, its most famous monarch. The river Volta is its eastern, and the Assinee for the most part its western limit. Coomassie about 200 miles from the coast in 7 deg. N. lat., and about 2 deg. W. long., is its capital. Cape Coast Castle, on the Gold coast, about 180 miles S. of Coomassie, is an English settlement.\*

*Extent.* Ashantee, with its tributary and allied territory, includes a space between the 6th and 9th deg. of N. lat. The longitude may be reckoned from the 4th deg. W. to the river Volta.

*Surface and Products.* Ashantee, from the 7th deg. of latitude, is almost one solid mass of vegetation in the form of a compact forest. The most populous provinces are north of that line. It produces gold and silver, cotton and tobacco.

*Inhabitants.* The Ashantees, who excel their neighbours in courage and discipline, fight with muskets, bows, arrows, and

---

\* A friendly intercourse was formed some years ago between the English and the sovereign of Ashantee, but a misunderstanding having arisen, the King, in January, 1824, came down to the coast with a large army and attacked them. The English after a brave resistance, were defeated by the Ashantees with the loss of their gallant commander Sir Charles Macarthy.

javelins, the arrows being often poisoned with a venom so active as to produce death in a few minutes. The disposable force is reckoned at 150,000 men, and the king, who is despotic, is said, when desirous of accomplishing his plans, not to value the lives of thousands of his subjects. Human sacrifices are frequent at Coomassie, particularly during festivals.

### DAHOMÉY.

*Situation.* Dahomey lies to the E. of Ashantee, from which it is separated by the river Volta. Its capital is Abomey. Dahomey is greater in extent and population than Ashantee. The people are a fine race of Negroes; manly and active, but ferocious. The King, a despotic sovereign, resides in an extensive building of bamboo and mud-walled huts, the entrance to which is said to be paved with human skulls, and the side walls adorned with human jaw-bones, with a few bloody heads intermixed. The military resources of Dahomey are great, its sovereign being able to raise 140,000 men.

### BENIN.

*Situation.* Benin, a fertile and comparatively civilized kingdom, is to the E. of Dahomey, and has for its capital Benin, on a river of the same name. This kingdom is the most considerable state on the Slave Coast, and its sovereign, who can bring 200,000 men into the field, is the most powerful of the three monarchs of Guinea. At Gato, near the capital, died in December 1823, the celebrated traveller Belzoni, whose researches in Egypt have recently excited great interest. The object of the expedition in which he died was to ascertain the termination of the Niger, which is said, by a traveller recently arrived in England, to be between the gulfs of Benin and Biafra. Cape Formosa separates the two gulfs.



## LOWER GUINEA.

*Divisions.* Lower Guinea commences with the coast of Biafra and contains the following districts, which are named from their Negro tribes: **LOANGO**, *cap.* Loango; **CONGO**, *cap.* Congo; **Angola**, *cap.* St. Paul de Leanda; and **Benguela**, *cap.* Benguela.

*Climate and Products.* The climate of Lower Guinea, like that of Upper, is unhealthy. The products also are the same.

*Chief River.* The Zaire or Congo, a river of the first class, and the largest African stream S. of the Equator. The Zaire, which it is maintained by some travellers rises N. of the Equator, and by others ten degrees S. of it, divides Loango from Congo, and flows into the Atlantic.

**CAPE NEGRO**, a few degrees S. of Benguela, is in lat. 16 deg. S. From this point down to St. Helena bay there is said to be no fresh water on the coast.

## ISLANDS OF AFRICA.

Africa, compared with the other three great divisions of the globe, has but few islands. The following are the principal:

## THE AZORES OR WESTERN ISLANDS,

Nine in number, are in the Atlantic, between the 37th and 40th deg. of N. lat., nearly midway between Europe and America, and opposite to the coast of Portugal, to which kingdom they belong. **St. Michael**, the largest, and **Tenozera**, the residence of the Portuguese governor, possess the chief commerce of the group. St. Michael has an abundance of oranges and lemons. Every tree yields annually 6000 or 8000 oranges or lemons; and 26,000 are known to have been gathered from a single tree. The embarkation of fruit for England and America begins in November and ends in May.

CORVO,\* the smallest of the Azores, has its name from the number of crows observed on it by the first discoverers, and is the place through which many geographers of the 16th century drew their first meridian, because at that time the compass had no variation in this island.

#### MADEIRA,

A mountainous island, belongs to the Portuguese, and is near the W. coast of Africa, about the 33d deg. of N. lat. Funchal is its capital. The climate being mild and temperate, is recommended for pulmonary complaints. The riches of Madeira consist in its vineyards, which produce the generous wine known by its name, the quantity of which annually exported is, on an average, 25,000 pipes. Madeira is the principal of a group called the Madeiras.

#### THE CANARY ISLES,

S. of Madeira, and eleven in number, but of which only seven are inhabited, lie in about the 28th deg. of N. lat., and belong to Spain. They were the Fortunate or Happy islands of the ancients, in which warriors and sages, the good and the brave, reposed after the toils of their mortal existence. Teneriff, the most remarkable, has the principal commerce, which consists in wine. Near the centre of the island is a lofty volcanic mountain, called the Peak. It rises in the shape of a sugar-loaf, from a base of fifteen miles in circumference to the height of between 13,000 and 14,000 feet, and may be seen 43 leagues at sea. The Dutch formerly drew their first meridian through the Peak, then supposed to be the highest elevation in the globe; and over Ferro, one of the Canaries, the ancients drew their first meridian, that island being the western limit of their geography. The Canary bird, now usually imported from Germany, originally came from these islands, which are also noted for the rich Canary wine; of this 40,000 pipes are said to be annually made.

---

\* Corvo, derived from the Latin, *corvus*, is the Portuguese for a crow. Valerius a Roman, was surnamed *Corvus* from the circumstance of a crow having, it is said, assisted him in single combat with a Gaul. Butler's Quest. in Roman Hist.

## CAPE VERD ISLANDS,

Belonging to Spain, are a cluster of about ten in number, W. of Cape Verd, between the 15th and 17th deg. of N. lat. They were thus named on account of their verdure. St. Jago is the principal.

## FERNANDO PO.

FERNANDO Po, PRINCE'S ISLAND, ST. THOMAS, and ANNOBONA, are in the gulf of Guinea; while ST. MATTHEW and ASCENSION islands lie S. W. of it. Fernando Po, a healthy and fertile island belonging to the British, is, from its commanding position, an important possession whether as a station to suppress the slave trade which rages on the opposite coast, or as a point and fortress to protect our future operations in Africa, whether commercial or political; and if, as is now supposed, the Niger discharges itself into the Atlantic near Benin, the island of Fernando may command the trade of Northern Central Africa.

## ST. HELENA,

A British possession, which may be termed a rock in the Atlantic, is in about 15 deg. S. lat., and 1200 miles from the African coast. The British East-Indiamen often stop here and refresh. The island is entirely composed of steep, perpendicular rocky precipices and high mountains, covered with volcanic matter, but inclosing beautiful and romantic valleys. St. Helena is memorable as the island to which Bonaparte was exiled in 1815, and where, in 1821, he terminated the "*fitful fever*" of his ambitious life. Here, near a willow tree and beside a crystal stream, sleeps in peace that mighty conqueror who so often menaced and disturbed the repose of nations!

## MADAGASCAR,

Off the S. E. coast of Africa, is the largest of the African isles, and ranks the third in size among the islands of the world; it being 720 miles long. Fort Dauphin, on the E. side, is the principal place, in this luxuriant isle.

The Comora islands, four in number, are in the N. part of the channel of Mozambique.

The isle of BOURBON, E. of Madagascar, belongs to the French, and produces excellent coffee.

MAURITIUS, or the ISLE OF FRANCE, N. of Bourbon, is now a British possession.

The island of SOCOTRA, E. of cape Guardafui, produces fine aloes. Though, by its geographical position, it belongs to Africa, being nearest that quarter of the globe, Socotra forms a part of the Arabian territory, and is governed by an Arabic Sheik.



## AMERICA.

---

THIS vast continent, the largest of the four grand divisions of the earth, and emphatically styled the "New World," was discovered by Columbus, in 1492. Encircled by the ocean, America is entirely detached from the eastern hemisphere, but its north-west point approaches, in the latitude of sixty-six, very near to the coast of Asia. It is divided by nature into two large peninsulas, connected by the isthmus of Darien. The northern shores of America have a higher latitude than those of Europe and Asia; while its southern portion extends twenty-one degrees beyond that of Africa. America received its name from Americus Vesputius: thus he usurped an honour due to Columbus, its first discoverer.

*Zones.* America occupies a space in four of the zones: in the north frigid, the northern and southern temperate, and the torrid.

*Boundaries.* America is bounded on the N. by the Frozen ocean; on the S. by the Southern ocean; on the E. by the Atlantic; and on the W. by the Pacific.

*Extent.* Exclusively of Greenland, the contiguity of which to the main land is uncertain, America extends from the 72nd deg. of N. lat. to the 56th of S. lat.; a space including 126 degrees, or about 8,800 British miles.

*Governments.* While, with the exception of the Republic of Switzerland, in Europe, the Old World contains not one Commonwealth, America has, at the present time, seven Republics and only one Monarchy:—the United States, the Mexican States, Guatemala, Colombia, Peru, Chili, and the United Provinces of Paraguay. The single Monarchy is the empire of Brazil.

*Population.* The whole population of America, continental and insular, is estimated, by an eminent writer,\* at 34,942,000.

---

\* HUMBOLDT's *New Spain*, 2d edit.

## SUMMARY OF NORTH AMERICA.

*Boundaries.* North America is bounded on the N. by the Frozen ocean; on the S. by the isthmus of Darien or Panama; on the E. by the Atlantic; and on the W. by the Pacific.

*Extent.* Exclusively of Greenland, North America extends from about the 8th to the 72th deg. of N. latitude. From the promontory of Alaska on the W. to the extreme point of Labrador on the E., its breadth is about 3300 British miles, while the length may be computed at 4300.

*Zones.* North America occupies a space in three of the zones: the extremity of it, in the north, is in the frigid; the central countries lie in the N. temperate; and the southern are in the torrid zone.

*Divisions.* The continent of North America may be divided into three grand sections. 1. The British Possessions, including New Britain and Canada, on the N. 2. The United States in the centre, comprehending Louisiana and the Floridas. 3. The territories of the United Mexican States, late New Spain.

*Chief Islands.* Newfoundland, near Labrador; the islands of cape Breton and St. John's, (or Prince Edward's island,) in the gulf of St. Lawrence; and the Bermudas in the Atlantic.

*Peninsulas.* Nova Scotia, S. E. of Labrador; California, on the Pacific ocean; East Florida, between the Atlantic ocean and the gulf of Mexico; and Yucatan, between the bays of Honduras and Campeachy.

*Capes.* Farewell, the S. point of Greenland; Breton, E. of Canada; Hatteras, in the United States; Blanco, in Mexico; Lucas, the S. point of California; and Icy cape, the north-western extremity of the continent.

*Isthmus.* Darien or Panama, uniting N. and S. America.

*Bays.* Baffin and Hudson's bays, in the N.; the bay of Campeachy, in the gulf of Mexico; the bay of Honduras, between Yucatan and Honduras; and Nootka sound, on the N. W. coast.

*Straits.* Davis's strait, the entrance to Baffin's bay; Cumberland strait, which is the northern, and Hudson's strait, which is the southern entrance to Hudson's bay; with Beering's strait between America and Asia.

*Lakes.* Slave lake, and Athapuscow in the Indian territory; Winnipeg in New South Wales; and the great chain of lakes which are partly in Canada and partly in the United States.

*Chief Rivers.* The St. Lawrence in British America, and the Missouri and Mississippi, which, having united, flow into the gulf of Mexico.

*Mountains.* The Rocky or Stoney mountains in the N. W.; the Alleghany on the E.; and the vast mountains to the S., on the table-land of Mexico.

## GREENLAND.

Greenland, a large country between the Frozen ocean and the E. side of Baffin's bay and Davis's strait, is, at its southern point, cape Farewell, seven degrees within the temperate zone. How far it extends to the north or east is uncertain, or whether it is a great island, separated from the continent of America by a strait, or a peninsula united to it by the lands at the head of Baffin's bay. The east coast, formerly visited by Europeans, is now closed by barriers of ice. The western shores are inhabited as far as 76 deg. This cold and dreary country presents an assemblage of rocky mountains, whose summits are crowned with ice and eternal snow. The summer toward the south commences at the end of May and lasts until the beginning of September. The darkness of the long winter is enlivened by the reflection of the snow and by brilliant Auroræ Boreales.

*Inhabitants.* The Greenlanders, a strong and healthy, but ignorant class, are of the same race as the Esquimaux of the neighbouring continent. Like other inhabitants of northern countries, they collect together in families during the winter, and reside in low huts; but their summer habitations consist of slight tents, which are generally made of the skins of sea-dogs. Greenland, which is frequented for its whale fishery, trades in eider down, whale oil and bone, the skins and oil of seals, and in dried and salted fish. The Danes claim a sovereignty over the country, and have taken some pains to civilize its inhabitants by Missionaries, among whom was Paul Egede, whose religious zeal prompted him to visit it in 1720, and who published an account of the country.

*Baffin's Bay.* The sea usually, but perhaps improperly, called BAFFIN'S BAY had its name from an Englishman, who discovered it in 1620, and who named some of its inlets, capes, and islands, after his patrons or friends, Sir James Lancaster, Alderman Jones, Dudley Digges, and others. Baffin's bay has been the principal scene of Captain Parry's expeditions to discover a north-west passage into the Pacific. In his first expedition, of 1819, he entered Lancaster's sound, and advanced so far as to see land in the 117th deg. of west longitude, the most westerly yet discovered to the northward of the American continent, and which was named Bankes's island in honour of the late venerable and enlightened President of the Royal Society, Sir Joseph Bankes. Returning as far as the 110th deg. of W. longitude and the 75th of N. latitude, Captain Parry wintered there in an island called Melville Island, where that gallant officer and his companions passed 92 days in darkness, from October to February. It being prevented, by impenetrable barriers of ice, from making any further progress westward, the expedition returned to England in October 1820. A second attempt was made, under the same commander, in 1821, but did not succeed in its great object, and owing to some unhappy election of his course, that enterprising officer did not go so far west by 20 degrees, nor so far north by 10 degrees, as in his first expedition. Captain Parry went out a third time in May, 1824, but returned, unsuccessful, to England in October, 1825, in consequence of his ship being wrecked on the ice.

---



## BRITISH AMERICA.

*Situation.* The British possessions in North America occupy a northern portion of the continent.

*Boundaries.* They are bounded on the N. by the Frozen ocean; on the S. by the United States, and by territory belonging to the Indians; on the E. by Baffin's bay and the Atlantic; and on the W. by the Pacific.

*Divisions.* British America includes New Britain, Upper and Lower Canada, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia, with the isles of Cape Breton and Newfoundland.

### NEW BRITAIN.

New Britain, which includes LABRADOR, AND NEW NORTH AND SOUTH WALES, with the coasts round Hudson's bay, is a cold and wild region inhabited by Indians and Esquimaux. On the S. and W. coasts of Hudson's bay, an English company, first established in the reign of Charles I., have settlements, and trade with the Indians in furs, goose-quills, and feathers. Fort Prince of Wales, the most northerly of the establishments, is on Churchill river, in lat. 59 N.

*Climate.* Labrador and the Hudson-bay coasts have a fervid summer and rigorous winter, the thermometer rising in July to 90 deg., being 10 deg. higher than the medium heat of the West Indies, while in January it falls 45 deg. below 0. The heat of summer, though transient, creates almost instantaneous vegetation, and the Europeans of the factories gather in July the produce of their gardens sown only in June. During the winter the Auroræ Boreales are visible every night.

*Inhabitants.* The ESQUIMAUX are men of short stature. They have small limbs, are of a copper colour, and have black and coarse hair. Their dress is made of skins. The flesh of seals and deer,

and fish, form their chief food. Their winter dwellings are mostly sunk in the ground, but they have also ice-huts formed of large square slabs of fresh-water ice, five or six inches in thickness, and having the joint where the edge of the pieces meets filled up with snow, of which the roof also is generally made. The appearance of these crystal huts, whiter when first constructed than Parian marble, and so transparent, that those who are within them can be seen at a considerable distance, is very picturesque. The Esquimaux keep many dogs for the sake of their flesh, and for their skins, and that they may draw their sledges in winter. In the management of their canoes they are dexterous. They are not known to have any religion, government, or laws.

### CANADA.

Canada, which had been discovered by Cabot in 1497, was first colonized by the French; but, in 1760, was conquered by the British and annexed to their empire.

*Boundaries.* Canada is bounded on the N. by New Britain; on the S. by the United States; on the E. by New Brunswick, and the gulf of St. Lawrence; and on the W. by an unknown country.

*Divisions.* There are two provinces, the Upper and the Lower; the former, which much exceeds the other in extent, is principally on the lakes, while the latter is on the gulf of St. Lawrence. Montreal is the capital of Upper, and Quebec of Lower Canada.

*River.* The ST. LAWRENCE,\* which ranks as the second river of N. America, issues from lake Ontario; and it thus becomes the outlet by which the great series of lakes empty themselves into the Atlantic. Having passed by Montreal and Quebec, the St. Lawrence, after a course of 700 miles, flows into the gulf to which it gives name, and forms an estuary 90 miles wide.

---

\* The St. Lawrence was thus named by Cartier because he entered it on the festival of that saint.

*Lakes.* Superior, Huron, Michigan, Erie, and Ontario.

MONTREAL is placed in the bosom of a delightful isle formed by the St. Lawrence.

QUEBEC, the capital of British America, is divided into the Upper and Lower town. The former, built on a rock and fortified by nature and art, is the strongest fortress of the American continent. Quebec surrendered to the English in 1759, after a battle in which General Wolfe closed a brief yet brilliant military career, in the arms of victory, and under circumstances which may bear an advantageous comparison with the last moments of Epaminondas at Mantinea.

*Surface.* Canada is in many parts hilly and barren; but the Upper Province has verdant meadows, beautiful plains, and forests both extensive and luxuriant, which supply fine timber.

*The Lakes.* The long chain of lakes forming the southern boundary of Canada, is not only one of the grandest physical features of America, but of the whole world, there being nothing equal to it on the globe. They form a connected body of fresh water extending more than a thousand miles. Lake SUPERIOR, so named from its relative rank, is the largest collection of *fresh* water known, having a circumference of 1500 miles, and being fed by 40 rivers. Lakes ERIE and ONTARIO communicate by the river Niagara,\* celebrated for its stupendous cataract, whose breadth is more than a mile. The water does not precipitate itself down the vast abyss in one entire sheet, but is separated by islands; the principal of which is 350 yards broad, and forms the cataract into two grand falls, the one of 165 and the other of 150 feet. The quantity of water precipitated amounts, according to the calculation of an experienced officer, to 670,255 tons every minute.

*Climate.* Canada is in a latitude south of England, yet

---

\* Niagara is said to be an Iroquois word signifying the thunder of waters. The Indians pronounce it with the penultimate *a* long, but the Americans and Canadians always shorten it. DWIGHT's *Travels*.

its winter, especially in the Lower Province, is intensely cold, owing, as is supposed, to the north-west winds, and to the great extent of the lakes and forests. Whilst spring, summer, and autumn, occupy only five months, winter reigns during the other seven. The river St. Lawrence is closed by ice from December to April; water thrown to any considerable height freezes before it returns to the ground; and so overpowering is the cold at Quebec, that the centinels on the ramparts are relieved every fifteen minutes during the winter nights. The Canadian summer is hot.

*Products.* Canada exports fish and furs, wheat, potatoes, and the wood called lumber, which is sent to the West Indies. The forests have most of the quadrupeds which are found in North America, including foxes, squirrels, the bear, the otter, the martin, the rein-deer, and the buffalo. The beaver, whose fur is highly prized, frequents the lakes, exciting admiration for the skill displayed in the construction of its dwelling, and for its rational faculties and moral qualities. Conjugal love and parental care, industry, frugal habits, and honesty, adorn its character.

*Government.* Canada is under the direction of a Governor, appointed by the British Crown, a legislative Council, and a House of Assembly.

*Religion.* The prevailing religion is the Roman Catholic, superintended by two Bishops.

*Inhabitants.* As Canada belonged to France until 1759, most of its inhabitants are of French extraction.\* Ignorance even in the better ranks of society generally predominates, the art of acquiring money forming the main object of life.

*Population.* The two provinces have about 450,000 inhabitants.

---

\* Lower Canada contained, in 1814, no less than 330,000 inhabitants; of these, 275,000 were descended from the original French settlers.

## NEW BRUNSWICK AND NOVA SCOTIA.

New Brunswick and Nova Scotia are between the mouth and gulf of St. Lawrence and the Atlantic ocean. New Brunswick, having Frederic's town for its capital, is the mainland, and Nova Scotia, of which Halifax is the chief place, is a peninsula united by an isthmus to the former. The country abounds in game and fish. The climate of Nova Scotia is severe, the winter being intensely cold. The soil is in general thin and fatter for pasturage than agriculture.

## ISLANDS OF BRITISH AMERICA.

CAPE BRETON, a large but cold and barren island to the N. of Nova Scotia, has a rich cod fishery in the gulf of St. Lawrence. Louisburgh is its capital.

ST. JOHN'S, or PRINCE EDWARD'S island, lying to the N. of Nova Scotia, in the gulf of St. Lawrence, has a salubrious climate, fertile soil, and excellent ports. It received the latter name in honour of Edward, late Duke of Kent, his present Majesty's brother, who died in 1822, at Sidmouth, after having distinguished himself by a most active and honourable career of philanthropy.\*

NEWFOUNDLAND, discovered, in 1496, by Sebastian Cabot, is a large but rocky, cold, and sterile island, to the E. of Labrador. St. John's is the capital. Here is one of the three chief foreign fisheries of Great Britain, and of its nurseries for its seamen. The fishing banks are the scene of the grand cod-fishery which supplies the Catholic countries of Europe with cured fish for their religious fasts. Between two and three thousand vessels are employed,

---

\* A statue of this truly illustrious prince, because he was a good, enlightened, and active man, is erected at the end of Portland Place.

and the average quantity of fish taken is 12,000 tons' weight.

---

## THE UNITED STATES.

The United States, at first only thirteen in number, were originally colonized and governed by Great Britain,\* but, conceiving themselves aggrieved by some measures of the parent state, the inhabitants took up arms in 1775, and, after a contest of eight years, established an independent power with the title of the THIRTEEN UNITED STATES.† By the acquisition and the peopling of new territory, fifteen other states have been formed and admitted into the union.

*Boundaries.* The United States are bounded on the N. by British America and the great Lakes; on the S. by the gulf of Mexico; on the E. by the Atlantic; on the S. W. by New Spain, and on the W. by the Atlantic.

*Extent.* Including, as they now do, the two Floridas, the United States extend from nearly the 25th to the 49th deg. of N. lat., and with the newly-acquired western territory, may be said to lie between the 67th and about the 125th deg. of W. long. Of this immense space, the extent of settled territory may be reckoned at 1700 miles in length and 600 of a medium breadth.

---

\* Hence the names of numerous districts and places in the United States have an English origin. Virginia was so named in honour of Queen Elizabeth; Maryland, after Mary, the Queen of Charles I.; the two Carolinas from Charles II.; and the town and state of New York from the Duke of York, afterwards James II.

† The thirteen primitive states were, New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia.

*Capital.* Washington, seated at the junction of the river Potomac and its eastern branch, in lat. about 39 deg. N., and long. 77 W.

**EASTERN STATES, ON THE ATLANTIC OCEAN.**  
(Beginning in the N.)

*Chief Places.*

Maine.....	Called New England	Portland.
New Hampshire		Portsmouth, Concord.
Vermont.....		Windsor.
Massachusetts ..		Boston.
Rhode Island ..		Newport.
Connecticut ..		Hartford.
New York.....		New York.
New Jersey .....		Trenton.
Pennsylvania .....		Philadelphia.
Delaware .....		Dover.
Maryland .....		Annapolis, Baltimore.
Columbia (district*) .....		Washington.
Virginia .....		Richmond.
North Carolina .....		Raleigh.
South Carolina.....		Charlestown, Columbia.
Georgia.....		Milledgeville, Savannah.
East Florida .....		St. Augustin.

**CENTRAL STATES.**

(Beginning in the N.)

Michigan (territory).....	Detroit.
Ohio .....	Chillicothe.
Indiana .....	Vincennes.
Kentucky .....	Frankfort.

---

\* The district of Columbia consists of a portion of the States of Maryland and Virginia, on both sides of the Potomac, and about 10 miles round the city of Washington.

*Chief Places.*

Tennessee .....	Knoxville.
Alabama (territory) .....	Cahawba.

## WESTERN STATES.

(Beginning in the N.)

Illinois .....	Kaskaskias.
Missouri (territory) .....	St. Louis.
Mississippi .....	Natches.
West Florida .....	Pensacola.
Louisiana .....	New Orleans.

*Rivers.* Hudson's river, the Delaware, Susquehanna, and Potomac, are on the east, and flow into the Atlantic. The Mississippi, having been joined by the Missouri, enters the gulf of Mexico. The Columbia, a western river, rises in lat. 55 N., and falls into the Pacific ocean in lat. 46, to the South of Nootka sound.

*Mountains.* The Apalachian, or Alleghany, on the east, and the Stoney or Rocky mountains, on the west. The Apalachian begin in the north of Georgia, run from S. W. to N. E. through Virginia, N. York, and Pennsylvania, and finally penetrate into British America. The collateral ridges are very distinct. The Stoney mountains run in a northern direction from lat. 48 to nearly two degrees beyond the Arctic circle.

*Lake.* Lake Michigan is the largest lake wholly within the United States. Lake Champlain lies between the States of Vermont and New York.

*Places.* PHILADELPHIA, a fine city near the conflux of the Delaware and Schuylkill, in lat. 40 N., and long. 75 W., is the most important place in the United States. Pennsylvania, of which it is the capital, was colonized, in 1681, by the celebrated Quaker, William Penn.\*

---

\* Philadelphia was thus named from two Greek words signifying a love of our brethren. Pennsylvania was so called from the



WASHINGTON, which will, if completed, be one of the noblest cities in the world, is named after General Washington, who led the American armies during their contest with Britain, and afterwards became President of the United States.

NEW YORK, on Hudson's river, is the most commercial port in America.

BOSTON, in Massachusetts, is connected with the continent by an isthmus, and has a spacious harbour, the most commercial port in the *northern* States. The city gave birth, in 1706, to the celebrated Franklin, a genuine philosopher,\* since he had, perhaps, as large a portion of that plain good sense and practical wisdom which conduct a person with honour and success through life, as any man that ever lived. His moral maxims, which are particularly deserving the attention of young persons who are entering the world, may be ranked with the brief but sententious apothegms of Grecian sages.

CHARLES TOWN, in S. Carolina, is distinguished not only by its thriving trade, but by its gaiety and social character; qualities which belonged to the merry monarch Charles II., after whom it was named.

NEW ORLEANS, the capital of Louisiana, is advantageously placed for commerce on the Mississippi, about 100 miles from its entrance into the gulf of Mexico.

*Rivers.* The Mississippi,† the great central river of North America, rises W. of lake Superior, in lat. 47 N., and flows generally south into the gulf of Mexico below New Orleans, after a course of 2000 miles.

The Missouri, the main branch of the Mississippi, but in fact a larger and deeper stream, has its source in the Rocky mountains, and joins the latter in about the 39th deg. of latitude. The Missouri is navigable 2000 miles before its union with the Mississippi, near St. Louis, a distance of 1500 miles from the gulf of Mexico, forming altogether a navigation of 3500 miles. Steam boats ascend the river to the distance of 3000 miles from the sea.

The OHIO, a majestic yet placid stream, which, in its early name of its founder, and from *sylva*, the Latin for a wood, indicative of the state of the country when Penn first arrived there.

\* The word Philosopher is derived from two Greek words signifying a *lover of wisdom*.

† Messa-chipi, the Father of Waters.

progress, is called the ALLEGHANY, enters the Mississippi in lat. 37 N., after a S. W. course of 1186 miles.

HUDSON's river, one of the most useful rivers in America, rises west of lake Champlain, and, running south, falls into the bay of New York. A canal 350 miles in length, extends from lake Erie to the Hudson, by which the lakes communicate with the Atlantic.

The SUSQUEHANNA, the largest river of the States on the Atlantic, rises in the district of New York, and enters the bay of Chesapeake.

*Surface of the United States.* Between the Atlantic and the Alleghany chain, the country is level. Towards the west, the general aspect is that of a boundless forest, the height and diameter of whose trees evince the luxuriance of the vegetation.\* There are also several vacancies made by extensive meadow grounds, called savannahs, and sometimes prairies. Beyond the Mississippi is a vast wilderness, to which settlers are gradually going that they may clear the land.

*Climate.* The territory of the United States, extending over 24 degrees of latitude, has many modifications of climate. The northern states are, during winter, colder than European countries in the same parallel. In the states immediately south of the Potomac, the heat of summer is equal to that on the coast of Syria and Egypt. Georgia and Louisiana, with the other southern districts, feel nearly the warmth of the torrid zone. The longest day is of 15 hours and three-quarters in the north, and of 13 hours and three-quarters in the south.

*Products and Commerce.* Cotton is the chief export of the United States, of which one hundred millions of pounds are annually sent abroad. Wheat, and maize or Indian corn, are cultivated in great quantities. Iron, the most use-

---

\* Many of the trees are from 100 to 130 feet high, and from 7 to 15 feet in diameter.

ful and abundant of metals, is plentiful. Tobacco grows in Virginia and Maryland, rice in the Carolinas, and the sugarcane in Georgia and Louisiana. The Americans are skilful in ship-building: their merchant ships probably excel those of all nations for elegance of model and rapidity of sailing.

*Government.* The United States are a Federal Republic, consisting of a President and Vice-President, elected for four years, of a Senate chosen for six years, and a house of Representatives for two years. These assemblies represent the united body, but each state is regulated by its own legislature in all local concerns. There are no nobility, magistracy alone conferring distinction.

*Religion.* No religion is exclusively maintained and authorized in the United States. Christianity, however, is almost universal, and every sect enjoys toleration.

*Population.* The population of the United States, in 1824, amounted to 9,654,415 inhabitants.\* Of these, to the disgrace of the Americans be it said, more than a million and a half are slaves. Such is the inconsistency of man, that the political and religious fetters from which he flies himself, he rivets round the neck of his fellow-creatures!

*Language.* The English language is the one universally spoken in the United States. In this, business is transacted and the records are kept.

*Inhabitants.* In a population, the origin of which is so various as that of the United States, there must be a diversity of character. As a general body, the inhabitants resemble their chief progenitors, the English, being of a sedate and reserved disposition. In trade they are keen and active. Agriculture and commerce are their chief pursuits. There are good talent, which only wants opportunity for shining, general information, and a desire of knowledge, with classical learning, and a larger share of science. The United States are making great advances in internal strength and respect abroad, and seem destined to fill an important place among nations.

---

\* From the National Almanac, printed at Washington in 1824.

## THE LATE SPANISH AMERICA.

The late Spanish possessions in America occupied the immense extent comprised between nearly the 38th degree of North and the 42d of South latitude.\* This space of 79 degrees equals not only the length of all Africa, from the cape of Good Hope to the strait of Gibraltar, but much surpasses the breadth of the Asiatic Russian empire, or of the British territory in Asia, and the Spanish language was spoken over a line of 6000 miles.

### NEW SPAIN.

Among the colonies formerly subject to the Spanish crown the kingdom of NEW SPAIN held the first rank, on account of its territorial wealth and favourable position for commerce between Europe and Asia. Situated between the 10th and 38th degrees of N. latitude, and including a space five times the extent of the parent state, New Spain comprised the vast territory over which the Viceroy of Mexico had power, but which has recently thrown off the yoke. The far greater part of this region, which was divided into NEW and OLD MEXICO, now constitutes the REPUBLIC of the UNITED MEXICAN STATES. But Guatimala, the lower portion, forms a distinct government, with the exception of Chiapa, one of its southern provinces, which is politically united to the Mexican commonwealth. We shall first give the old divisions of New Spain, and afterwards those of the Mexican States.

---

\* The most *Southern* point of the late Spanish America is Fort Maullin, near the small village of Carelmapu, on the coast of Chill, (S. America,) opposite to the N. extremity of the island of Chiloe. HUMBOLDT's *New Spain*.

OLD MEXICO contained Mexico Proper, *capital* Mexico; the peninsula of Yucatan, *cap.* Merida; Honduras, *chief places*, Valladolid and Truxillo, and the district of Panama, with a capital of the same name.

NEW MEXICO included the province and peninsula of California, *cap.* St. Juan, New Navarre, and New Mexico, which last had Santa Fé for its chief town.

### THE REPUBLIC OF THE UNITED MEXICAN STATES.\*

*Boundaries.* The Mexican States are bounded on the N. and N. E. by the United States; on the S. by Guatemala and the Pacific ocean; on the E. by the United States; and on the W. by the Pacific.

*Extent.* They extend from about the 16th to the 38th deg. of N. lat., and from about the 88th to the 122d of W. long.

*Capital.* Mexico, the most populous city in the New World, is in lat. 20 deg. N., and long. 100 deg. W., at an elevation of 7468 feet above the level of the sea; and placed midway between the gulf of Mexico and the Pacific ocean.

*Divisions.* The United Mexican States are formed into twelve Intendancies and three districts, which are remote from the capital, and denominated Provinces.

On the E. coast opposite to Europe:

<i>Districts.</i>	<i>Chief Places.</i>
San Luis Potosi .....	San Luis Potosi.
Vera Cruz .....	Vera Cruz, Xalapa.
Merida or Yucatan .....	Merida.

---

\* The name of *Mexico* is of Indian origin. It signifies the habitation of the God of War, called Mexitli. HUMBOLDT.

On the W. coast opposite to Asia :

<i>Districts.</i>	<i>Chief Places.</i>
New California .....	Monteroy, San Francisco.
Old California (the peninsula of) ..	St. Juan.
Sonora .....	Arispe.
Guadalajara .....	Guadalajara, San Blas.
Valladolid .....	Valladolid.
Mexico .....	Mexico, Acapulco.
Puebla .....	Puebla.
Oaxaca .....	Oaxaca.

Internal Districts :

New Mexico .....	Santa Fé.
Durango or New Biscay .....	Durango.
Zacatecas .....	Zacatecas.
Guanaxuato .....	Guanaxuato.

*Chief Mining Districts.* GUANAXATO and ZACATECAS, in the intendancies of the same name, and CATORCE, in the division of San Luis Potosi. These three districts form a central group between the 21st and 24th deg. of N. lat.

*Rivers.* The territory of the Mexican States does not abound with navigable and, therefore, useful rivers. The narrow form of the continent, and the near approach which the mountains make to the coast, prevent the collection of a great mass of waters. The only two important rivers, for length of course or quantity of water, are the Rio del Norte\* and the Colorado.

*Lakes.* The Mexican territory has some considerable lakes, but which are gradually decreasing, and are the remains of immense basins of water formerly existing on the high and extensive plains. The principal are, the lake

---

\* Rio del Norte, that is, the river of the North. Rio is the Spanish for river; del is a contraction of de el, of the,

*Rivers.* The RIO DEL NORTE rises in the Sierra Verde, a branch of the Rocky mountains, in about the 40th deg. of N. lat., and flows by a S. E. course of more than 1500 miles into the gulf of Mexico.

The COLERADO, of California, has its source about 30 miles from the former, and taking a southern direction, falls into the head of the Californian gulf, after a course of 750 miles.

*Surface of the Mexican States.* The land, which on the coasts both of the Atlantic and Pacific, is low, gradually rises in the interior until it has attained the height of 8866 feet above the level of the sea, an elevation equal to that of mount Gothard, Cenis, and the Great St. Bernard, in Switzerland. It then spreads out into broad plains, called from their figure table lands, and presenting the unusual appearance of an immense level country on the top of a lofty range of mountains. In the equinoctial region of Mexico, the most elevated mountainous summits, which are above the limit of perpetual snow, are crowned with oak and pine. New Spain has five burning volcanoes, whose craters, continually inflamed and throwing up smoke and ashes, open in the midst of eternal snows.

*Climate.* Though two-thirds of Mexico are in the torrid, and only one-third in the temperate zone, its climate, in consequence of the great elevation of the land, is generally moderate and salubrious. The warmth even of the tropical regions is not greater than that of the spring in Spain and Italy. On the coasts and on the plains alone is the heat excessive.

*Products.* Gold and silver, sugar, indigo, cotton, and cochineal. To these we may add wax, an object of great importance in Catholic countries, where much magnificence prevails in exterior worship.

*Mines.* The subterranean wealth of Mexico is unparalleled and inexhaustible. Its 37 mining districts contain probably 3000 mines. By a mine is meant the whole of the works which com-

municate with one another. These mines produce a quantity of silver ten times greater than that furnished by all the mines of Europe. From the year 1690 to 1803, gold and silver have been extracted to the value of £284,224,924. The mine of Valenciana, in Guaxanato, which is the richest in the world, has for forty years never yielded to its proprietor, the Count de la Valenciana, less than from £80,000 to £124,000 annually, and in one instance it produced £240,000.

*Population.* The United Mexican States contain about six millions of inhabitants.

*Religion.* The established religion of the Mexican States is the Roman Catholic, *without* toleration to any other sect.

*Government.* In 1519, Fernando Cortez, a Spaniard, in the service of the celebrated Emperor Charles V., left the island of St. Domingo with eleven small vessels and a few followers, for the conquest of Mexico, and accomplished it in 1521, by the reduction of its magnificent capital, the capture of Montezuma, the sovereign, and the subjection of the kingdom. Subsequently to this event Mexico formed a part of the Spanish dominions, and was governed by viceroys until the year 1821, when a revolution occurred, and Mexico formed itself into a representative and federative Republic, having a President and a Chamber of Deputies elected by the people. General Victoria was elected President in 1824.

*Political and Commercial rank.* No region of the globe has in a higher degree the constituent elements of national greatness than the Mexican States. Situated midway between the two grand divisions of America, and also between the two great oceans of the World, the Republic of Mexico can with ease transport its riches both to the New and Ancient hemisphere. Its position in the former is favourable for an intercourse with the United States, the West-India islands, and the Republic of Colombia, in South America. From its eastern coast the commerce of Mexico may be wafted across the Atlantic to the opposite shores of Europe and Africa; while, from its magnificent ports, San Francisco, San Blas, and Acapulco, on the west, the Mexican wealth may flow along the Pacific to Asiatic realms.



In the political system of North America the Republic of Mexico will, if governed wisely, be inferior in rank only to the United States.

### GUATIMALA, OR THE CONFEDERATE STATES OF THE CENTRE OF AMERICA.

*Situation.* GUATIMALA consists of the southern districts recently forming part of New Spain.

*Boundaries.* On the N., Guatemala is bounded by the Atlantic; on the S. by the province of Veragua in S. America; on the E. and N. E. by the Atlantic and the peninsula of Yucatan; and on the W. by the intendancy of Oaxaca, one of the Mexican States.

*Extent.* Guatemala extends from the 8th to the 17th deg. of N. lat., and from the 82nd to the 95th of W. long. The capital is New Guatemala, in 14 deg. 40 min. N. lat., and 91 deg. 46 min. W. long.

*Divisions.* Guatemala has fifteen provinces; five of which are on the shores of the Pacific, five on the Atlantic, and five interior. Chiapa, Honduras, Nicaragua, and Costa Rica,\* are the most important.

*Lake.* Nicaragua, which is about 150 miles long and 60 broad.

As the western ports of North and South America cannot be approached from Europe except by the expensive, tedious, and dangerous passage round cape Horn, it has been proposed to form a communication between the two great oceans by means of the St. JUAN, which is the outlet of lake Nicaragua. This river, issuing from the lake, and after running a south-east course of 120 miles, enters the Atlantic. Nicaragua is united to lake Leon by the TIPITAPA, a river 12 miles long; and about 12 miles beyond the northern extremity of lake Leon runs the river TOSTA, which, after a course of 20 miles, flows into the

---

\* *Costa Rica* means the rich coast. It is now, however, a poor district.

## NATIVE AMERICAN OR INDIAN TRIBES. 249

**Pacific.** The only land, therefore, to be cut through, would be the 12 miles between the river Tosta and lake Leon. By this communication between the Atlantic and Pacific, the voyage to China and the Asiatic isles would be shortened some thousand miles.

**Bay and Gulf.** The bay of Honduras on the N. E., and the gulf of Popagua on the S. W.

**Cape.** Capes Honduras, N., and Gracias-a-Dios, N. E. of Honduras.

**Surface.** Guatemala is traversed by mountains, and no district of the earth perhaps so much abounds with volcanoes as that part of it lying between the 10th and 13th deg. of N. lat.

**Soil, Products, and Climate.** The soil is fertile, producing sugar, indigo, and valuable woods. The district of Honduras abounds with mahogany.

**Population.** Guatemala has about 800,000 inhabitants.

**Government.** Guatemala having separated from Spain, is, with the exception of the province of Chiapa, a federal Republic, which has a President and Chamber of Deputies.

## NATIVE AMERICAN OR INDIAN TRIBES.

When North America was first visited by Europeans the far greater part consisted of large forests and hunting grounds, the abode of wild animals and of numerous savage tribes, whose lives were alternately passed in war or in the chase. As European settlers gradually advanced westward, the Aborigines of the country were compelled by conquest or induced by treaty either to forsake the land of their fathers or incorporate it with that of their new visitors. The native tribes have thus retrograded and diminished in proportion as European America has extended and become populous. The eye of philanthropy even anticipates the time when the Atlantic and Pacific shall

become the boundaries of an universal empire of knowledge and civilization.

To the west of British America, and of the United States, and almost intermingled with them, still exist many native tribes usually called Indians, whose mode of life has descended to them from their progenitors with little variation. That young persons may become acquainted with the manners and customs of a race which is gradually disappearing, we shall select a district, which, with the exception of some inconsiderable white settlements and military posts, is occupied by something more than one hundred thousand Indians.\*

*Boundaries.* The country is bounded on the E. by the state of Missouri and the Mississippi river; on the N. by the British dominions; on the W. by the Stoney or Rocky Mountains; and on the S. by the river Arkansas and the territories of the Mexican States. The 49th deg. of lat. may be considered as the northern, while the 35th is the southern line of a district, whose great eastern boundary is the Mississippi, and its western limit the Rocky mountains.

*Surface.* Between the rivers Mississippi and Missouri the country is in general level and composed of equal parts of prairie and woodland. The prairie grass, which in a degree resembles some kinds of broom grass, grows from three to ten feet in height, and affords excellent grazing all the year round. To the west, the country, which becomes

---

\* The district selected is taken from Hunter's "Memoirs of a Captivity among the Indians of North America." The language used, as well as the facts mentioned in that entertaining volume, have also *occasionally* been adopted. Mr. Hunter's work is perhaps the best recent account of the North American natives, and is moreover interesting because its author has returned to America for the benevolent purpose of attempting the civilization of the people whose manners he records.

uneven, abrupt, and hilly, finally terminates in the Rocky mountains.

*Chief River.* The river ARKANSAS originates in the Rocky mountains, and having flowed in nearly a S. E. direction for more than 2000 miles, by numerous windings, joins the Mississippi.

*Animals.* The woodland country has the elk and various species of deer, the black bear, innumerable squirrels, the racoon, foxes, and other animals, whose furs form an object of commerce between the Indians and traders from Eastern America. Over the prairies roam countless herds of buffalos, whose flesh serves for food and whose skin forms the covering of the Indian canoe.

*Character of the Indians.* The Indians, who call themselves red men, and regard their complexion as a mark of favour from the Great Spirit, to distinguish them from white men, are of a tawney copper colour. They have prominent cheek bones and sharp noses, which are rather of an aquiline shape. Their hair is long, black, and straight. While the women carefully preserve it as an ornament to their persons, the men pluck it all out, except a small tuft that covers the crown of the head or scalp, which they usually decorate with trinkets and beads, and retain with a view to meet their enemies on an equality, "or with honourably corresponding objects of contention in the field of battle."

The Indian cabins or lodges are sometimes formed principally of clay or turf, and at others, of the bark of the birch or elm tree, sustained by slender poles, and covered first with prairie grass and then with loose earth. The life of the Indian is chiefly passed in war or hunting. Vigilant in preserving the inheritance of their fathers, jealous of the slightest verbal insult, and of wrongs, real or imaginary, the Indian tribes are frequently engaged in mutual hostility, and war is not only their principal delight on earth, but they believe that the Great Spirit will crown with peculiar favour, in another life, the warrior who has been brave and successful in this. As they chiefly depend on the chase for subsistence, hunting, next to war, is thought, by the

## 252 NATIVE AMERICAN OR INDIAN TRIBES.

Indians, the most honourable employment; and they endure the severest fatigue, cold, and hunger, while in pursuit of their prey, against which the missile weapon is directed with amazing strength and precision. The calmer days of the Indians are chiefly passed in fishing, directing their canoes, or dressing the skins of animals. These they barter for various articles which are sold to them by *Christian* traders, whose shameless cupidity too often supplies the native with the spirituous liquors which inflame his passions and enervate his frame, and with the rifle, steel-tomahawk, and scalping knife, with which he destroys his foe. The Indians are unacquainted with writing: facts are transmitted by tradition, and accounts noted by cutting notches on the posts of their cabins: "Their mode of reckoning time is simple: their year begins with the vernal equinox when the days lengthen; their monthly periods are reckoned by moons, and their diurnal, or rather nocturnal, for they count nights instead of days, from sunset to sunset." They watch some of the heavenly bodies, as the North or Polar star, and the Seven Stars in *Ursa Major*,\* and direct their way by them across the trackless Prairies, as the Arabs of Asia do over the deserts.

The Indians believe in one supreme, omnipotent, and wise Being, namely, the GREAT SPIRIT, whom they consider as the author of existence and source of comfort. Him they worship

---

\* Few things more forcibly impel man to revert to past ages than the thought which must strike him as he views the heavens, that the same celestial bodies, which impress him with wonder and gratitude, have also been contemplated by countless myriads, who are now sleeping in the chambers of the grave, but to whom those luminaries have been the source of delight and benefit, of tender sentiment in the relations of life, and of sublime devotion towards the "bounteous Giver of all good." Perhaps, with the exception of the glorious Orb of day, and of the Moon, which "takes up the wondrous tale" of Divine Goodness by night, none of the heavenly bodies have had so many eyes watching them as the North Star and the Seven Stars in *Ursa Major*. How many a traveller and navigator have owed to them safety and existence while crossing the pathless desert or immense ocean!

with sincere devotion, imploring his future goodness, and thanking him for past and present mercy. On the other hand, they credit the existence of an Evil Spirit, who is powerful, and who delights in tormenting and punishing mankind. Having no idea of the soul, the immortal part of man, or of intellectual bliss, they associate with their belief of another world the continuance of earthly pursuits,\* disencumbered of pain and grief. Delightful hunting grounds, abounding with game, and brightened by a perpetual spring and cloudless sky, will, they think, afford unceasing enjoyment in a future life.

While the true Christian must deprecate the rancorous, unforgiving, and revengeful spirit, towards his enemy, which disgraces the savage Indian, and which prompts him to inflict on his captive for the most excruciating tortures, the same Christian may learn from him much moral wisdom. The aged are treated with profound respect;† lying is detested, and, as it is a maxim with Indians not to interfere in the concerns of others, the babbling echo of slander and calumny is seldom heard, or, if heard, is unheeded. The Indians have also the merit of teaching their children what they themselves know—to direct the shaft with nerve and unerring aim, to manage the canoe with skill, to endure, to repress the cravings of unsatisfied appetite, are lessons implanted in the youthful mind, which is also inspired with patriotism by tales recited from the lips of aged warriors, who relate the achievements of departed heroes.

### BERMUDAS OR SOMER'S ISLANDS.

Before the West-India Islands, properly so called, are noticed, it will be necessary to mention two detached groups named from their discoverers. The Bermudas or

---

\* Virgil's description of the employments in Elysium harmonises with the notions of the Indians :

The love of horses which they had alive,  
And care of chariots, after death survive.

DRYDEN. *Æneid* vi. 889.

† In the Indian language age and wisdom are synonymous terms.

Somer's islands, which are four in number, and under the British dominion, lie in the Atlantic ocean, some degrees E. from the N. American coast, in about 32 deg. of N. lat. Their principal town is St. George. They have a fine climate, and are chiefly inhabited by seafaring people, who trade in salt and whales to the American coast and the West Indies.

### WEST INDIES.

The West India Islands, which were discovered by Columbus in his first voyage westward, and thus named to distinguish them from the proper Indies of the east, lie generally between Florida and the N. coast of S. America. They inclose two great expanses, the gulf of Mexico and the Caribbean sea, and present a convex line to the Atlantic, their eastern boundary.

*Extent.* The West Indies, the Bahamas included, extend from the 10th to the 28th deg. of N. lat., and from about the 59th to the 85th of W. long. They are for the most part in the torrid zone. Trinidad is at their southern extremity, Barbadoes their eastern, and Cuba their western.

*Surface.* The surface of the islands is in general abrupt and elevated; the sides of the mountains being often clothed with wood, while their tops present masses of naked rock. There are, however, many rich and lovely valleys ornamented with spots of great picturesque beauty.

*Products.* Sugar, rum, coffee, indigo, and cotton, are the chief objects of attention in the West Indies; which also export pimento, cacao, tamarinds, ginger, tortoise-shell, arrow root, and various woods, including mahogany, cedar, and logwood. Maize, yams, and sweet potatoes, are much cultivated.

*Climate.* Excessive heat generally prevails in the

islands, but is allayed by sea breezes, which begin about ten in the morning and blow until late in the evening. The medium heat of summer is 80 degrees. Violent rains fall in October and November; and hurricanes, often destructive to the crops, to buildings, and to human life, occur in August, September, and October.

*Inhabitants.* In consequence of the cruelty of Europeans, very few of the aboriginal inhabitants are to be found in the West Indies, the islands having been colonized by European nations.

*Population.* The general population of the West Indies, including that of the Bahamas, is about two millions. Of these, more than a million and a half are Blacks and Mulattoes, while the rest are Whites.

*Religion.* A majority of the Whites in the islands colonized by the French and Spaniards, are Roman Catholics; in those settled by the Dutch, English, and Danes, the Protestant religion is established; and the government of Britain has recently appointed a Bishop of Jamaica and another of Barbadoes to superintend the ecclesiastical concerns of the British islands. The Wesleyan Methodists, Moravians, and Baptists, have been honourably active in the religious instruction of the slaves and the establishment of schools.

*Division.* The West-India Islands consist of the Bahamas or Lucayos, the four great islands of Cuba, St. Domingo, Jamaica, and Porto Rico; and the Caribbee isles. The Caribbees, so named from their original inhabitants, lie in the form of a bow or semicircle, from the 11th to the 18th or 19th deg. of N. lat., and comprise the islands from Tobago to Porto Rico. They are subdivided into the Leeward and Windward. The former include Dominica and the islands S. of it to Porto Rico, while the latter extend from Martinico to Tobago. The 15th parallel of latitude divides the two groups.



## GREATER ISLANDS.\*

<i>Islands.</i>	<i>Capitals.</i>	<i>To whom belonging.</i>
Cuba .....	Havannah .....	Spain.
Hispaniola, or St. Domingo, or Hayti }	Cape François .....	Independent.
Jamaica .....	St. Jago .....	Great Britain.
Porto Rico .....	Porto Rico .....	Spain.

## CARIBBEE ISLANDS.

*Leeward* (going from N. to S.).

Tortola .....	Great Britain.
St. Thomas .....	Denmark.
St. John's .....	Charlotte town.. Ditto.
The Virgin Isles (E. of Porto Rico) and including St. Cruz. }	Basse-end .... Ditto.
Christopher, or St. Kitt's .....	Basseterre .... Great Britain.
Antigua .....	St. John's .... Ditto.
Guadaloupe .....	Basseterre .... France.
Dominica (lat. 15) ..	Charlotte town.. Great Britain.

*Windward* (going from N. to S.).

Martinico (lat. 15) ..	St. Pierre..... France.
St. Lucia .....	Great Britain.
St. Vincent .....	Kingston .....
Barbadoes (to the E.) ..	Bridgetown.... Ditto.
Grenada .....	St. George .... Ditto.
Tobago (S. E.) .....	Scarborough .. Ditto.

---

\* By the French geographers, Cuba, St. Domingo, Jamaica, and Porto Rico, are called the Great Antilles, and the Caribbees the Lesser Antilles.

## NEAR THE COAST OF S. AMERICA.

<i>Islands.</i>	<i>Capitals.</i>	<i>To whom belonging.</i>
Trinidad (lat. 10 N., } long. 62 W.) . . . . }	St. Joseph . . . .	Great Britain.
Margarita . . . . .	Assumption . . . .	Columbia Republic.
Curaçoa . . . . .	St. Peter's . . . .	Dutch.

## THE BAHAMAS OR LUCAYOS.

The Bahamas, which are said to be 300 in number, are separated from Florida by the gulf of that name, and from Cuba by the Bahama channel. Their direction is from N. W. to S. E., and they are between the latitudes of 21 and 28 N. One of them, GUANAHANI, was the first spot of the New World seen by Columbus, who, as a memorial of deliverance from the perils of the ocean, named it St. Salvador. The island called Providence is an English settlement, and abounds with turtles.

## CUBA,

The largest of the West-India islands, is 700 miles long, with a medial breadth of about 70 miles. It is divided in the direction of its length by a chain of mountains. Havannah, the capital, has a noble harbour. Though a very strong place, it was taken by the English, August 12, 1762, the day and year on which his present Majesty, George IV., was born. Sugar and tobacco are the chief products of the island, which also affords fine woods and aromatic plants.

Cuba is the most valuable possession belonging to Spain in the West Indies.

## HISPANIOLA OR ST. DOMINGO,

Which has resumed its ancient name of HAYTI, lies between Jamaica and Cuba on the W., and Porto Rico on the E., being 400 miles long and 100 broad. Hayti, the second in size of the West-India islands, was formerly divided between the French and Spaniards, the former occupying the W. and the latter the E. side, but has, after many revolutions, established itself as an independent state. Hayti, which is the scene of the first independent empire founded by African slaves, was the first European

settlement formed in America, and the sugar-cane originally made its appearance in the West Indies at Hayti, where it was introduced about 1506 by the Spaniards from the Canary isles. Cape HAYTIEN, formerly cape FRANÇOIS, on the N. side of the island, and Port au Prince, on the W., are the chief places. Sugar, coffee, and cotton, are the staple products. The forests abound with mahogany.

#### JAMAICA,

The most valuable West-India island belonging to Great Britain, lies S. of Cuba and W. of St. Domingo, and is the third island in size, being about 170 miles in length and 60 in breadth. It was discovered by Columbus in 1494, and taken by the English in Cromwell's time. Jamaica has a central ridge of considerable height, covered with forests, called the Blue Mountains. Numerous rivulets fertilize the country,\* which has spots of superior beauty. Sugar, rum, coffee, and indigo, are the chief exports of the island, which abounds in delicious fruits. The first commercial town is Kingston, a sea-port on the N. coast. St. Jago, or Spanish town, is the seat of government. Port Royal has a fine harbour. The population of Jamaica is 360,000. Of these only 30,000 are Whites.

#### PORTO RICO,

East of St. Domingo, is the fourth in size of the islands, being about 120 miles long and 40 broad. It was so named (rich port) from the gold ornaments observed among the inhabitants.

#### MARTINICO AND GUADALOUPE.

MARTINICO, the largest of the Windward, and GUADALOUPE, one of the Leeward group, are the most valuable of the French West-India islands. The former, which is mountainous and rocky, has some of the best coffee of the West-India growth, it being the produce of plants originally introduced into Arabia in 1726. Guadeloupe has been termed the Circassia of the West Indies, on account of the beauty of its females. The gaiety,

---

\* The word Jamaica is of Indian derivation, and signifies "abounding in springs."

dress, and manners of France, prevail both in Martinico and Guadaloupe.

#### BARBADOES,

Being the most eastern of the West-India islands, is called their Key. As it is exposed to the trade winds, it enjoys an excellent climate, and is generally so cool and healthy, that a voyage is often made to Barbadoes from the other islands for the recovery of health.

#### SUMMARY OF SOUTH AMERICA.

A line drawn from Porto Bello on the Caribbean sea, to Panama on the Pacific ocean, is generally considered as the boundary between North and South America.

*Boundaries.* South America is bounded on the N. by the Caribbean sea and the Atlantic ocean; on the E. and S. by the Atlantic; and on the W. by the Pacific.

*Extent.* South America extends from the 12th deg. and a half of North to the 55th deg. and a half of South latitude. Its greatest length from cape Vela, the northern point, to cape Horn, its southern extremity, is 4570 miles; while its extreme breadth, under the 6th degree, that is, from cape Roque in the E. to cape Blanco in the W., is about 3320 miles.

*Geographical features.* Suspended as it were between the Atlantic and Pacific, and united to its kindred division only by the narrow isthmus of Darien, South America is in its form strikingly peninsular. Its shape also bears in another view considerable resemblance to that of Africa; the northern part being spacious while in the south it contracts to a point. The river Amazon, which traverses nearly the whole of the north, and the lofty chain of Andes which extend the entire length of its western side, may be deemed the chief geographical characteristics of South America.

*Divisions.* In South America are the following coun-

tries.—In the N. the Republic of Colombia, comprising the former Spanish provinces of Terra Firma, New Granada, and New Andalusia; in the N. E. Guiana; in the W. are Peru and Chili; the S. has Patagonia; and on the E. are Brazil and Paraguay, while in the centre is Amazonia.

*Capes.* Vela, in the N.; Blanco, to the N. W.; St. Roque, in Brazil; and cape Horn, S. of the island of Terra del Fuego. These are the four cardinal points of S. America.

*Sea, Bays, and Gulfs.* The Caribbean sea and the gulfs of Darien and Maracaybo, on the N.; the bay of Bonaventura on the N. W. coast; and the gulf of Guayaquil, in Peru, S. of Bonaventura. All Saints' Bay on the coast of Brazil, and the bay of St. George in Patagonia.

*Straits.* Magellan, between the southern point of America and the island of Terra del Fuego; and the strait of Le Maire, which separates Terra del Fuego from Staten island.

*Mountains.* The Andes,\* the loftiest mountains of the western continent, extend along the Pacific ocean from the straits of Magellan in the S., to the isthmus of Darien in the N., upwards of 4000 miles. An eastern ridge penetrates the Republic of Colombia.†

*Rivers.* The Orinoco, in the N. E.; the Amazon, or Marignan, in Amazonia; the Paraguay, in the country of the same name; the Parana and Uruguay, which rise in Brazil; and on the E. is the Rio de la Plata, which is chiefly formed by the junction of the last three rivers.

\* These mountains are called by the Spaniards the Cordillera de los Andes, or the Great Chain of the Andes.

† Chimborazo, the highest of the Andes, is 21,440 feet above the level of the sea.

## SPANISH SOUTH AMERICA.

### THE REPUBLIC OF COLOMBIA,

Comprising the former Spanish provinces of **TERRA FIRMA**, the **CARACCAS**, **GRANADA**, and **NEW ANDALUSIA**, with their respective divisions.

*Boundaries.* The republic of Colombia is bounded on the N. and E. by the Caribbean sea, Guiana, and the Atlantic; on the W. by the Pacific ocean; while on the S. it has deserts which separate it from Peru and Indian nations, who inhabit the unexplored banks of the Amazon, which seems its natural boundary on the side of Brazil.

*Extent.* Colombia occupies an extent of 22 degrees, or 1320 geographical miles, from the mouth of the Orinoco, on the E. to the W. extremity of the isthmus of Panama, and from 11 degrees and a half of north to about 6 degrees and a half of south latitude, if we reckon from cape Vela to the southern extremity of Quito.

*Capital.* Santa Fé de Bogota, on the river Bogota, in lat. nearly 4 deg. N., and long about 73 deg. W.

*Divisions.* Colombia has four provinces, subdivided into departments, viz. Venezuela and Spanish Guiana on the east, with Cundinamarca and Quito on the west. The two former comprise the late Spanish provinces of New Andalusia, Cumana, Carraccas, and Venezuela; while the other two include New Granada, Terra Firma, and Panama.

*Chief places.* Bogota, the capital; Caracca, on the Caribbean sea, the capital of the province of Venezuela;

---

\* Venezuela derived its name from several villages built on piles in the lake or gulf of Maraycabo, and which, according to Robertson, bore a resemblance to Venice; and the above name, meaning *little Venice*, was extended to the whole province.

Quito, the capital of the province of Quito, seated near the equator; St. Martha and Cartagena, on the Caribbean sea; and Porto Bello, on the isthmus of Darien.

*Isthmus.* The isthmus of Darien or Panama in its narrowest part is little more than 60 miles wide. A traveller might, therefore, by crossing it, see on the same day the two greatest bodies of water in the world—the Atlantic and Pacific oceans.

*Rivers.* The Orinoco in the E., between Venezuela and Spanish Guiana; and the Magdalena and Cauca on the W., in the province of Cundinamarca, late Granada.

*Mountains.* The Andes traverse Colombia, and have their loftiest summits immediately S. of the equator, in the province of Quito. CHIMBORAZO, the highest peak, rises between the 1st and 2nd deg. of S. lat. to the height of 21,440 feet, and, though in the torrid zone, is for nearly 5000 feet from the summit covered with snow. The height attained on this mountain, in 1802, by the travellers Humboldt and Bompland, who ascended to 19,400 feet, is the most elevated spot on the globe ever trodden by man. The highest limit at which the lichen, a plant that endures the cold better than any other, grows on the Andes, is 18,225 feet.

*Places.* SANTA FÉ DE BOGOTÁ, formerly the capital of New Granada, and now the seat of government for the Republic, is in a spacious and beautiful plain, at an elevation of more than 8000 feet above the level of the sea. Bogotá communicates with the Caribbean sea by the river Bogotá, a tributary of the Magdalena, and with the Atlantic ocean by the Meta, which joins the Orinoco.

CARTHAGENA\* is the chief emporium of trade for the west of Colombia.

---

\* By an attention to the names of places and districts, young persons may not only mark their local character, but often ascend the stream of history. Carthagenæ in Spain was built by

QUITO is seated in the Andes, 9500 feet above the level of the sea, and almost under the equator. Though in the torrid zone, its elevation secures a delightful climate. Summer, or rather spring, the loveliest of seasons, because it unites both hope and enjoyment, reigns perpetual at Quito, which has therefore been called the evergreen.

ANTISANA, a volcanic summit, 40 miles S. E. of Quito, has, on one of its sides, at the height of 13,500 feet, a farm-house, said by Humboldt to be the highest known inhabited place on the globe.

*Rivers.* The ORINOCO, the third in rank of the South American rivers, rises in lat. about 5 deg. N. and long. 64 W., and has a singularly winding course, somewhat resembling an open 6. The Orinoco flows, at first north, to the lake of Parima, which it quits in two streams, which afterwards unite and run westward. They afterwards bend to the N. E. and enter the sea by many channels opposite the island of Trinidad, having flowed more than 2000 miles. The Orinoco receives nearly all the rivers which flow from the eastern side of the Andes. Among them is the Apura.

The MAGDALENA and CAUCA, the two great streams of western Colombia, rise in the Andes near Popayan, in lat. about 2 deg. N., and having flowed from S. to N. many miles parallel with each other, unite and fall into the Caribbean sea. The Magdalena, which is 1000 miles in length, has been called the Danube of Granada, and its banks have noble forests of cedar and mahogany trees. The Cauca is about 500 miles in length.

*Surface.* A large portion of Colombia, being intersected by branches of the Andes, consists of elevated land; but it has also an immense tract of level and luxuriant country spreading from the base of the Andes to the neighbourhood of the Amazon and Orinoco.

*Climate.* The climate of Colombia is varied according

---

the Carthaginians, who conquered a great part of that country, and named the city after Carthage, their metropolis in Africa. The Cartagena of America was built by the Spaniards when they had subjugated South America, and it was named after their own Carthage.



to the height or depression of the country. In the plains, excessive heat prevails, while the higher tracts, though under the equator, and therefore in the centre of the torrid zone, have either a mild temperature, or different degrees of cold—which cold is often intense. A traveller in Colombia may, in the course of two days, pass from a perpetual spring and luxuriant plains to regions of most rigorous cold, where vegetation seems extinct.

*Products.* Colombia produces sugar, coffee, the cotton shrub, tobacco, dying drugs, and gold and silver. Among its fruits is the *chiromoya*, recently introduced into England, and said to excel the pine-apple in flavour.

*Government.* Colombia, which, when it formed part of the Spanish dominions, was governed by a viceroy, is now a Federal Republic, having a President elected for four years, with a Senate and House of Representatives.

*Religion.* The Roman Catholic, with toleration to no other sect.

*Population.* In 1822, the population of Colombia was estimated at 2,700,000.\*

## PERU.

*Situation and Boundaries.* Peru, which is in the torrid zone, is bounded on the N. by Colombia; on the S. by Chili and the United Provinces of South America, the late Paraguay; on the W. by the Pacific; and on the E. by Brazil, and the United Provinces. Its capital is Lima, in lat. 12 deg. S., and long. 76 deg. 45 min. W.

*Chief places.* Truxillo and Callao, on the Pacific; Payta, Cusco, (S. E. of Lima,) and Arequipa, in the interior.

*Mountains.* The Andes cross Peru parallel with the coast. The loftiest of the Peruvian summits is 13,385 feet high.

---

\* Humboldt.

*Places.* LIMA, the capital, near the Pacific, was founded by Pizarro, the conqueror of Peru, who also was assassinated in it, in 1541.

CALLAO is the port of Lima, and having the fairest and best road which the South sea affords, is the grand emporium of Peruvian commerce.

Cusco, the ancient Peruvian capital and residence of Mango Capac, the wise and benevolent founder of the empire, has many monuments of ancient greatness.

*Surface.* Between the Andes and the coast is a long narrow plain from 30 to 70 miles wide, consisting of barren and sandy deserts, but rich in minerals. Along the Peruvian coast, from 5 to 15 degrees S., rain is nearly unknown, although the soil is occasionally refreshed by mists and dews.

*Climate.* The plains are warm, while the elevated regions have a mild temperature. The highest summits of the Peruvian Andes are covered with ice and snow, perpetual winter reigning even between the tropics, while volcanoes are raging within.

*Products.* The wealth of Peru, which has become proverbial, is derived from its mines. In the year 1794, there were worked in Peru four mines of quicksilver, 69 of gold, and 784 of silver. That remarkable metallic substance *platina*, the heaviest of all metals,\* the most capable also of resisting intense heat, and which is so useful for many purposes in the arts, is the peculiar product of Peru, which likewise has the true emerald. Yet the natives are poor amidst riches; and Dr. Watts, in his delightful Hymns for Children, justly observes, that he would not exchange his native land "*for rich Peru with all her gold.*" Among

---

\* The specific gravity of *Platina*, compared with distilled water at 60 deg. Fahrenheit, is 21,000, and of *Gold* only 19,000.

SCHMEISSER.

the Peruvian products is that celebrated febrifuge medicine, the Jesuits' or Peruvian bark.

*Government.* After its conquest by the Spaniards under Pizarro and Almagro, in 1523, Peru formed part of the Spanish possessions, and was governed by a Viceroy; but having emancipated itself from the yoke of the parent state, it is now a Republic, having a President. General Bolivar, so much distinguished as the leader of the patriot armies, was the first chief magistrate, with the title of *Libertador*; but he has very recently given a noble proof of disinterestedness by laying down his power.

*Population.* In 1822, the population of Peru was 1,100,000.\*

### CHILI.

*Situation and Boundaries.* Chili is a long and narrow country, chiefly situated between the Andes and the Pacific, and in the southern temperate zone. It is bounded on the N. by Peru; on the S. by Patagonia; on the E. by the United Provinces, or Paraguay; and on the W. by the Pacific.

*Extent.* Chili extends from about the 24th to the 44th deg. of S. lat., and from nearly the 69th to the 74th of W. long. The capital is Santiago, in lat. 33 deg. S., and long. 71 W.

*Chief places.* Valparaiso, Concepcion, Baldivia or Valdivia, and Coquimbo, all on the Pacific.

*Mountains.* The Andes traverse Chili, having among them fourteen volcanoes in an almost constant state of eruption.

*Places.* SANTIAGO or ST. JAGO, situated in a fine plain about 90 miles from the sea and 21 from the Andes, being near the mines, has an extensive commerce, which is exported to VALPARAISO.†

---

\* Humboldt.

† *Val-Paraiso*, that is, the Valley of Paradise, was so named because the Spaniards thought it in a delightful situation.

BALDIVIA, in lat. 40 S., was the first city founded by the Spaniards after their conquest of Chili, and was named from the general, Baldivia, whose avarice, which had prompted him to acts of great cruelty, was more than satisfied by the inhabitants pouring melted gold down his throat when they took him prisoner.

COQUIMBO, in lat. nearly 30 S., is the principal port of the mining country.

*Surface.* Nearly one-third of Chili is covered by the Andes. Of the deep valleys which are between the mountains some are highly picturesque, and fertilized by the melted snows, which coming from the heights find a passage to the sea. But as rain seldom falls in Chili, and as the dews, when experienced, are light, many of the districts between the mountains are nearly destitute of vegetation, and present the view either of bare rocks or barren sands.

*Products.* Chili has much metallic wealth, producing gold, silver, and copper, the last of which is the staple commodity. Many hundreds of copper mines are worked, and 600,000 quintals of 100lbs each are annually exported. The Copiapo mine is deemed the best. The silver mine of Huaseo, discovered in 1811, is very productive. The chief rural occupation in Chili is the breeding of horned cattle, and one of the large proprietors of land, the Marquis of Larrain, is said to have herds amounting to 15,000 head.

*Government.* Chili was discovered and partially conquered, in 1535, by the Spaniards under Almagro, who shared the triumphs and infamy of Pizarro, and who, having in the true spirit of companions in guilt, quarreled with his coadjutor, was taken prisoner by Pizarro in a battle near Cusco, and afterwards beheaded. Since its conquest, the northern part belonged to the Spanish crown until 1818, when it achieved its independence, and established a republican form of government. The southern part of Chili is in possession of various tribes of Indians.

## PATAGONIA.

Patagonia or Terra Magellanica, the most southern portion of America, of which little is known, derives its name from Magellan, the famous Portuguese navigator, by whom it was discovered in 1519. The interior is inhabited by savage and independent tribes, of which those named Tehuels seem to be the Patagonians of European voyagers, who have magnified them into giants. As a race, they certainly exceed others in stature, the common height being from six feet and a half to seven, whilst the tallest exceed seven feet. The strait of Magellan, which separates Patagonia from the island of Terra del Fuego, was named after the famous navigator.

## LA PLATA OR PARAGUAY,

NOW

## THE UNITED PROVINCES OF SOUTH AMERICA.

*Situation and Boundaries.* La Plata or Paraguay is bounded on the N. by Peru and Amazonia; on the S. by Patagonia; on the E. by the Atlantic; and on the W. by Peru and Chili. The northern portion is in the torrid zone, and the southern in the temperate.

*Capital.* Buenos Ayres, on the Rio de la Plata, in lat. 34 deg. 30 min. S., and long. 58 deg. 30 min. W.

*Chief places.* Monte Video, on La Plata, but near the Atlantic; Assumption and Corientes on the Paraguay; and Potosi, in lat. nearly 20 N., and long. between 67 and 68 W.

*Rivers.* The Paraguay, Parana, Uruguay, and La Plata.

*Lake.* Titicaca, in the N. W. part of Paraguay, is the largest lake in South America, being about 240 miles in

circumference, and is sufficiently deep to be navigated by the heaviest vessels.

*Places.* BUENOS AYRES, named from its salubrity,\* stands on the western bank of La Plata, and 160 miles from its mouth. It is the outlet for the exportation of the produce of Peru and Chili across the Atlantic.

MONTE VIDEO, on the left bank of La Plata, is very commercial.

*Rivers.* The PARAGUAY, from which the country is named, rises in the centre of S. America, in lat. about 12 deg. S., and after a southern course of more than 2000 miles, becomes part of the river Plata, of which it is the grandest branch.

The PARANA, an eastern branch of La Plata, has its source in the mountainous part of *Brazil*, and, having flowed S. W., joins the Paraguay near Corrientes.

The URUGUAY, the great eastern branch, also rises in Brazil, and, by a S. direction, falls into La Plata.

The RIO DE LA PLATA, (or River of Silver,) so named by Cabot, in 1520, from the silver objects seen with the natives, is a most noble body of fresh water, principally formed by the junction of the above three rivers. It is no where less than 30 miles broad, and at its entrance into the Atlantic, between cape Santa Maria on the N., and that of St. Antonio on the S., expands to the width of 150 miles.

*Surface of Paraguay.* The Andes run from S. to N. along the whole western boundary. Whilst the country east of the rivers Paraguay and Parana is rich and well watered, the intermediate district consists of immense plains extending westerly to the feet of the Andes, and southerly to the mountains of Patagonia. They are inhabited by roving Indians, and support innumerable herds of horses † and cattle. In the south, these plains, one

---

\* Buenos Ayres, that is, good air. The Spanish tongue is chiefly of Latin origin: *bonus* meaning good, and *aer* being the Latin for air.

† So numerous are the horses in Paraguay, that the beggars *keep their horses*, and importune charity on horseback.

of which is 1500 miles long and 500 broad, are called *pampas*.

*Climate.* The plains suffer under great heat, but the higher regions have a temperate climate.

*Products.* Paraguay exports hides, beef, and tallow, derived from the numerous herds which wander over the wide plains or *pampas*.\* The orange, olive, vine, and sugar-cane, flourish on the soil, which also produces great quantities of tobacco and cotton, and abounds in rich metals. The mines of Potosi, the most celebrated in the world, were discovered in 1545, and from that time have generally yielded nearly a million of money annually. Hence the saying, "Rich as the mines of Potosi." Paraguay also produces that singular herb Paraguay tea, the prepared leaf of a species of *ilex*, which makes the favourite beverage of the inhabitants, and is much used in S. America, particularly in Chili and Peru.

*Government.* Paraguay, formerly a possession of the Spanish crown, having, in 1816, declared itself independent, is now a Republic with the title of the United Provinces of South America.

*Religion and Population.* The Roman Catholic is the established religion of Paraguay, which has about two millions of inhabitants.

## BRAZIL.

*Situation.* This fine and extensive empire, recently the most valuable foreign possession of Portugal, occupies a great portion of central and eastern South America. It has a range of coast extending between one thousand and twelve hundred leagues; that is 3600 miles; and enjoys

---

\* 957,600 horse and cow hides were imported into England from Paraguay in the year 1822.

the commercial advantage of being placed in the narrowest part of the vast Atlantic.

*Boundaries and Zones.* Brazil is bounded on the N. by the republic of Colombia and French Guiana, from which it is separated by the N. E. part of Amazonia; on the S. by Paraguay or the United Provinces; on the E. by the Atlantic; and on the W. by Peru. The northern and central districts are in the torrid zone, while the southern part is in the temperate.

*Extent and Capital.* Brazil extends from about 3 deg. of N. to 32 of S. latitude. The capital is Rio Janeiro, or St. Sebastian, near the Atlantic, in lat. about 23 S., and long. nearly 43 W.

*Chief Places.* Pernambuco, St. Salvador, or Bahia, and Rio Grande, all on the coast of the Atlantic, and Villa Rica, the capital of the province of Minas Gerães, and named the rich city, from its being seated in the mining district.

*Chief mining district.* That of Minas Gerães among the mountains called the Brazilian Andes. The diamond district extends about 50 miles from north to south, and 25 from east to west.

*Rivers.* The Rio Francisco, and the Rio Grande, or Great River.

*Cape and Bay.* St. Roque, the most eastern point of Brazil, and All Saints' Bay.

*Places.* ST. SEBASTIAN, or RIO JANEIRO, as it is called, because placed on the river Janeiro, is charmingly seated on a promontory, has a most noble harbour surrounded by magnificent scenery, and possesses from its central position the chief commerce of the empire. It is the residence of the court, and has a population of 150,000 inhabitants.

ST. SALVADOR, the former capital, is on the bay of All Saints, and has an extensive trade.

*Rivers.* The RIO FRANCISCO, which issues from the chain



called the Brazilian Andes, in lat. about 20 S., and which is 1000 miles long, flows at first north, but afterwards making a bend eastward, enters the Atlantic.

The RIO GRANDE, or Great river, which rises near the source of the Francisco, also flows into the Atlantic.

*Surface of Brazil.* Ridges of mountains called the Brazilian Andes to distinguish them from the great western chain of S. America, run parallel with, and at various distances from, the coast. On the west are extensive plains. The whole of Brazil is covered with vast forests producing the wood called Brazil.

*Climate.* The northern part of Brazil, being in the torrid zone, is extremely hot. The southern districts are exposed to a less degree of heat.

*Products.* Fruits of exquisite flavour and all the tropical products attain perfection in Brazil, including coffee, cotton, sugar, and the prolific banana, whose fruit is the principal nourishment of the inhabitants of the tropics. To Brazil, Europe is indebted for the costly pine-apple. The mountain ridges are clothed to the very summits with forests of wood useful for building, cabinet ware, and dying; while within, many of them are stored with gold, diamonds, topazes, and other precious stones. The air of Brazil is peopled with clouds of insects. Of butterflies a collection has been made having sixteen hundred of different kinds, and perhaps no other country in the world equals Brazil in the innumerable species of birds distinguished for beauty of plumage.

*Government.* Brazil was discovered, in 1500, by Vincent Pinçon, and taken possession of by the Portuguese the same year, since which time, until 1821, it was governed by Portugal. Having recently dissolved its connexion with that country, it now forms an independent empire. The crown is hereditary, but limited in power. Don Pedro, son of the King of Portugal, is the efficient sovereign of Brazil, his father enjoying, by virtue

of a recent treaty, the nominal title of Emperor. The legislature consists of two chambers, senators and deputies, who have nearly the same duties as the two houses in the British Parliament.

*Religion.* The established religion is the Roman Catholic, with toleration to other sects for domestic worship, but without allowing any external form or temple.

*Population.* The latest account estimates the population of Brazil at four millions.

## AMAZONIA.

Amazonia, a large and central portion of South America, inhabited by natives of whom little is known, was discovered in 1580 by Orellana. Observing, it is said, tribes of female warriors on the banks of the river, he called the country Amazon, and gave the same name to its great river, thus alluding to the fabulous account of the ancient warlike Amazonian women who dwelt on the banks of the Thermodon, in the N. part of Asia Minor.

*Boundaries and Zones.* Amazonia, which lies in the torrid zone, is bounded on the N. by Guiana and Colombia; on the S. by Paraguay; on the E. by Brazil; and on the W. by Peru.

*River.* The grand feature of Amazonia is the river AMAZON, sometimes called the MARIGNON, and also, from the name of its discoverer, ORELLANA. This mighty stream, the greatest in the world for length of course, breadth and depth, is thought, though with some uncertainty, to rise in the Andes of Peru, in lat. 16 S., under the name of Apurimac. The Amazon flows almost completely across the continent in a north-eastern course of nearly 4000 miles until it reaches the Atlantic under the equator.

## GUIANA.

*Situation, &c.* Guiana, a district in the N. E. part of South America, between the rivers Orinoco and Amazon, is bounded on the N. and E. by the Atlantic; on the S. by the N. E. part of Amazonia; and on the W. by the Republic of Colombia. It is in the torrid zone.

*Divisions.* It has been divided into Spanish, French, and Dutch Guiana, forming the southern, eastern, and western districts; but the term Guiana is mostly applied to the French and Dutch territory, Spanish Guiana being now a province of Colombia.

**DUTCH GUIANA**, which is often called **SURINAM** from its chief river, includes the districts of Demerara, Essequibo, and Berbice, each named from the river by which it is watered. Paramaribo, on the Atlantic, is the capital.

**FRENCH GUIANA** is called Cayenne from its capital.

*Surface.* A great part of Guiana consists of low, swampy savannahs; the numerous rivers which empty themselves on the coasts carrying with them large quantities of mud, which, being deposited on the shores, form a border of low ground covered with mangrove.

*Climate and Products.* The rains, which form stagnant ponds and marshes, render the climate of Guiana, in general, unhealthy. The products are Cayenne pepper, sugar, coffee, and the cotton shrub.

## SOUTH AMERICAN ISLANDS.

South America has but few islands. The following are the principal:

### THE FALKLAND ISLANDS.

This bleak, desolate, and uninhabited group consists of nearly ninety islands in the S. Atlantic, off Patagonia, in about 52 deg.

of S. lat. The two main islands, which are of considerable extent, are named the east and west Falklands. Wolves and foxes are the only quadrupeds.

#### THE TERRA DEL FUEGO ISLANDS,

Eleven in number, extend in length about 360 miles from E. to W. along the strait of Magellan, and in extreme breadth, from N. to S., about 160 from the strait to the extremity of cape Horn. This tract contains a large population. The Fuegians, who resemble the Esquimaux at the opposite extremity of the American continent, are in many respects pitiable: inhabiting a rugged and mountainous country, under an inclement sky, which forbids agriculture and all the pursuits that invigorate the mind and body, these poor creatures are in a state of pristine ignorance. As the islands produce few quadrupeds they cannot depend on hunting for subsistence: their time is therefore almost wholly occupied in fishing and in passing from one island to another. Of religious worship of any kind they appear to have no idea. Their habits are, however, docile; their behaviour to each other most affectionate; and they seem to possess all things in common. Their only missiles are the bow, sling, and spear. These, with bead necklaces, baskets of plaited grass, and canoes, comprise their manufactures. The volcanic flames, emitted from some of the hills, gave these islands their name, which signifies The Land of Fire.

#### THE CHILOE ISLES,

One hundred in number, constitute an archipelago, near the coast of Chili, and belong to its government. They appear to have been formed by a convulsion of nature which has broken the continent into pieces, being generally rugged masses of rock, separated by deep channels. The *Auroræ Australes* are occasionally seen here. The population consists of Creole Spaniards and Indians. Great Chiloe, the principal island, is 120 miles long and about 36 broad.

#### JUAN FERNANDEZ,

In the South Pacific ocean, in lat. 32, is remarkable for the adventures of Alexander Selkirk, who was left in the island by his brutal commander Captain Stradling, on account of some

## 276 ISLANDS IN THE SOUTHERN OCEAN.

antipathy taken against him. His adventures in this solitary and disconsolate abode, in which he continued four years and four months, gave rise to the instructive and amusing tale of Robinson Crusoe, the design of which is to shew what industry and a trust in Providence can accomplish under the most discouraging circumstances.

### THE GALLIPAGOS,

An uninhabited group of volcanic islands, are scattered along the equator at the distance of 600 miles from the main land.

## ISLANDS IN THE SOUTHERN OCEAN.

### SOUTH GEORGIA,

An island in the Southern ocean, lat. 54 deg. 30 min. S., and long. 37 W., was originally discovered by a Mons. La Roche, in 1675, but was not explored until Captain Cook did so in the *Resolution*, in 1771, and then called it Georgia in honour of our late venerable monarch George III. It is about 90 miles long, and its mean breadth about 10. In Captain Cook's time its shores were frequented by vast numbers of sea elephants and fur seals, the former of which supplied oil and the latter skins; but the trade has ceased, those animals being nearly extinct. The tops of the mountains are lofty and covered with perpetual snow, but in the valleys vegetation is rather abundant.

### SOUTH SHETLAND ISLES.

The discovery of this Archipelago was made by Mr. William Smith, on a passage from Monte Video to Valparaiso, 1819. The northern range of South Shetland islands lies between lat. 61 and 63, and long. 54 and 63 West, and consists of 12 main islands and numerous rocks above water.

### ST. PETER'S ISLAND

Is in lat. 69 deg. and a half South, and long. 91 West. This island, with some land situated between the 73d and 74th deg. of W. longitude, was discovered in 1819 by a Russian expedition to the South Polar seas. The island was named after Peter the Great, and the land was called Alexander's land from the present Emperor of Russia. They are the two nearest points of land to the South Pole yet discovered.

Though the above is the most southern *land* yet discovered, it has been reserved for the honour of an Englishman to explore the South Polar sea to a latitude hitherto unattained by any other navigator. Lieutenant Weddell, of the Royal Navy, in the cutter *Beaufoy*, of London, having sailed, in 1822, on an expedition to the South Polar sea, reached, on the 20th of February, 1823, the lat. of 74 deg. 15 min. S., and long. 34 deg. 16 min. 45 seconds W., being 3 deg. 5 min., or 214 geographical miles farther south than Captain Cook, or any other preceding navigator has explored. In honour of our most gracious sovereign, the name of King George the Fourth's Sea was given to this hitherto unvisited part of the ocean.\*

### AUSTRALASIA AND POLYNESIA.

The vast ocean which occupies the space between Asia and America, and which covers nearly half the surface of the whole globe,† is studded with innumerable islands, as the heavens are with stars. Many of them are solitary, while others form connected groups or chains. They have generally been divided into two classes, those of AUSTRALASIA and those of POLYNESIA. Their inhabitants are for the most part but imperfectly acquainted with the arts or even the comforts of civilized life, their chief excellence being limited to the construction and dextrous management of their canoes. In colour they are of a deep copper brown, have long and straight black hair, and their faces are often tattooed. The chief weapons used by them are spears, bows and arrows, darts, and clubs, some of which

---

\* The highest *northern* latitude yet attained is that reached by Captain Scoresby, who, in a recent voyage to Greenland, sailed as far north as 80 deg. 34 minutes, which is only 566 miles from the Pole. The difference between the latitude hitherto attained in the northern and southern hemisphere, arises from the latter being proportionably colder by 10 degrees of latitude than the former.

† The Pacific ocean is more than 10,000 miles wide. The circumference of the earth is 21,600 geographical miles.

are highly carved. While the exterior of these islands is often distinguished by numerous beds of coral, branching into the water with great luxuriance, or collected in round balls, and in various other figures, their interior has eminences varied, bold, and impressively grand. It is also the peculiar characteristic of the mountains in the SOUTH SEAS, that their verdure and luxuriance of vegetation increase with their altitude. The elevated ridges are in many parts intersected with fine plains and valleys, down which streams of pure and healthful waters flow, and which are also enriched with timber and fruit trees. The feathered inhabitants of the groves are various and beautiful, but the quadrupeds in the islands are few in number

### AUSTRALASIA.

Australasia signifies Southern Asia,\* and comprehends New Holland, New Guinea, New Britain, and New Ireland, with the Solomon isles; also New Caledonia, New Hebrides, and the island of New Zealand.

### NEW HOLLAND,

Which has also the more modern titles of Australia, Notasia, and Terra Australis, is between the Indian and Pacific oceans. It constitutes the largest island in the world, and in size is only a fourth less than the European continent. The eastern coast, which was explored by Captain Cook, is named New South Wales, and has on it some settlements, formed in 1786, for the reception of British convicts whom the law does not condemn to capital punishments, or whose sentence the sovereign has mitigated, and whom it is neither prudent nor humane to keep confined in Great Britain. Sydney town, the capital of New S. Wales, is the seat of government, and the chief places for the convicts are Port Jackson and Paramatta.† The coast of New

---

\* From *Australis* the Latin for southern.

† Botany bay was at first intended as their chief place of residence, but Port Jackson was found to be a more eligible situa-

Holland is barren, but its interior is beautiful and fertile, producing all the species of vegetables known in England, with a variety of excellent fruits. The principal river yet discovered is the Hawkesbury,\* which empties itself into the Pacific N. of Port Jackson. The natives of New Holland probably approach nearer the brutal state than any other savages, having neither houses nor clothing. Civilization is, however, extending itself under British influence, and the English settlements are making rapid advances in knowledge and the comforts of life. Schools have been formed, places of worship erected, and Bible societies instituted for the reformation of those sons and daughters of Britain whom she has been compelled to shake off from her bosom for their crimes.

VAN DIEMEN'S LAND, an island separated from New Holland by Bass's strait, about 90 miles wide, is diversified by hills and valleys.

#### NEW GUINEA OR PAPUA,

One of the largest islands in the world, lies E. of the Molucca isles and N. of New Holland; from the former it is separated by the channel named the Gilolo passage, and from the latter by 'Torries' strait, while on the E. the strait of Dampier divides it from the island of New Britain. The mountains and the shores of New Guinea are richly clothed with wood. The inhabitants, who, in the Malay tongue, are named *Papuas*, that is woolly headed, constitute the true *oceanic* negroes. They are savage in their manners and habits, and disgusting in appearance. The feathered creation of New Guinea is particularly splendid. It is the peculiar country of the elegant and romantic bird of Paradise, of which there are ten species, all clothed with beautiful plumage. They are shot with blunted arrows that their feathers may be preserved uninjured.

---

tion. Botany bay, which is in lat. 34 S. and long. 150 E., was so named from the variety of plants found there. Convicts were sent to the British American Colonies before their separation from Great Britain.

\* The Hawkesbury river is named from the present Earl of Liverpool, who, at the time of its discovery, was Lord Hawkesbury.



## NEW BRITAIN AND NEW IRELAND

Lie N. of New Guinea, being separated from each other by the Strait of St. George.

The NEW HEBRIDES are between the 14th and 20th deg. of S. lat. and 166—170 of E. long.

NEW CALEDONIA is an extensive island S. W. of the New Hebrides.

## NEW ZEALAND

Consists of two islands separated by Cook's strait, a passage named after the celebrated navigator who first sailed through it. A chain of mountains crosses both islands. The inhabitants, who live in huts in societies of forty or fifty, are a savage race, and are said (though it is not proved) to be cannibals. The finest spars for the top-masts of ships grow in the forests of New Zealand.

## POLYNESIA.

This term, which is derived from two Greek words signifying *many* and *islands*, may be extended to the 50th degree of S. latitude, while its breadth may be reckoned from the 170th E., to the 130th degree of W. longitude. The following are its chief divisions: the Pelew islands, the Ladrões, the Carolines, the Sandwich isles, the Marquesas, the Society isles, King George's islands, the Friendly islands, and the Navigators' isles.

### THE PELEW ISLANDS

Lie between the 5th and 9th degrees of N. lat., and in about the 136th deg. of E. long. The inhabitants are described by Mr. Keate as a mild, hospitable, and social race. The government consists of a King and nobles, whose symbol of dignity is a bracelet of bone on the wrist. Abbé Thulle, King of the Pelew islands, gave that surest proof of a wise mind, a desire to acquire knowledge, by permitting his son, Prince Lee Boo, to accompany Captain Wilson to England in 1783, for the purpose of being educated. That amiable and engaging youth, who had made considerable progress in learning, was prematurely cut off by the small-pox in 1784, and buried in Rotherhithe churchyard, near London, at the expense of the East-India Company, who erected a tablet to his memory.

## THE LADRONES OR MARIANNES,

Which are sixteen in number, lie between the 13th and 21st deg. of N. lat., and the 144th and 146th degrees of E. long. They were discovered by Magellan, who named them Ladrões from the thievish disposition of the people.\* Guam is the largest, but Tinian the most known, having been praised, though with some exaggeration, in the account of Lord Anson's Voyage. It abounds in oranges, and to this most wholesome, because antiseptic fruit, the crew of Lord Anson's ship were indebted for their recovery from a scorbutic complaint. The sailing proas or canoes have been celebrated as the swiftest vessels on the seas, and as sometimes passing over 20 miles in an hour.

## THE SANDWICH ISLES

Were the last discovery of Captain Cook, who named them after the Earl of Sandwich, first Lord of the Admiralty at the time of their discovery. They are eleven in number, and lie between the 18th and 22nd deg. of N. lat., and the 156th and the 160th of W. long. OWYHEE, the largest and most southern, has lofty mountains, one of which, Mount Kaah, rises in three peaks, which can be seen 40 leagues, and its summit is always covered with snow; and calculating, therefore, by the tropical line of snow, its elevation must be more than 15,000 feet.† Karakakoa bay, the part most frequented by European ships, is unhappily celebrated for the tragical end of Captain Cook, who was killed here, February 14, 1779, by the natives, in a sudden fit of not wholly unprovoked resentment. WHAHOA, the central island and the best of the group, is every where fertile. Tamehameha, the King, and Tamehamalu, the Queen of Whahoa, visited England in May 1824; but falling ill of the measles during their residence, the Queen died on Thursday, July 8th, and the King on the Wednesday following. Their laudable inducements to visit England were to see the country, to obtain a better knowledge of commercial business, and to make arrangements with the British government for the protection and prosperity of the Sandwich islands.

---

\* From Ladron, the Spanish for thief.

† See page 3 of this work.

## THE MARQUESAS,

Five in number, lie between the 9th and 10th deg. of S. lat., and in the 138th and 139th degrees of W. long. The inhabitants are said to be the handsomest of all the Polynesian race.

## SOCIETY ISLANDS.

These islands, which Captain Cook so named on account of their contiguity, are six in number; but Otaheitee, Eimao, and others, are usually classed with them. They lie between the 16th and 20th deg. of S. lat., and about the 150th of W. long.

OTAKEITEE, or TAHITI, nearly in the centre of the group, and 120 miles in circumference, is formed of two peninsulas joined by an isthmus. The S. E. part is highly luxuriant; the hills, though steep, are covered to the very summit with trees and shrubs, and the very rocks seem to have the power of producing and retaining verdant clothing. The plains and valleys are enriched with the cocoa-nut tree and the banana, whose fruit is the chief food of the inhabitants, and with many beautiful woods; and Otaheitee first supplied our West-India islands with the valuable bread fruit.

Otaheitee was the first scene of those religious missions which form so peculiar a feature of the present era, and which are now gilding with the rays of Christianity the mountain tops and deep valleys of the earth. The Otaheiteans, who were formerly disgraced by many barbarous or foolish practices, delighting in human sacrifices and other abominations, have broken their idols, demolished their Pagan temples, and, under the benign influence of the Christian religion and of the arts of civilized life, have attained a knowledge and comparative degree of virtue and consequent happiness, affording a pleasing contrast to their former degraded state. Chapels and numerous schools have been erected and established in several districts of the islands.\*

---


\* In the district of Atehuru, or Attahooroo, which extends along the shores 15 miles and runs far into the interior, is a Missionary settlement named Burder's Point, in honour of the Rev. George Burder, the worthy and active Secretary of the Missionary Society; while, on the S. side of the island, in the rich and beautiful district of Papara, is Hawe's town, which perpe-

## BLIGH'S ISLAND

Is in lat. 7 deg. S., and 178 E. long. Captain Bligh, with nineteen of his men, was compelled, on the 28th of April, 1789, by the mutinous crew of his ship, the *Bounty*, to quit the vessel, and go into an open boat at one of the Friendly islands. The Captain and his party reached the island of Timor, south of the Moluccas, after a perilous voyage of 3600 miles. The mutineers visited Otaheitee, married some of the women, and finally settled in Pitcairne's island, (lat. 25 S. and long. 130 W.,) which is now inhabited by some of their descendants.

---

tuates the name of the late Dr. Haweis, a zealous patron of Religious Missions. Each of these settlements has a chapel and school.





**APPENDIX,**  
**CONTAINING**  
**PROBLEMS ON THE GLOBES,**  
**AND**  
**A Series of Questions**

**GENERALLY ADAPTED TO THE FACTS CONTAINED IN THIS WORK.**



OF THE  
UNIVERSE AND THE SOLAR SYSTEM.

---

1. THE Universe, of which the earth is a portion, comprehends all created things in the whole abyss of space. The regions of infinite space\* are occupied by innumerable radiant bodies, which, by reason of their remoteness from the earth, appear like so many shining spots or stars.

While the eye of ignorance regards the celestial orbs merely as objects of attractive brilliancy or amusing figure, philosophy contemplates them as works not only splendid but useful. Profound thought and science, and excursive imagination, are indeed unable to number the multitude, measure the magnitudes, or prescribe limits to the spheres of the heavenly host; reason, however, concludes, that each fixed star is a sun, having the form, nature, and use of our own great luminary; and constituting, like him, the centre of a system of worlds revolving round it by harmonic laws of motion, and inhabited by beings endowed with faculties adapted to their situation.

When man, who dwells in houses of clay, whose foundation is in the dust, and who is crushed before the moth,† views sur-

---

\* The nature of infinite time or space cannot be reached by the narrow limits of human capacity. The following may, however, give young persons some idea of infinite space: The star Sirius is 32 millions of millions of miles distant from our earth. Let it be supposed that the fixed stars are at the same distance from each other as Sirius is from the earth, and a faint idea may be formed of infinite space.

† Job iv. 19.



rounding worlds so far superior in rank and grandeur to his own, and when he recollects that if the entire system, of which his small domain is a part, were annihilated, it would be of little moment to the works of Creation, he is filled with deep humility, fear, and awe.\* From this self-abasement he is, however, exalted to the feelings of love, gratitude, and joy, for he has been told by one who left the palaces of heaven to give him the assurance, that the Ruler of the Universe, though enthroned on the loftiest eminence of greatness and power, deigns to care for man; and, that he who clothes the fields and sumptuously arrays the lilies has made a weak and erring creature the object of his peculiar favour.

As we appropriate the materials which compose the earth to our use, so we draw from the heavens wisdom for the direction of our conduct. The brief span of time allotted to our mortal existence is divided according to the periodical revolutions of the heavenly bodies, which thus regulate the life of man, and by giving it system and uniformity, increase its value and happiness. The Sun and Moon portion out our time into years, months, weeks, and days. The operations of seed-time and harvest, of summer and winter, are conducted by a reference to the heavens. Nor is the helm of the mariner less indebted to the starry host than the plough of the husbandman. By the friendly light of the celestial luminaries, and by their evolutions, the navigator crosses the trackless ocean, ascertains his distance from home, and counts the hours which must intervene before he is restored to its happiness. Astronomy may also be called the handmaid of chronology and history; since the light which it sheds on facts, darkened by the succession of ages, dissipates error and confirms truth. To conclude, when night draws the splendid canopy of the heavens over man and he closes the day by praise to his Maker, he exclaims with the royal Psalmist, "The heavens declare the glory of God, and the firmament sheweth" forth "his handy work."

---

\* As a comparison of the relative size of the earth to the rest of the universe, let young persons accept the following: The smallest village in Great Britain bears a much greater proportion to the rest of the globe than the earth bears to the worlds which fill infinite space.

2. Of the **FIXED STARS**. The fixed Stars are thus named from their preserving the same position with regard to each other, though their situation with respect to the heavens, as seen from the earth, is different at different seasons of the year, and in different hours of the night.

For the purpose of referring to them, as to so many settled points, the various motions of the other heavenly bodies, the fixed Stars have been divided into constellations or groups,\* each group being composed of stars contiguous to each other. While the names of some of these constellations indicate the resemblance which, in the fanciful imagination of the ancients, they bore to particular animals, those of others either record the elegant fictions of antiquity or perpetuate the remembrance of heroes, sages, and patriots, who, during their stay on earth, acted a distinguished part, and were therefore placed among the starry host by the gratitude and superstition of their admirers. The number of the constellations is ninety-three. Of these, twelve mark the Zodiacal circle; while thirty-four enrich the Northern and forty-seven the Southern hemisphere. The number of stars forming the constellations, as found on the globes,† is, however, a very small fraction of the myriads which greet the eye of science while it explores the heavens. Among the Pleiades, instead of 6, 7, or 8, Dr. Hooke told 78; Galileo found 89 in the belt of Orion's sword; Lalande, the French astronomer, has determined the distances of 50,000 stars between the North pole and about two degrees south of the tropic of Capricorn; and Sir William Herschel is said to have observed not less than 116,000 in that radiant path of light, the Milky Way. But while these immense numbers are disclosed to the view of astronomers, assisted by the telescope, not more than 1000 stars are visible, at

---

\* The division of the stars into constellations is as ancient as the book of Job, in which we find mention of Arcturus, Orion, and the Pleiades.

† On Bardin's 12 inch globes there are 3840 stars, while those of 18 inches have nearly 6000. The globes now spoken of are considered as some of the most perfect ever made, and contain the most recent discoveries, celestial and terrestrial.

one time, to the naked eye. Of the vast distance of the fixed Stars from our earth some idea may be conceived from the fact, that Sirius, the nearest of all the fixed Stars to our planet, is not less than thirty-two millions of millions of miles distant from us, "that a sound would not reach our earth from that star in 50,000 years, and that a cannon ball, flying with its usual velocity of 480 miles in an hour, would consume 523,211 years in its passage from Sirius to our globe."

3. Of the SOLAR SYSTEM. The Solar System, as at present known, includes the Sun, its great central sphere; eleven primary planets which revolve round him; and eighteen secondary planets, their satellites. To these may be added Comets.

The SUN is a spherical body, whose diameter is 870,000 miles, and whose circumference is about 2,700,000 miles. In bulk the Sun is a million times as large as the earth, and it would therefore require a million of globes the size of our planet to form a globe equal to it. By its motion round its axis, in something more than 26 days, and by its circular direction round the common centre of all the planetary motions, the Sun dispenses his heat the more equally among his attendants. Placed at the distance of 95 millions of miles from the earth, such, however, is the speed of light, that his rays, travelling with the swiftness of twelve millions of miles every minute, reach our planet in the short space of eight minutes—a velocity a million times greater than that of a cannon ball, which would not come to our earth from the Sun in less than 22 years and 226 days.

4. Of the PLANETS. The Planets\* are distinguished by their steady light from the fixed Stars, which are constantly twinkling. Of the eleven celestial bodies that derive their light, heat, and animation, from the Solar beams, seven are larger than the others, namely—Mercury, Venus, the Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, and Herschel or the Georgium Sidus. The smaller planets, which are

---

\* They are called Planets from a Greek word signifying *to wander*.

those recently discovered, are Ceres, Pallas, Juno, and Vesta. These heavenly bodies move at unequal distances and in different periods round the Sun. Four of them are provided with attendants, which, by reflecting the light of the Sun, compensate his absence. These are called Secondary Planets, Satellites, or Moons.

**MERCURY**, the planet nearest the Sun, from which it is 37 millions of miles distant, revolves round him in about 88 days, travelling at the rate of 105,000 miles an hour. The year to its inhabitants is not quite three of our months. Mercury is the smallest of the seven larger planets, having a diameter of only 3200 miles, and in bulk is 30 times less than our earth. The heat of the Sun at Mercury, is, from its near vicinity, seven times greater than our summer heat. A cannon ball projected from the Sun would reach the orbit of Mercury in 8 years and 276 days.

**VENUS**, the most beautiful of the planets, is 68 millions of miles from the Sun, round which she performs her journey in 224 days 6 hours, and therefore travels at the rate of 75,000 miles an hour. In size, Venus is nearly as large as the earth, her diameter being about 7700 miles. She turns round her axis in 24 days and 8 hours of our time, and receives twice as much light and heat from the Sun as our earth. A cannon ball from the Sun would reach the orbit of Venus in 16 years and 136 days.

The **EARTH**, which, in the Solar System, is next to Mercury and Venus, is 95 millions of miles from the Sun, and revolves round him in 365 days, 5 hours, 48 minutes, and 49 seconds, travelling at the rate of 68,000 miles an hour. This revolution, which forms its year, is the cause of the different lengths of the days and nights, and therefore of the different seasons, Spring, Summer, Autumn, and Winter. The Earth turns on its axis in 24 hours, and thus has day and night. Its diameter is about 8000 miles, and the orbit in which it moves 190 millions of miles. One secondary planet, the Moon, attends on the Earth.

**MARS**, a planet distinguished by its red and fiery colour, is about 144 millions of miles from the Sun, round which he moves at the rate of 53,000 miles an hour, performing his revolution in

687 days, while his diurnal rotation is completed in 24 days and a half. The diameter of Mars is about 4189 miles, and he enjoys only one half the light and heat which we enjoy. He is not attended by any moon or satellite. A cannon ball projected from the Sun would reach the orbit of Mars in 34 years and 165 days.

JUPITER, the largest of the planets, is distinguished not less for magnitude than for brilliancy. This magnificent orb is more than 490 millions of miles distant from the Sun, and is, therefore, five times farther from it than our earth. While he consumes 11 years, 314 days, and 10 hours, in making a revolution round the Sun, and, therefore, has a year nearly equal to 12 of ours, the diurnal rotation of Jupiter upon his axis is completed in the short space of 10 hours; his days and nights are, therefore, only five hours each in length. From the axis of this planet having no inclination there is not any difference in his seasons: perpetual summer is enjoyed in his equinoctial portion, while eternal winter reigns in his polar regions. Jupiter is attended by four moons or satellites, which revolve round him at different times and distances. The *first*, in about 1 day and 18 hours; the *second*, in 3 days and 13 hours; the *third*, in 7 days and 3 hours; and the *fourth*, in 16 days and 16 hours. These satellites are objects of great interest to astronomers, since, from their eclipses, the longitude of different places on our globe is accurately ascertained. The diameter of Jupiter being 90,000 miles, he is 1000 times larger than our earth, but, in consequence of his great distance from the Sun, he enjoys only a twenty-fifth part of the light and heat which we enjoy. A cannon ball projected from the Sun would reach the orbit of Jupiter in 117 years, 237 days.

SATURN, which, until the discovery of the planet Herchel or Georgium Sidus, was considered the most remote planet of the Solar System, is more than 900 millions of miles distant from the Sun, round which he revolves in little less than 30 of our years, travelling at the rate of 21,000 miles in an hour. His diameter is 80,000 miles. Saturn being ten times more distant from the Sun than the Earth is, enjoys about 90 times less light and heat; yet the light which he enjoys is 1000 times as great as the light of the full moon is to us.\* Saturn is attended by

---

\* Ferguson's Astronomy.

seven moons or satellites, having different periodical times. The one nearest him performs a revolution round him in 22 hours and a half, while that which is most remote takes 79 days and 7 hours for his monthly journey. In addition to these moons Saturn has two luminous rings at the distance of 2839 miles from each other, and which, probably, reflect the light of the Sun on that planet; the inner ring is 20,000 miles broad, and the outer one 7200 miles. Saturn performs his diurnal rotation in 10 hours and 16 minutes—his day and night, therefore, are only about 5 hours each. A cannon ball projected from the Sun to Saturn would reach his orbit in 215 years and 287 days. Festivals called Saturnalia were celebrated at Rome in honour of Saturn, after whom this planet is named.\*

THE GEORGIUM SIDUS, or HERSCHEL, was discovered by that indefatigable astronomer, Sir William Herschel, and was, by him, named the Georgian Star, in honour of his munificent patron, our late venerable monarch George III. By astronomers it is, however, called by the name of its illustrious discoverer. This is the most remote planet of the Solar System, it being more than 1900 millions of miles from the Sun, around which he revolves in 82 of our years, travelling at the rate of 16,000 miles an hour. His distance from the Sun being 19 times greater than that of the earth, he has 361 times less light and heat than our planet. In magnitude the Georgium Sidus is nearly 80 times larger than the earth. A cannon ball projected from the Sun would reach the orbit of the Georgium Sidus in 530 years and 300 days.

CERES, one of the four inferior planets, was discovered in 1801, at Palermo, in Sicily, by M. Piazzi, whose name it sometimes bears. Ceres is a small planet, having a diameter of only 200 miles. It revolves round the Sun in four years.

PALLAS, which is also a small planet, about 140 miles in diameter, and performing its revolution in about three years, was discovered by Dr. Olbers, at Bremen, in Germany.

JUNO was discovered at Bremen, in 1802, by Mr. Harding. Its size is thought to be half that of our Moon.

VESTA was discovered, in 1807, by Dr. Olbers.

---

\* See Butler's Questions in Roman Hist., art., Roman Festivals.

## 294 THE UNIVERSE AND SOLAR SYSTEM.

5. **THE MOON.** This beautiful attendant on our earth, which "takes up the wondrous tale" of Divine power and goodness by night, borrows its light from the Sun. The Moon's distance from the centre of the earth is 240,000 miles, her diameter is about 2200. She moves, with respect to our planet, 2290 miles in her orbit every hour, and goes round the earth, from change to change, in 29 days, 12 hours, and 44 minutes.

The Moon is supposed to be inhabited. Her surface is diversified, like that of our earth, with mountains and valleys. The shining spots are pronounced by astronomers to be the elevations, and the dark patches—plains and hollow grounds. Some of the mountains are found to be a mile in height; and as the Earth has its Etna, Vesuvius, and other volcanoes, so the Moon has at least five burning mountains. With regard to reflected light, the Earth is to the Moon what she is to our planet. To the inhabitants of the Moon the Earth appears about 13 times as large as the former seems to us; and notwithstanding the splendour of the heavens, when the Moon fills her ample orb, it would require ninety thousand full moons to afford moon-light equal to common day-light when the Sun does not shine out, and all our light is reflected from him by clouds.

6. **COMETS** are solid spherical bodies, like planets, and derive their light and heat from the Sun, round which they revolve in elliptical orbits. They are supposed to be uninhabited, since the intense heat they imbibe, when nearest the Sun, and the cold they must experience when farthest from him, could not be endured by living beings.\* Comets

---

\* Some of the Comets go fourteen times as far from the Sun as Saturn is; notwithstanding which, they are then nearer to the Sun than to any of the fixed stars. The Comet which appeared in 1680, is, at its *greatest* distance, eleven thousand two hundred millions of miles from the Sun, and its *least* distance from the Sun's centre was but forty-nine thousand miles. JOYCE'S *DIALOGUES*.

are often accompanied by a luminous train called the tail, which is supposed to be the smoke rising from the body opposite to the Sun.

## OF THE TERRESTRIAL GLOBE.

The Terrestrial Globe is a representation of the Earth with its several divisions of land and water. In order to shew the relative position of the various parts of the Earth, and of the motion of the Sun, Moon, and Stars, imaginary lines or circles have been formed both on the terrestrial and celestial globe.

1. The **AXIS** is a circle supposed to be drawn through the centre of the Earth, and on which it turns. It is represented by the wire upon which the globe revolves. The revolution of the Earth upon its axis, from west to east, occasions day and night by its bringing some parts of the Earth opposite to the Sun, and withdrawing others from it. The Sun and the heavenly bodies, therefore, appear to move the contrary way.

2. The **POLES** are the two extremities of the Earth's axis, north and south. Each is 90 degrees from the Equator.

3. **CIRCLES.** There are four great circles, each of which divides the globe into two equal parts, and which circles are divided into 360 degrees. They are the Equator, the Ecliptic, the Brazen Meridian, and the Horizon.

4. The **EQUATOR**, which encompasses the middle of the globe, divides it into the northern and southern hemispheres, and is 90 degrees from the Poles. On this circle are marked the degrees of longitude.

5. The **ECLIPTIC** is a circle crossing the Equator, in the opposite points of Aries and Libra. It shews the path in the heavens in which the Sun appears to travel every year in moving from the summer to the winter solstice,



and again, in moving from the winter to the summer solstice.

It is called the Ecliptic because, in all eclipses, the Moon appears to be either in it or near it. The Ecliptic is divided into twelve equal parts called signs, each containing 30 degrees. The Sun goes through one sign every month, and thus finishes his year in 365 days, 5 hours, and 49 seconds; the Sun, therefore, moves through one degree every day, or nearly so. There are four remarkable points in the ecliptic, called the two equinoctial and the two solstitial points. March the 20th is the vernal equinox, when the Sun enters Aries and Spring begins; September 23d is the autumnal equinox, when the Sun enters Libra and Autumn commences; June 21st is the Summer solstice, or beginning of summer to the northern hemisphere, when the Sun enters Cancer; while the Winter solstice is the 21st of December, and the Sun then enters Capricornus.

#### SPRING SIGNS.

♈ *Aries*, the Ram, 21st of March.

♉ *Taurus*, the Bull, 19th of April.

♊ *Gemini*, the Twins, 20th of May.

#### SUMMER SIGNS.

♋ *Cancer*, the Crab, 21st of June.

♌ *Leo*, the Lion, 22d of July.

♍ *Virgo*, the Virgin, 22d of August.

These are called northern signs, being north of the equinoctial.

#### AUTUMNAL SIGNS.

♎ *Libra*, the Balance, 23rd of September.

♏ *Scorpio*, the Scorpion, 23rd of October.

♐ *Sagittarius*, the Archer, 22d of November.

#### WINTER SIGNS.

♑ *Capricornus*, the Goat, 21st of December.

♒ *Aquarius*, the Water-bearer, 20th of January.

♓ *Pisces*, the Fishes, 19th of February.

These are called southern signs.

6. The BRAZEN MERIDIAN divides the globe into the

eastern and western hemispheres. When any place is brought to the meridian it is supposed to be noon with that place, but before or after noon with all other places; and when the Sun is in the meridian *above* the horizon it is noon, and when in the meridian *below* the horizon it is night.

7. The HORIZON is represented by the wooden frame in which the globe stands, which is divided into four times 90 degrees, and has on it many circles. The innermost circle is marked with the points of the mariner's compass; the next has the 12 signs of the Zodiac; and the third has the months and days corresponding with the signs.

The horizon is distinguished into the visible and the rational. The former is the circle which surrounds a person in a clear day, where the sky and earth or water seem to meet, and which is more or less extensive according to the situation of the spectator. The rational horizon is the wooden frame which has already been described, and which is the boundary of light and darkness, for, in whatever position the globe is, all the places that are above the horizon are supposed to be in the light, and all that are below it to be in darkness. When any celestial body appears to ascend above the horizon it is said to rise, and to set when it descends below it.

8. The ZODIAC is a circle extending 8 degrees on each side of the equator, and in which the 12 signs are placed, the ecliptic being in its centre. The Planets and the Moon have their orbits in the Zodiac.

9. The TROPICS are two circles at the distance of  $23\frac{1}{2}$  degrees from the equator, the northern one is called the tropic of Cancer and the southern the tropic of Capricorn. They are called tropics from a Greek word, signifying *to turn*, because, when the Sun reaches them, he seems to return again towards the equator.

10. The POLAR CIRCLES are two small circles  $23\frac{1}{2}$  degrees from each pole, and  $66\frac{1}{2}$  degrees from the equator.

The northern one is called the Arctic and the southern one the Antarctic circle.

11. The **MERIDIANS** are imaginary circles, passing from pole to pole, by which longitude is measured.

12. The **ZENITH** of any place is a point in the heavens directly above that place, while the **NADIR** is the point directly opposite.



## PROBLEMS ON THE TERRESTRIAL GLOBE.

---

### PROBLEM I. *To find the Latitude of a Place.*

Latitude is the distance of a place north or south of the equator towards the poles. Places that lie under the equator have no latitude, because it is from that circle that latitude is reckoned; and the poles, being at the greatest distance from the equator, have, therefore, the greatest latitude, which is 90.

*Rule.* Bring the given place to the side of the brazen meridian which has the degrees marked on it; then the degree over the place is its latitude, north or south, as the place is north or south of the equator.

*Note.* If the place is above the equator count upwards, and if below it count downwards.

*Example.* The latitude of St. Petersburg is 60 degrees north, and of cape Horn (in S. America) nearly 60 degrees south.

1. What is the latitude of London?—Of Edinburgh?—Of Amsterdam?—Of Copenhagen?—Of Stockholm?

2. What is the latitude of Rio Janeiro or St. Sebastian (in Brazil)?—Of Buenos Ayres?—Of the Falkland islands?—Of the island of Juan Fernandez off the W. coast of S. America?

3. What is the latitude of Cairo in Egypt?—Of the cape of Good Hope?—Of Calcutta?—Of cape Comorin, the S. point of Hindostan?—Of Pekin—and of Canton in China?

4. What is the latitude of Mexico?—Of Quito in Peru?—Of the Gallipago islands on the equator off S. America?

5. The equator crosses the islands of Sumatra, Borneo, and Celebes, in the Indian Ocean. What is the latitude of that part of the islands which is passed over by the equator?

*Questions for examination.* What is latitude, and how is it distinguished?—Where does latitude begin and end?—How is the latitude of any place found on the globe?—What latitude

have places situated on the equator, and why? If a place is situated either at the north or south pole, what is its latitude; and is that the greatest or least latitude that a place can have?

**PROBLEM II.** *To find the Longitude of any Place.*

Longitude is the distance of a place east or west of London, or from *any* first meridian. Places which lie under the first meridian have no longitude, because it is from that circle that longitude is reckoned; and those places which are under the opposite meridian, being at the greatest distance from the first meridian, have, therefore, the greatest longitude, which is 180.

*Rule.* Bring the given place to the brass meridian, and the degree of the *equator*, which comes up to the meridian with the place, is its longitude, east or west of London.

*Ex.* The longitude of St. Petersburg is 30 degrees east, and of Philadelphia, in America, 75 degrees west of London.

1. What is the longitude of Paris?—Of Vienna?—Of Constantinople?

2. What is the longitude of the centre of Jamaica?—Of Buenos Ayres?—Of Mexico?

3. What is the longitude of Madras?—Of Calcutta?—Of Pe-kin?—Of the centre of the island of Borneo?

4. What is the longitude of London?—Of Falaise, in the N. part, and of Bordeaux, in the S. W. part, of France? and give a reason for their having that longitude.

*Quest.* What is longitude?—How is the longitude of any place found on the globe?—Toward which of the cardinal points is it reckoned?—What is the greatest longitude?—What is the longitude of places situated on the first meridian, and why?

**PROBLEM III.** *To find any Place by its Latitude and Longitude being given.*

*Rule.* Bring the given degree of *longitude* to the brass meridian, then under the degree of *latitude* will be found the required place.

*Ex.* The place whose longitude is 30 degrees east and latitude 60 degrees north is St. Petersburg; and the place whose longitude is 75 degrees west and latitude 40 degrees north, is Philadelphia.

1. What place is that whose longitude is 29 deg. east, and latitude 41 deg. north ?

2. What capital is in long. about 31 deg. E. and lat.  $30^{\circ}$  N. ?

3. What place is in long. 80 deg. E. and lat. 13 deg. N. ?

4. What place is in long. 0 and lat.  $51\frac{1}{2}$  deg. N. ?

5. What place is in long. 100 deg. W. and lat. 20 deg. N. ?

6. What island is in long. about 6 deg. W. and lat. 16 deg. S. ?

7. A person arrived in a capital of Europe, which is in long. about 3 deg. W. and lat. about 40 deg. N. ; in what capital did he arrive ?

8. The Kent East-Indiaman was lost, by fire, March 1, 1824, in long. about 12 deg. W. and lat.  $47\frac{1}{2}$  deg. N. ; in what bay was she lost ?

9. The Ogle Castle East-Indiaman was wrecked, November 3, 1825, on some sands which are in longitude one degree and a half E., and latitude about 51 degrees and a quarter N. ; on what sands did she strike ?

10. Captain Cook discovered, in 1778, some islands in long. 158 deg. W. and lat. 20 deg. N. ; what are they called ?

11. An embassy was sent from Great Britain, in 1792, to an Emperor, whose capital is in about 116 deg. of E. long. and 40 of N. lat. ; to what place was it sent ?

12. Captain Parry, in his first expedition to discover a north-west passage, wintered in Melville island, which is in 110 deg. of W. long. and 75 of N. lat. ; in what ocean is that island ?

*Quest.* How is a place found by having its latitude and longitude given ?

**PROBLEM IV.** *To find the Difference of Latitude between any two Places.*

*Rule.* If the places are in the same hemisphere, bring each to the meridian and *subtract* the less from the greater latitude ; but if they are in opposite hemispheres, *add* their latitudes together.

*Ex.* The difference of latitude between London and Gibraltar, which are both north of the equator, is  $15\frac{1}{2}$  degrees ; between London, which is north, and the cape of Good Hope, which is south of the equator, the difference is 86 degrees.

1.. What is the difference of latitude between London and

Edinburgh?—Between London and Constantinople?—Between Madrid and Copenhagen?—Between Philadelphia and New Orleans?

2. What is the difference of latitude between cape Farewell, the S. point of Greenland, and cape Horn, the extremity of S. America?—Between North cape, the most northern land of Europe, and cape Matapan, the most southern?

3. What is the difference of latitude between Quito, in Peru, and cape Horn?

4. How many degrees does the south point of America extend farther than the south point of Africa?

5. What is the extent of China in latitude, Peking being at its northern and Canton at its southern extremity?

6. What is the difference of latitude between a place on the equator and one at the north pole?—and between a place on the equator and one at the south pole?

*Quest.* What is meant by the difference of latitude between any two places?—How is that difference found if the places are in the same or in an opposite hemisphere?

**PROBLEM V.** *To find the Difference of Longitude between any two Places.*

*Rule.* If both places are in the same hemisphere, having found their longitude *subtract* the less from the greater; but, if in different hemispheres, *add* their respective longitudes.

*Ex.* The difference of longitude between Rome and St. Petersburg, both of which are east of London, is about 18 degrees; the difference between Lisbon (which is west of London) and St. Petersburg, is 39 degrees.

1. What is the difference of longitude between Rome and Constantinople?—Between Lisbon and Vienna?—Between London and Cairo?

2. What is the difference between Philadelphia and Peking?—Between cape Horn and the cape of Good Hope?—Between London and Jamaica?

3. What is the difference of longitude between Bombay and Calcutta?—Between Gibraltar and Cairo (in Egypt)?—Between Madras and Mexico?

4. *Cochin* China, in India, beyond the Ganges, was the utmost

limit of the geographical knowledge of the ancients *eastward*, and Ferro, one of the Canary islands, its boundary *westward*; with what extent of longitude were they acquainted?

5. How many degrees of longitude does the widest part of South America contain—that is, between cape St. Roque in Brazil, and cape Aguja in Peru?

N.B. The scholar must find their respective longitudes and subtract the one from the other.

*Quest.* What is meant by the difference of longitude between any two places?—How is that difference found if the places are in the same or in an opposite hemisphere?

**PROBLEM VI.** *To find the Distance between any two Places in Geographical or English Miles.*

*Rule.* Place the edge of the quadrant over the two places, count the number of degrees between them, and multiply that number by 60 for geographical miles, and by 70 for English: the product will give the distance.

*Note.* 60 geographical and  $69\frac{1}{2}$  English miles make a degree; but to multiply by 70, instead of  $69\frac{1}{2}$ , renders the work easier: where the scholar is able it will be better to use the real number  $69\frac{1}{2}$ .

*Ex.* The quadrant being placed over London and Stockholm, 13 degrees will be found between them; which being multiplied by 60 give 780 geographical miles, multiplied by 70 give 910 English miles, and by  $69\frac{1}{2}$  they give 903 $\frac{1}{2}$ .

1. What is the distance between London and Edinburgh?—Between London and Dublin?—Between London and the following capitals of Europe—Paris, Copenhagen, St. Petersburg, Vienna, and Constantinople?

2. What is the distance between Lisbon, the most western capital of Europe, and Constantinople, the most eastern?

3. What is the length of the Mediterranean sea, reckoning from Gibraltar, in Spain, to Scanderoon or Alexandretta, a port near Aleppo, Syria?

4. What is the extent of Europe, in English miles, from north to south, that is, from North cape in Norway to cape Matapan in Greece?

5. Cape St. Roque, in Brazil, is the extreme eastern, and cape



Aguja, in Peru, the western point of South America. What is the breadth of that peninsula in English miles?

6. What is the length, in English miles, of South America—that is, from cape Vela in the north to cape Horn in the south?

7. What is the breadth of Africa in its widest part—that is, from cape Serrat in the north to the cape of Good Hope in the south?

*Quest.* How is the distance between any two places found?—How many geographical and how many English miles make a degree? The circumference of the earth is 360 degrees; find the number of geographical and English miles in that space.

**PROBLEM VII.** *To find the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic.*

*Rule.* Find the day of the month in the calendar on the horizon, and in the adjoining circle are the sign and degree in which the sun is for that day; then find the same sign and degree on the ecliptic, and that is the sun's place.

*Ex.* The sun's place at the vernal equinox, or the 20th of March, is the first degree of Aries; at the autumnal equinox, or the 23d of September, the first degree of Libra.

1. What is the sun's place at the summer solstice, June 21st, and at the winter solstice, December 21st?

2. What is the sun's place on the following days: January 12, January 26, July 11, October 12, November 19, December 4?—In what sign is the sun on his present Majesty's birth-day?

*Quest.* What is meant by the sun's place in the ecliptic?—How is it found?—How many signs has the ecliptic;—and how many degrees has each sign?—Where do the northern signs begin and end?—Where do the southern signs begin and end?—What signs does the sun enter at the vernal and autumnal equinoxes, and at the summer and winter solstices? There is a day in spring and one in autumn on which the sun is in the equator; what days are they?—What seasons begin with us when the sun enters the first degree of Aries, of Cancer, of Libra, and of Capricornus?—When the sun enters Cancer, what season is it in the northern and in the southern hemispheres?—When the sun enters Capricornus, have the inhabitants of the southern hemisphere long or short days?

**PROBLEM VIII.** *To find the Sun's Declination, that is, his Distance from the Equator, north or south.*

*Note.* This problem is the same as that for finding the latitude of a place. The sun being always in the ecliptic, his greatest declination, north or south, is  $23\frac{1}{2}$  degrees, that being the farthest distance of the ecliptic from the equator. When in the northern signs the sun's declination is north, and when in the southern it is south.

*Rule.* Find the sun's place in the ecliptic by the last problem; bring it to the meridian, and directly over it is the sun's declination.

*Ex.* The sun's declination, August 12, is nearly 15 degrees north; and December 1, nearly 22 degrees south.

1. What is the sun's declination, March 20th (the vernal equinox) and September 23d (the autumnal equinox)?—On June 21 (the summer solstice) and December 21 (the winter solstice)? and is that the greatest or least declination which the sun can have?

2. What is the sun's declination, March 20 (the vernal equinox) April 30, May 31, and June 21 (the summer solstice)?

3. What is the sun's declination, July 31, August 31, and September 20?

4. What is the sun's declination, September 23 (the autumnal equinox) October 31, November 30, December 21 (the winter solstice) January 31, February 28?

The above days are selected that the scholar may observe the gradual approach to or recess of the sun from the equator in his course through the 12 signs.

*Quest.* What is meant by the sun's declination?—How is it found?—What is the least and greatest declination the sun can have, and on what days of the year has he that declination?—Why has the sun no declination at the equinoxes? There is a day on which the sun has gone through three signs, including 90 degrees of the ecliptic, reckoning from the first degree of Aries; what day is it, and how far is he from the equator? There is a day on which the sun has gone through nine signs of the ecliptic, beginning at Aries; at what distance is he then from the equator?

**PROBLEM IX.** *To rectify the Globe for the Latitude of any Place, and also for the Sun's Declination.*

**Rule.** *For the place.* Find the latitude, and if it is north raise the north pole the same number of degrees above the horizon as the latitude; but if the place has south latitude, raise the south pole as many degrees.

*For the Sun's declination.* Find the sun's declination by Problem VIII., and then raise the north or south pole the same number of degrees according as the declination is north or south.

**Ex.** To rectify the globe for St. Petersburg in 60 deg. of north latitude, the north pole must be raised until it is 60 degrees above the north side of the horizon. To rectify the globe for the cape of Good Hope, which is  $34\frac{1}{2}$  degrees of south latitude, the south pole must be raised  $34\frac{1}{2}$  degrees above the horizon.

1. Rectify the globe for London, for Copenhagen, for Archangel in Russia, for Rome, for Calcutta, for Madras, for Candy in the island of Ceylon.

2. Rectify the globe for cape Horn, for Buenos Ayres, for the island of Juan Fernandez off the west coast of S. America, for the Society islands in the Pacific ocean.

**Ex.** *For the Sun's declination.* On the 24th of April the sun's declination is 13 degrees north, the north pole must, therefore, be raised 13 degrees above the horizon. On the 20th of January the declination is 20 deg. south. The south pole must, therefore, be raised 20 deg. above the horizon.

3. Rectify the globe for the sun's declination, April 21, May 14, August 12, October 19, November 21.

**Quest.** How is the globe rectified for the latitude of a place?  
—How is it rectified for the sun's declination?

**PROBLEM X.** *To rectify the Globe for any Place; for the Day of the Month at Noon, and for the Zenith.*

**Note.** The astronomical day begins at noon. The time which elapses between the noon of any one day, in a given place, and

the noon of the day following, in the same place, is called a natural day.

**Rule.** Having rectified the globe for the latitude of the place, and the sun's place being found in the ecliptic, bring it to the meridian, and then set the index hour to 12 o'clock: for the zenith, screw the quadrant of altitude on the brass meridian over the same degree of latitude as that of the place.

**Ex.** Thus to rectify the globe for London, August 12, the north pole must be raised  $51\frac{1}{2}$  degrees above the north side of the horizon; the 12th of August answers to the 20th degree of Taurus, which is to be found on the ecliptic and brought to the meridian; the index being set at 12, the quadrant of altitude must then be screwed over  $51\frac{1}{2}$  degrees of the meridian.

1. Rectify the globe for London, for the longest day; for St. Petersburg, January 28; for London, the shortest day; for Canton in China, May 10; for Lisbon, at the vernal equinox; for the cape of Good Hope, May 21.

**Quest.** How is the globe rectified for the latitude of a place, the day of the month, and the zenith?—What is meant by the zenith of a place?

**PROBLEM XI.** *To find the Sun's Meridian Altitude, that is, his Height above the Horizon at Noon or Mid-day; at which Time he attains his highest Point in the Heavens.*

**Note.** The sun's greatest meridian altitude, at any place north of the equator, is on the 21st of June, and his least, on the 21st of December. At any place situated without the tropics, the difference between the greatest and least meridian altitudes is equal to very nearly 47 degrees, or twice  $23\frac{1}{2}$ , the distances of each tropic from the equator. Thus, June 21st, the sun's meridian altitude at London is 62 deg., which is the greatest he attains; but on December 21st, his altitude is only 15 degrees, which is his least altitude: the difference is 47 degrees.

**Rule.** Rectify for the given latitude, find the sun's place in the ecliptic, and bring it to the meridian; then count the number of degrees between the sun's place and the horizon, which is the sun's altitude.

*Ex.* Thus, to find the sun's meridian height at London, May 10th, the globe being rectified for London, and the 20th of Taurus, which answers to May 10, being found in the ecliptic and brought to the meridian, the number of degrees between the sun's place and the horizon will be  $58\frac{1}{2}$ .

1. What is the sun's meridian height at Naples, Madrid, Amsterdam, and St. Petersburg, June 21 and December 21? which days, being the longest and shortest in the year to those places, the sun has the greatest and least height at noon; and how many degrees difference are there between his greatest and least altitudes?

2. What is the sun's meridian height at the cape of Good Hope, cape Horn, and Botany Bay, December 21 and June 21, which are the longest and shortest days with those places?

3. What is the sun's height at noon, at London, June 21, the longest day, and December the 21st, the shortest day? and how many degrees difference are there between the greatest and least meridian altitudes of the sun at London?

4. What is the sun's meridian height at London, January 30, February 28, March 30, April 30, May 30, and June 21?

*Note.* The above days are selected that the scholar may observe the gradual increase in the sun's meridian altitude as he advances along the ascending signs.

5. What is the sun's meridian height at London, July 30, August 31, September 30, October 31, November 30, and December 21?

*Note.* The above days are selected that the scholar may observe the gradual decrease of the sun's meridian altitude to persons living in the northern hemisphere, and consequent decrease in the length of their days as he passes through the descending signs.

*Quest.* What is meant by the sun's meridian altitude?—How is it found on the globe?—On what days has the sun the greatest and least altitude at places north of the equator?—How many degrees difference are there between the greatest and least height of the sun at places that are without the tropics?—What are the greatest and least altitudes of the sun at London; and on what days has he those altitudes?

**PROBLEM XII.** *The Day of the Month and the Latitude of a Place being given, to find the Sun's Height at any particular Hour of the Day.*

*Note.* When the sun first rises he appears at the eastern verge of the horizon of any place; he then proceeds southward, gradually ascending higher and higher above that place until he reaches the south, when he is at his greatest height; and a spectator, standing with his face toward the sun, would then be opposite to the south part of the heavens. Having gained that point the sun proceeds westward, gradually declining in his course until he reaches the western verge of the horizon, when he disappears. It is evident, therefore, that his height above the horizon of any place must be different at different hours. At ten o'clock in the morning he will be higher than he was at eight, and at five in the afternoon he will be lower than he was at three o'clock.

*Rule.* Rectify the globe for the given latitude, find the sun's place, and bring it to the meridian, and set the index to 12 at noon; then fix the quadrant of altitude over the zenith, and turn the globe until the index points to the hour required; then bring the graduated edge of the quadrant over the sun's place and count the number of degrees between it and the horizon, and this will be the sun's altitude at the given hour.

*Ex.* The sun's height at London, on the 1st of May, at 10 in the morning and at 3 in the afternoon, is 47 degrees.

What is the sun's height at London, June 21st, (the longest day,) at 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11 o'clock in the morning?

What is the sun's height at London, December the 21st, (the shortest day,) at 9, 10, and 11 o'clock in the morning?

**PROBLEM XIII.** *To find the Time of the Sun's Rising and Setting, and, therefore, the Length of the Day and Night at any Place.*

*Note.* Day begins when the centre of the sun appears in the eastern horizon, and ends when it disappears in the western

horizon. The intervening time is called an artificial day, which is longer or shorter according to the latitude of a place. Places on the equator have a day and night of 12 hours each, or nearly so.

*Rule.* Rectify the globe for the latitude of the place; find the sun's place in the ecliptic, and bring it to the meridian, and set the index to 12 at noon; then bring the sun's place to the eastern verge of the horizon, and if the index has a double row of figures, it will shew both the time of the sun's rising and setting; the hours between will give the length of the day, which being subtracted from 24, will give the length of the night. But if the hour circle has not a double row of figures, then, having found the time of the sun's rising, bring the sun's place to the western edge of the horizon, and the index will shew the time of the setting. The hour of sun-setting doubled gives the length of the day, and the hour of sun-rising doubled gives the length of the night.

*Ex.* The length of the day at London, lat.  $51\frac{1}{2}$  N., June 21st and December 21st, is  $16\frac{1}{2}$  hours on the former and  $7\frac{1}{2}$  hours on the latter; the night of June 21st is, therefore,  $7\frac{1}{2}$  hours, and that of December 21st is  $16\frac{1}{2}$  hours.

1. What is the length of the day at London, March the 20th, the vernal equinox, and September 23d, the autumnal equinox?

2. What is the length of the day and night at Cherson, in Russia, lat. 46 N., January 20?—At Worcester, lat. 52 N., October 12?—At Quebec, lat. 47 N., September 13?

3. What is the length of June 21 and December 21 (the longest and shortest days in the northern hemisphere) at the following places: Calcutta, Madrid, Paris, Copenhagen, St. Petersburg, and Archangel?

4. What is the length of December 21 and June 21 (the longest and shortest days in the southern hemisphere) at the following places: Rio Janeiro in Brazil, Buenos Ayres, and the cape of Good Hope?

5. Hastings, in Sussex, is in latitude nearly 51 north. The battle fought there, between William the Conqueror and Harold, on the 13th of October, lasted from sun-rise to sun-set; how many hours did the armies fight?

*Quæst.* When does the day begin and end?—What constitutes an artificial day?—On what does its length depend?—What is the length of the day and night to places on the equator?

**PROBLEM XIV.** *A particular Place and Hour of the Day being given, to find what Hour it is at any other Place.*

*Nota.* By the motion of the earth on its axis, from west to east, the different parts of the globe are brought opposite to the sun, or withdrawn from it at different hours. For instance, the Russian empire is so extensive, that when it is 12 o'clock at noon in the western or European part, it is nearly 12 o'clock at midnight in the eastern or Asiatic part. Thus, half of the world may be said to be enjoying repose\* while the other half is occupied in the busy scenes of life.

*Rule.* Bring the place where the hour is given to the meridian *without* rectifying the globe, and set the index to that hour; then turn the globe until the other place comes to the meridian, and the index will shew the hour at that place.†

*Ex.* When it is twelve o'clock at noon at London it is two o'clock in the afternoon at St. Petersburg and Constantinople; and when it is twelve o'clock at noon at London it is only seven o'clock in the morning at Philadelphia.

1. When it is nine o'clock in the morning at London, what time is it at Rome, Constantinople, Bombay, Calcutta, and Peking?

2. When it is noon at Madras, in Asia, what o'clock is it at the city of Mexico, in America?

3. When it is midnight at Calcutta, what hour is it at Jamaica?

\* *Enjoying repose*—yet still watched by that eye which never closes; “for He that keepeth Israel shall neither slumber nor sleep.”

† By this problem the eye of friendship and affection is enabled to follow absent friends into distant realms, and in some degree to ascertain their movements; and we may, as the poet says, “waft a sigh from Indus to the Pole.”



4. What hour is it with the convicts at Botany bay when it is noon at London ?

5. When it is 10 o'clock at night at London, what hour is it at Jamaica ?

To solve the following examples for this problem, bring London to the meridian and set the index to any hour ; then turn the globe until the other place comes to the meridian, and reckon the number of hours which have intervened ; if the place is *east* of London, a watch taken from London would be the same number of hours *slower* than the clocks of the other place ; but if it is *west* of London, the watch would be faster.

6. A person went from London to Calcutta ; was his watch faster or slower than the clocks at Calcutta when he arrived there, and how much ?

7. Are the clocks of Philadelphia faster or slower than those of London, and how much ?

8. Are the clocks of the city of Mexico faster or slower than those of Paris, and how much ?

*Quest.* How is the difference of time between any two places found ?—If a place is to the *east* of another place, are the clocks faster or slower than those of the other place ?

**PROBLEM XV.** *To find those Places to which the Sun is Vertical.*

*Note.* The sun is vertical to those places whose latitude is equal to his declination on the day proposed. As the sun's greatest declination is  $23\frac{1}{2}$  degrees, places which have the sun vertical must be in the torrid zone.

*Rule.* Find the sun's place for the given day, bring it to the meridian, and note the degree of its declination ; then turn the globe slowly from west to east,\* a complete revo-

---

\* From west to east because the earth moves from west to east. In turning the globe round the scholar should be careful always to move it slowly, for by a quick motion the globe in time loses its due balance. Young persons do not always recollect that the globe, like the human mind and temper, loses its equilibrium if not properly balanced.

lution, and all those places which pass under that degree will have the sun vertical on the given day.

*Ex.* On the 18th of August the sun's declination is 13 deg. north, and he will be vertical to Madras, in the East Indies, and to Barbadoes, in the West Indies, both those places having the same latitude as the sun has declination.

1. To what places is the sun vertical on New-year's day?—On the 10th of February?—At the vernal and autumnal equinoxes?—At the summer and winter solstices?

2. Where is the sun vertical July 1st?—August 12th?—November 15th?—and December 31st?

**PROBLEM XVI.** *To find those Places to which the Sun is Vertical on any Day and Hour.*

*Note.* The sun is vertical, that is, his rays fall perpendicularly twice in the year on all places between the tropics; but this can only happen to places within those two circles.

*Rule.* Having found the sun's place for the given day bring it to the meridian without rectifying the globe, and note the declination; then bring the given place to the meridian and set the index to 12; then, if the given time be *before* noon, turn the globe *westward* as many hours as it wants of noon; but if the proposed time be *past* noon, turn the globe *eastward* so many hours as the time is past noon, and under the same degree of the meridian as that of the sun's declination will be the required place.

*Ex.* When it is a quarter past five in the afternoon at Port Royal, in Jamaica, the sun is vertical at Owyhee, one of the Sandwich islands.

1. Where is the sun vertical February 8th and March 20th, when it is 10 o'clock in the morning at Stockholm?

2. What place has the sun's rays falling on it perpendicularly, and therefore with great power, on Christmas-day, when it is 10 o'clock in the morning at London?

3. The cold of January, at Quebec, is intense: \* what place

---

\* See page 233.

has, on January 12th, the sun's perpendicular, and therefore fervid rays, when it is 9 o'clock at night at Quebec?

4. To what island is the sun vertical August 1, when it is 5 o'clock in the afternoon at Bristol?

*Quest.* What is meant by the sun being vertical?—Between what circles are places situated to which only the sun can be vertical?—How often in the year is the sun vertical to them?—What is the greatest latitude any place can have to which the sun is vertical?—Have the inhabitants of our country the sun vertical to them at any time, and assign a reason for your answer?—Why is the sun vertical to the northern part of New Holland while it can never be so to the southern part?

**PROBLEM XVII.** *A particular Place, Day of the Month, and Hour being given, to find all those Places where the Sun is then Rising and Setting, where it is Noon, to what Place the Sun is Vertical, and where it is Midnight.*

*Rule.* Find, by the last problem, the place to which the sun is vertical at the given hour; rectify the globe for the *declination of the sun* on the given day. Then to all places just under the *western* side of the horizon the sun is *rising*; to all places just under the *eastern* side of the horizon the sun is *setting*; with all places under the upper side of the brass meridian it is *noon*, and the sun is vertical to the particular place which is under the same degree of the meridian as that of the sun's declination; with all places under the lower or southern part of the meridian it is *midnight*.

*Ex.* When it is 9 o'clock in the morning at Worcester, October 12, the sun is rising to Iceland, to part of Brazil, to the Falkland islands, and to cape Horn; it is setting to part of Asiatic Russia; to Nanking, and the east side of China; to the island of Formosa; to the Philippine islands, and the east part of New Holland. It is noon at Archangel, in Russia; Mocha, in Arabia, and the west part of Madagascar; the sun is vertical to the north part of the channel of Mozambique; and it is midnight with part of North America, and the Marquesa islands in the S. Pacific.

1. To what places is the sun rising and setting—where is it

noon and midnight, when it is 10 o'clock in the morning at London, August 12th and June 21st ?

2. Where is the sun rising and setting, and where is it noon and midnight, May 4, when it is 4 o'clock in the afternoon at London ?

3. Where is the sun rising and setting, and where is it noon and midnight, when it is 3 o'clock in the afternoon at Madras ?

**PROBLEM XVIII.** *To find where an Eclipse of the Sun will be Visible.*

*Note.* An eclipse of the sun is occasioned by the moon coming between the earth and the sun, by which the sun's light is hid from our sight.

*Rule.* Find the place to which the sun is vertical by problem XVI.; keep that place under the brass meridian, and rectify the globe for its latitude; then to all places which are above the horizon the eclipse will be visible.

*Ex.* On February 11, 1804, there was an eclipse of the sun at half-past eleven in the morning, and it was visible in England, France, the south part of Europe, and the northern parts of Africa.

1. On July 8, 1823, the sun was eclipsed at London at half-past 5 in the morning; to what parts of the globe was it visible ?

2. August 5, 1804, there was a solar eclipse about 4 o'clock in the afternoon at Buenos Ayres; to what part of the globe was it visible ?

3. On November 29, this present year, 1826, there will be an eclipse of the sun, the largest that will be seen in England until 1836. It will begin at London at 10 o'clock in the morning and end at eleven. To what parts of the world will this great eclipse be visible ?

**PROBLEM XIX.** *To find where an Eclipse of the Moon is Visible.*

*Note.* An eclipse of the moon is occasioned by the earth coming between it and the sun. Lunar eclipses can be visible only to places where the moon is above the horizon, and they can happen only when she is at the full, because then only the earth comes between the sun and moon.

*Rule.* Find where the sun is vertical at the given day and hour by problem 16, and rectify the globe for its latitude; the eclipse will be visible to all places which are then *under* the horizon; and in order to see what those places are, they must be brought *above* the horizon by turning the globe half a revolution (or 12 hours by the index) and then raising the *opposite* pole to the same latitude as that first sought.

*Ex.* An eclipse of the moon happened July 22d, 1804, at Manilla, one of the Philippine islands; and it was visible to the East Indies, Madagascar, New Holland, and New Zealand.

1. January 26, 1804, there was an eclipse of the moon at London at nine o'clock in the evening; to what places was it visible?

2. November 14, this present year, 1826, there will be an eclipse of the moon at London at 4 o'clock in the afternoon, and which will continue until 6; to what places will it be visible?

3. Just before the death of Herod, on the 13th of March, at Jericho, in Palestine, lat. 32 N., there was an eclipse of the moon. Suppose this happened at 2 o'clock in the morning, to what places was it visible?

*Quest.* What is an eclipse of the moon occasioned by?—To what places only is it visible?—Why does an eclipse of the moon happen only when it is at the full?

**PROBLEM XX.** *To reduce the Degrees of the Equator into Time, or to reduce any number of Hours, Minutes, and Seconds, into Degrees of the Equator.*

*Rule.* Divide the degrees of the Equator by 15, and the quotient will be hours; if there is any remainder multiply it by 60, and divide again by 15, and the quotient will be minutes; and if there is still a remainder multiply it by 60 and the quotient will be seconds. To bring time into degrees multiply the hours, minutes, and seconds, by 15, and the product will be degrees.

*Note.* 15 degrees' distance are equal to one hour's difference of time; 60 minutes make a degree; and 60 seconds make a minute.

*Ex.* Reduce 72 deg. 47 min. 45 sec. into time.

	<sup>o</sup>	<sup>'</sup>	<sup>h.</sup>	<sup>m.</sup>	<sup>s.</sup>
15)	72	47	45	(4	51 11
	60				
	<hr/>				
	12				
	60				
	<hr/>				
15)	767	(51			
	75				
	<hr/>				
	17				
	15				
	<hr/>				
	2				
	60				
	<hr/>				
15)	165	(11			
	15				
	<hr/>				
	15				
	15				
	<hr/>				

*Ex.* Reduce 4h. 51m. 11s. into degrees.

	<sup>h.</sup>	<sup>m.</sup>	<sup>s.</sup>
3+5=15	4	51	11
			5
	<hr/>		
	24	15	55
			3
	<hr/>		
	72	47	45
	<hr/>		

1. What time is equal to 65 deg. 30 minutes ?
2. How much time is equal to 127 deg. 47 minutes and 15 seconds ?
3. If the inhabitants of a place saw the sun 8 hours, 31 minutes, and 9 seconds, before the inhabitants of another place, what would be the distance in longitude of the two places from each other ?

**PROBLEM XXI.** *A Place being given in the North Frigid Zone, to find the number of Days which the Sun shines constantly without setting, and the number of Days he is totally absent.*

**Rule.** *For the Sun's shining.* Find the latitude of the place and reckon the same number of degrees from the equator towards the *north* pole ; then revolve the globe and note the two points of the ecliptic which pass under that degree ; find, by the calendar on the horizon, on what days of the year the sun is in those points : the day nearest the 20th of March, or 1st degree of Aries, is the one on which

the sun begins to shine without setting, and the time between those two days is the length of constant sunshine.

*Rule. For the Sun's absence.* Bring the proposed place to the meridian, reckon 90 degrees from it *southward*, and note the degree where the reckoning ends; revolve the globe slowly, and observe what two points of the ecliptic come under that degree; the corresponding days in the calendar on the horizon shew the beginning and end of night in the given latitude: the days between form the duration of night.

*Ex.* At North cape, the most northern land of Europe, in lat. 72 N., the sun begins to shine constantly May 15th, and does not set until July 29th. On November 16th he disappears, and remains absent until January 26th; he therefore shines, without setting, 75 days, and is totally absent 71 days, which time may be called the longest day and longest night at the cape.

1. How many days does the sun shine constantly, and how many is he totally absent in lat. 76 N.?
2. How long has the most northern part of Greenland constant sunshine and darkness?
3. What is the length of the longest day and longest night in 80 deg. 34 min. of N. lat, which is the highest northern latitude yet attained by any navigator?\*
4. Captain Parry, in his first expedition to discover a north-west passage, wintered in Melville island, which is in 75 deg. of N. lat.; how many days of darkness had he?

**PROBLEM XXII.** *To explain the Phenomena of the Harvest Moon.*

*Note.* The harvest moon in the northern hemisphere is the full moon which happens at or near the autumnal equinox. The harvest moon in the southern hemisphere is the full moon which happens at or near the vernal equinox. At these times, a few nights before and after the full, the moon rises nearly at the same time, on account of the horizon being nearly parallel to that part of her orbit in which she then is.

---

\* See page 277, Note \*.

**Rule.** Rectify the globe for the latitude of the place; find the moon's place in an ephemeris, for four or five days before and after the full moon, and either make a chalk mark or put a patch on each of those places on the globe. Bring the sun's place for each day to the brass meridian and set the index to twelve at noon; revolve the globe westward until the moon's place, agreeing with that day, comes above the horizon, and the index will shew the time of the rising.

1. What variation is there between the times of the rising of the harvest moon in the present year, 1826?

## PROBLEMS ON THE CELESTIAL GLOBE.

The celestial globe is a representation of the heavens and has marked on it the fixed stars. The circles on the celestial globe are the same as those on the terrestrial.

**PROBLEM I.** *To find the Declination of the Sun or of any Fixed Star.*

**Note.** The declination of any heavenly body is its distance from the equator, north or south, and is measured on the meridian.

**Rule.** Bring the sun's place or the given star to the meridian, and the degree over it is the declination.

**Ex.** The declination of the sun, June 1st, is  $23\frac{1}{2}$  north; and on the 21st of December,  $23\frac{1}{2}$  deg. south.

1. What is the declination of the sun February 6th, May 7th, and October 12th?

2. What is the declination of the star Aldebaran, or the bull's eye, in Taurus?—Of Sirius, or the dog star, in the mouth of Canis Major?

3. What is the declination of the North Pole Star in the extremity of the tail of Ursa Minor (the Lesser Bear), and how far is it from the Pole?\*

\* This star, from the earliest times of commerce and navigation, has been known to mariners, as it affords an easy method



4. What is the declination of Markab in the right wing of Pegasus?—Of the middle star in Orion's belt?—Of Capella (the Kid) in the left shoulder of Auriga?

*Quest.* What is meant by the declination of a heavenly body?—How is it found on the globe?—What are the greatest and least declination any star can have; and where would a star be that had such a declination?

**PROBLEM II.** *To find the Right Ascension of any Heavenly Body.*

*Note.* The right ascension is the degree of the equator which comes to the meridian with the sun, moon, or star, reckoning from the first point of Aries, and always counting eastward.

*Rule.* Bring the sun's place or the given star to the brass meridian, and the degree of the equator then under the meridian is the right ascension, which must be reckoned from the first point of Aries to the degree intersected by the meridian.

*Ex.* The sun's right ascension, June 21st, is 90, and the 1st of December, 270.

1. What is the sun's right ascension April 1st, May 7th, and November 5th?

2. What is the right ascension of Capella, in Auriga?—Of Markab, in Pegasus?—Of Spica, in the left hand of Virgo?—Of Vega, in Lyra?

*Quest.* What is meant by the right ascension of any heavenly body?—How is it found on the globe?—Towards which of the cardinal points is it reckoned?

**PROBLEM III.** *To find a Star by having its Declination and Right Ascension given.*

*Rule.* Find the star's right ascension on the equator and bring it to the meridian; then under the given degree of declination on the brass meridian will be the required star.

*Ex.* The star which has 149 deg. right ascension, and nearly

---

of determining a ship's course, and the latitude of any place north of the equator. JAMIESON'S *Celestial Atlas*.

13 north declination, is Regulus, or Cor Leonis (the Lion's Heart).

1. What star has 43 deg. right ascension and 40 north declination?—What star has 76 deg. right ascension and 46 north declination?—What star has 99 deg. right ascension and 16 south declination?

**PROBLEM IV.** *To find the Latitude and Longitude of any Star.*

*Note.* The latitude of a star is its distance from the ecliptic; the longitude is its distance from the first point of Aries. That part of the heavens north of the ecliptic is called the northern hemisphere, and the other part south of the ecliptic the southern hemisphere. The longitude of heavenly bodies is not reckoned in *degrees* and minutes like the right ascension; but in *signs*, degrees, and minutes.

*Rule.* Bring the pole of the ecliptic, which is in the same hemisphere as the star, to the meridian; and over it screw the quadrant of altitude. Then holding the globe steadily, move the quadrant over the given star, and the degree of the quadrant, cut by the star, is its latitude; and the degree of the ecliptic, intersected by the quadrant, is its longitude.\*

*Ex.* The latitude of Arcturus is 31 deg. north, and its longitude is 20 deg. in the sign Libra, or 200 deg. from the first point of Aries.

1. What are the latitude and longitude of Capella, in Auriga?—Of Aldebaran, in Taurus?—Of Fomalhaut, in the mouth of Piscis Australis (the Southern Fish)?—Of Rigel, in the left foot of Orion?—Of Menkar, in the mouth of Cetus (the Whale)?—Of Procyon, in Canis Minor (the Lesser Dog)?

*Quest.* What is meant by the latitude and longitude of a star?—How are they found on the globe?

**PROBLEM V.** *To find the Sun's Amplitude and Azimuth at any proposed Place and on any given Day.*

*Note.* The amplitude of the sun, or of any heavenly body, is

---

\* This problem may be reversed like the last; and a star may be found by having its latitude and longitude given.

its distance at the time of rising or setting, from the east or west point, either northward or southward. The *azimuth* shews the bearing of celestial objects *after* they have risen. Though we generally speak of the sun as rising in the east and setting in the west, there are only two days in the year when he is *exactly* in those points while rising and setting, namely, at the vernal and autumnal equinoxes. On all other days, when he is in a northern sign, the sun rises between the east and north, and sets between the west and north points; and when in a southern sign, he is between the east and south points at his rising, and between the west and south at his setting.

*Rule.* Rectify the globe for the proposed place, and having found the sun's place in the ecliptic, bring it to the eastern part of the horizon; the number of degrees which are between the sun's place and the east point is his amplitude when rising; then move the sun's place to the western side of the horizon and his amplitude, when setting, will be found in like manner. Move the globe until the index points to any given hour; screw the quadrant on the zenith and then bring it over the sun's place, the degree of the horizon cut by the quadrant, will be the sun's azimuth at that hour.

*Ex.* On May 1st, at London, the sun's amplitude at rising is nearly 25 degrees northward, and his amplitude at setting is also 25 degrees northward; and on November 25th, at Gibraltar, his eastern amplitude is 26 degrees southward, and his western is the same number.

1. What is the sun's amplitude at London at the vernal and autumnal equinoxes, and why has he that amplitude?

2. What is the sun's amplitude, at rising and setting, on the 21st of June, the day on which he rises and sets the farthest from the east and west points; also, what is his amplitude December 21st?

3. The following days will shew the sun's gradual progress toward or recess from the east and west points throughout the year: What is the sun's amplitude, when rising and setting at London, March 20th, April 30th, May 31st, and June 21; Sept. 23rd, Oct. 31st, Nov. 30th, and Dec. 21st?

4. What is the sun's azimuth, at London, at 9, 10, 11, and 12

o'clock on the following days, May 16th, June 21st, August 12th, and November 20th?

**PROBLEM VI.** *To find at what Hour any Star rises, comes to the Meridian, and sets, the Latitude of a Place and Day of the Month being given.*

**Rule.** Rectify the globe for the latitude of the place, bring the sun's place to the meridian, and set the hour index to 12, then bring the given star to the eastern side of the horizon, and the index will shew the time of its rising; move the globe until the star comes to the meridian, and the index will shew the time of its culminating; bring the star to the western side of the horizon, and the time of its setting will appear on the hour circle.

**Ex.** Sirius, on the 9th of February, rises at London at half-past 4 in the afternoon, comes to the meridian about a quarter after 9 in the evening, and sets about three-quarters past one in the morning.

1. When does Vega, the brightest star in Lyra, rise, come to the meridian, and set at London, February 9th?

2. When do the following stars rise, come to the meridian, and set at the given places and days?—Fomalhaut, in Piscis Australis, at the cape of Good Hope, lat.  $34\frac{1}{2}$ , December 10th; Castor and Pollux, (the Twins,) at London, February 8th; Sirius, at Edinburgh, lat. 56, March 7; Crux, (the Cross,) a southern constellation, cape Horn, lat. 56 S., April 3d; Robur Caroli, (Charles's Oak,) a southern constellation, Buenos Ayres, lat. 34, May 29th?

**PROBLEM VII.** *The Latitude of a Place, the Day and Hour being given, to represent the Face of the Heavens at that time by the Globe, and thus to point out the Constellations and principal Stars then visible.*

**Rule.** Rectify the globe for the latitude of the place, bring the sun's place to the meridian; set the index to 12 at noon, and place the globe as due north and south as possible; then turn the globe westward until the index points to the given hour, and the globe will represent the appearance of the heavens at the given place and time.

1. Represent the face of the heavens as seen at London, January 10th, at half-past 8 o'clock in the evening.
2. For 8 o'clock in the evening, February 1st.
3. For 9 o'clock in the evening, April 20th.
4. For 10 o'clock in the evening, August 1st.
5. For half-past 8 o'clock in the evening, September 23rd.
6. For 8 o'clock in the evening, at Worcester, lat. 52, October 12th.\*

---

\* The above days are, with one exception, selected from Jamieson's Celestial Atlas. As a month glowing with unusual splendour that of February may be particularly noticed, for during it there are more remarkable constellations above the horizon of London than at any other time of the year. On the 1st of February, the Pole star, Capella, in Auriga, and that most brilliant of all constellations, Orion, are on the meridian at eight o'clock.



## QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES.

---

THE figures denote the pages in which answers will generally be found. A map of the country must be consulted, or the scholar's understanding and information exercised, when answers are not to be found in the work. On all questions relating to time, Problem XX., page 316, must be referred to.

EUROPE. 1. In what part of Europe is Norway, and of what ancient peninsula was it formerly a portion? (13.)

2. Bergen, the capital of Norway, is in 5 degrees 45 minutes *east* longitude; what o'clock is it there when it is noon at London? (See Problem XX.)

3. What influence has the Northern ocean on the coast of Norway? (15.)

4. Describe a Norwegian landscape. (15.)

5. At what season of the year is the sun continually absent in Norway, and how is the loss of day compensated? (15.)

6. Among the products of Norway are cobalt, the loadstone, and asbestos; describe their several properties and how they are used. (16.)

7. Why has Drontheim been called the Baia of the North; and where was Baia with which it has been compared? (16.)

8. For whose death is Fredericshall famous, and how did it happen? (16.) With what English sovereigns was he contemporary?

9. In what latitude is North cape? Describe it. (17.)

10. With what kingdom is Norway politically united? (17.)

11. Of what ancient peninsula did Sweden form a part? (18.)

12. What are its chief geographical features? and state the proportion of its surface occupied by lakes and forests.

13. Describe the situation of Stockholm. (Pages 18 and 20.)

14. The longitude of Stockholm being 18 deg. *east*, what o'clock is it there when it is noon at London?

15. What two seasons of the year are unknown in Sweden, and what light have the inhabitants at midnight during summer, and why? (19.)

16. State the chief wealth of Sweden and give a proof of its riches in iron. (20.)

17. Why is the situation of Gotheborg favourable for commerce? (20.)

18. What celebrated professor taught botany at Upsal? (20.) Where did he lecture? (Transcribe the line of poetry.) By what epithet was he honoured, and why? State the year of his birth and death.

19. What remarkable spectacle do travellers go to see at Tornea, (21,) and how does it happen that they can enjoy so extraordinary a sight?

20. Which is the largest of the Swedish lakes? and state its size. (21.)

21. Describe the character of the Swedes. (22.) In what branches of literature have the Swedes excelled, and how was their literary taste first excited? (23.)

22. What part of Sweden do the Laplanders inhabit? (21.) How are they divided? What is their general size? How do they chiefly derive their subsistence? What animal forms the great wealth and comfort of the Laplanders, and for what three-fold purpose is it valuable to its master? Describe the moral character of the Laplanders; why is the language of Lapland adapted to poetry, and in what English work are two Lapland odes translated?

23. What does the kingdom of Denmark comprise, and is it an inland or a maritime kingdom? (24.)

24. State the situation of Copenhagen, the capital, and what does the word Copenhagen imply? (Pages 24 and 25.)

25. The longitude of Copenhagen being 12 deg. 20 min. *east*, what o'clock is it there when it is noon at London?

26. What are the three entrances to the Sound? (25,) and state their respective width. (The Great Belt is 18 miles, and the Lesser 9 miles wide.)

27. State the situation of Elsinour, and why ships pay a toll there. (25.) What unhappy event occurred at Elsinour, and to what noble effort of the tragic muse did it give rise?

28. Where is Iceland, and what volcanic mountain has it? (26.) What rank has Denmark among the three northern states of Europe? (27.)

29. What is the comparative size of Russia? (27.)

30. State the situation of St. Petersburg, (27,) and with what two northern capitals is it nearly in the same parallel of latitude? (See the map of Europe.)

31. Look on a map at the situation of St. Petersburg and Moscow, and then state the motives which must have led Peter the Great to transfer the seat of empire from the latter to the former.

32. For whose death is Cherson remarkable, and how did he manifest his philanthropy? (31.)

33. What rank does the Wolga hold among European rivers? State its rise, general course, exit, and length; and is it wholly confined to Europe?

34. Of what do the British isles, or the United Kingdom, consist, and how are they separated from the continent? (31.)

35. Why is Great Britain remarkable as an island, and how is it divided? (33.)

36. Is the climate of England constant or variable, and what circumstance occasions frequent rains?

37. For what is Newcastle noted? (37.) Berwick was formerly termed the Key to England and Scotland; what is meant by that expression?



38. State the length and breadth of Yorkshire, and its rank as to size among the English counties.

39. By what line of latitude is the centre of Yorkshire crossed? (See the map.)

40. What is the rank of Hull as a commercial port? Where does it trade; and what is the difference between a commercial and a naval port? (39.)

41. Why is rain very frequent in Lancashire? (39.)

42. On what river is Liverpool? What is its rank as a port; and with what countries is it well placed for an intercourse? (39.)

43. For what is Cheshire noted? (40.)

44. For what is Staffordshire noted; and how has Mr. Wedgwood derived fame from one of its manufactories? (41.)

45. What great literary character was born at Litchfield, and when? What affecting memorial has been recently deposited in Litchfield cathedral? (41.)

46. For what is Herefordshire famous? and mention a saying which is familiar among its inhabitants. (41.)

47. On what river is Worcester? and state its manufactures. (41.)

48. To what benefactor of the rising generation has Worcester given birth, and when was he born? (41.)

49. For what are Warwick, Birmingham, and Stratford-upon-Avon, remarkable? (43.)

50. How is the great rise of the tide at Chepstow occasioned? (43.)

51. Whence is the derivation of the term *cester* or *chester* which so often terminates the names of English places? (43.)

52. For what is Leicestershire noted? (44.)

53. What tragical scene occurred at Fotheringay castle? When did it happen; and what reflection is excited by the circumstance of Mary at last reposing near her persecutor? (44.)

54. A line of *longitude* divides Norfolk and Suffolk into

two nearly equal parts; what line is it, and how many English miles would any place situated on that line be east of London?

55. What is the eastern boundary of Norfolk, and for what is that county famous? (45.)

56. To what part of the continent has Suffolk a resemblance? (46.)

57. Transcribe or repeat what is said concerning Cardinal Wolsey and Mr. Firmin. (46.)

58. Of how many principal divisions does London consist? What are its most remarkable edifices, and its extent and population? (47.)

59. What patriotic establishment has Greenwich, and how is geography benefited by the Observatory in Greenwich park? (48.)

63. What epithet has been applied to Richmond in Surrey, and why? What poet is buried there? (48.)

61. State the former and present state of Brighton. (49.)

62. Why is Bath the most elegant city in England? (50.)

63. What is the rank of Bristol as a commercial port; and why is it favourably situated for trade with Ireland and America? (50.)

64. Between what two bodies of water is Devonshire, (50, see the map,) and for what is it noted?

65. What mineral products has Cornwall? Define the geographical character of that district, and how it is terminated. (50.)

66. Why is Lizard point in Cornwall remarkable, and what is its latitude? (37.)

67. Where does the Thames rise? What places does it visit? What ocean does it enter? State its general direction as to the cardinal points; in what latitude it joins the ocean; and its rank among British rivers. (See page 51, and also a map.)

68. Describe the rise, course, and exit of the Severn, and mention the change made in its direction when it arrives at Shrewsbury. (51.)

69. Define the Humber and state how it is formed. (51.)

70. State the rise, course, and exit, of the Trent, and transcribe or repeat Milton's lines. (51.)

71. State the rise, course, and exit, of the Wye. (52.)

72. What are the islands belonging to England? and mention their situation. (52.)

73. Of what does the British constitution consist, and who is the present sovereign of Great Britain? What is the national religion? (52 and 53.)

74. Briefly describe the character of the English, and give a reason for their various descent. (53.)

75. What is the character of Britain with regard to the arts and sciences, and of what five persons may she boast as unrivalled for wisdom and genius? (53.)

76. Give some proofs of the national greatness of Britain as mentioned either in the body of the work or in the notes. (53.)

77. State the situation of Wales, its ancient name; which is the largest and which the most mountainous county. (55 and 56.)

78. What motive led Edward I. to massacre the Welsh bards? (57.)

79. Why is Milford remarkable? and state the capabilities of its capacious haven. (57.)

80. Is the form of Scotland uniform or not; and why is no place in that country more than 40 miles distant from the sea? (58.)

81. What are the chief geographical features of Scotland? (59.) Mention the chief lakes of Scotland. (59.)

82. By what two canals do the North sea and the Atlantic communicate? What dangerous passage is thus avoided? Why is that frith hazardous; and what islands does it separate from the continent of Great Britain? (61, and see the map.)

83. What circumstances have rendered Inverness and Scone historically known? (62.)

84. Where, when, and by whom, was the Christian religion first introduced into Scotland? and mention the number of persons that formed this religious mission. (63.)

85. What distinction has Loch Lomond among the Scotch lakes? State its extent, and which of the Caledonian lakes is the scene of that fine poem—the *Lady of the Lake*? (64.)

86. State the situation of Ireland and of its capital. (64, 65.)

87. Mention the principal loughs or lakes in Ireland.

88. Why are the western and southern coasts of Ireland more broken than those opposite? (67.)

89. State the number of harbours in Ireland, and why it has so many. (68.)

90. For what trade is Cork noted? To what great painter did it give birth; and where are some of his best works? (67.)

91. What distinguishes the surface of Holland more than that of any other region in Europe? (69.)

92. Which is the finest and most elegant place in Holland, and of whom is it the residence? (71.)

93. To what important invention, the greatest ever made, does Haerlem lay claim, and how is the fame of the inventor commemorated? (71.)

94. Describe the character of the Dutch. (72.)

95. Mention three illustrious men who have adorned the literature of Holland, and state the periods in which they lived. (73.)

96. What are the characteristics of the Dutch school of painting, its principal subjects, and greatest masters; and how do you account for marine scenes having so often employed Dutch artists? (73.)

97. For what health-inspiring occupation have the Dutch long been famous? Why is it the most ancient employment of man? Mention some proofs of the extravagant passion of the Dutch for flowers, and what are their favourite flowers. (71, 73.)

98. What two local features particularly distinguish the surface of the Belgic provinces? and state the cause. (74.)

99. What important victory was gained near Brussels, and what were its consequences? (75.)

100. For what is Antwerp noted ; and which is the chief port of the Belgic provinces ? (75.)

101. What rank has the Flemish school of painting ? Who is its chief glory ? What is his most perfect work ? What other great masters has the school ; and for what subjects is it most known ? (76.)

102. What part of France has a long range of coast, and what benefit does the country derive from it ? (77.)

103. What is the chief product of France ? How many varieties of grape has it ? What is the annual produce of its wine and brandy ; and which are the best sorts of wine ? (78.)

104. State the rank, population, and most remarkable buildings of Paris. (83.)

105. Of what four distinguished persons was Fontainebleau the favourite residence ? (85.)

106. Describe the situation and rank of Lyons ; and when the river Rhone has left the city, what is its direction ? (83. See the map.)

107. For whose death is Rouen remarkable ? Through what false accusation did she suffer ? Transcribe or repeat the passage which states the real cause of her death. (84.)

108. For what are Lisle, Rheims, and Montpellier, noted ? (84.)

109. Why are Poitiers, Cressy, and Agincourt, interesting to Englishmen ? and state the situation of those places.

110. State the rise, course, exit, rank, and length of the river Loire. (85.)

111. Describe the character of the French. (86.)

112. State the situation of Germany, and in what zone it is.

113. Who is sovereign of Hanover, and in what part of Germany is it ? (90.)

114. Why is Wittemburgh dear to the lovers of religious freedom ? (90.)

115. For what is Dresden famous ? What two paintings are the chief ornaments of its gallery ? and state their subjects.

116. State the situation of Blenheim and the source of its historical fame. (92.)

117. State the rise, course, exit, and rank of the river Danube. (93.)

118. By what German towns does the Rhine flow? What is its general direction in its German course? Describe the scenery on its banks, and by what epithet it is distinguished. (93.)

119. How many mineral springs has Germany, and which are the most celebrated? (94.)

120. Are the Germans distinguished for discoveries and inventions? To which do they lay claim, and what benefits have mankind derived from them? (96.)

121. Who was the founder of the German school of poetry? By what epithet has he been designated, and who have been his successors? (96.)

122. What has Switzerland been termed on account of its scenery? Why is the country remarkable? and state a proof of its general elevation. (102.)

123. Why is the situation of Bern remarkable, (102,) and to what wise custom is it indebted for its general neat appearance? (104.)

124. The longitude of Bern being 7 deg. east, what o'clock is it there when it is noon at London? Mention the chief lakes in Switzerland.

125. What are the principal summits of the Alps? (103.)

126. What honourable title has Zurich enjoyed, and why? (104.)

127. Describe the situation of Geneva, and for what it is famous. (104.)

128. On which side of lake Geneva is Lausanne? What sovereign is interred there? Transcribe or repeat what is said of him. (104.)

129. Why are Chillon castle, the valley of Sarnen, and the village of Rosenthal, remarkable? (105.)

130. Describe the rise and course of the Rhine in Switzerland, and what change it makes in its direction when it reaches Basil. (105, and consult the map.)

131. Describe the rise and progress of the Rhone. (105.)

132. Describe the rise, course, and termination, of the Aar. (105.)

133. State the height of Mont Blanc, the origin of its name, and its rank as a mountain.

134. Transcribe or repeat what is said of Mount St. Bernard. (105.)

135. Why is Mount Simplicon celebrated? (106.)

136. Of the Swiss lakes which is the largest, and which are the most beautiful? What is the form of the lake of Geneva, and to which of the heavenly bodies has it therefore a resemblance? Transcribe or repeat Dr. Aikin's lines on this lake. (106.)

137. Describe the surface of Switzerland. (107.)

138. Why is the winter of Switzerland rigorous and its summer hot? (107.)

139. Is the situation of Switzerland most favourable for inland or for foreign commerce? and give a reason for your answer. (Consult the map.)

140. Define Spain geographically; what bodies of water give it that character, and how does it seem marked out by nature as a distinct portion of Europe? (Consult the map.)

141. Does the geographical position of Spain adapt it for a naval and commercial, or for a military state? and give a reason why.

142. What is the elevation of Madrid above the sea? (109.)

143. Whose death sheds a glory on cape Trafalgar, and when did it happen? (111.)

144. Describe the monastery on Montserrat, and near what place it is. (112.)

145. For what is St. Juste, near Placentia, famous? and with what English and French sovereigns was Charles contemporary? (112 and 75.)

146. For what are Malaga and Xeres noted? (112.)

147. Mention some of the literary men and artists who have conferred honour on Spain. (114.)

148. State the situation of Lisbon, the capital of Portugal, and what commercial advantages it enjoys. (115.)

149. The longitude of Lisbon being 9 degrees *west*, what o'clock is it there when it is noon at London?

150. In what respect does Lisbon resemble ancient Rome? (116.) What catastrophe happened at Lisbon in 1759?

151. For what is Oporto noted? State the quantity of wine exported from it in 1824, and how much was sent to England. (116.)

152. Describe the scenery of Cintra, and with what lovely village in England it has been compared. (116.)

153. In what does the genius of Portuguese literature most excel? Mention one of its poets, whose intellectual splendour shines brightest among the poetic rays of Portugal, and his chief work. (121.)

154. State the geographical character of Italy, what are its ancient names, and by whom it has often been celebrated. (118.)

155. What district has been called the garden of Italy, and why? (118.)

156. In what manner do the Italians designate their principal cities? and transcribe or repeat those epithets. (121.)

157. On what account is the situation of Milan singular, and what advantages does it lose by its situation? (121.)

158. By whose birth is Mantua immortalized, and of what æra was he the greatest poet? (121.)

159. Why is Venice the most extraordinary city in the world? (121.) By what discovery were its wealth and grandeur eclipsed? (121.)

160. What is the situation of Florence? What honourable title does it enjoy, and why? (122.)

161. What famous statue does the Florentine gallery contain, and how is it remarkable? (122.)

162. Why has the church of St. Croce been termed the Westminster Abbey of Florence? and mention the names of some great men who are interred in it. (122.)



163. For what are Leghorn and Bologna noted? (122.)

164. Why is Rome interesting to lovers of the arts? Among its ruins which two are most distinguished for beauty or grandeur, and to what purposes were they appropriated? What church is the great glory of modern Rome, and of what sacred edifice in England is it the model? (123.)

165. The longitude of Rome being 12 degrees 25 min. east, what o'clock is it there when it is noon at London? (See Problem XX., page 316.)

166. A meridional line drawn northwards from Rome to about the 56 deg. of latitude will very nearly pass over a northern capital of Europe; what capital is it? (Consult the map of Europe.)

167. Describe the situation of Naples, and what is its rank as to population among European cities? (123.)

168. Which is the most considerable of the Italian rivers? State its rise, course and exit, and the number of its auxiliary rivers. (123.)

169. What celebrated city confers renown on the Tiber? (123.)

170. What rank has Sicily among the islands of the Mediterranean? How many different kinds of grape has it, and how many species of fish frequent the Sicilian seas? (124.)

171. Describe the surface and state the height of Mount Etna. (124.)

172. How is Malta situated with regard to Sicily and Africa? For what fruit is it noted, and why is the colour of the fruit red? (125.)

173. What are the origin and character of the Italian language? (125.)

174. Transcribe or repeat the passage concerning Italian literature. (125.)

175. What rank has the Italian school of painting? Who is its chief glory? What other great masters does it boast? How long did it last, and who were its first and latest ornaments? (126.)

176. In what manner have astronomy and navigation been benefited by Galileo and Giovia? (126.)

177. State the names and situation of the Ionian isles, and under whose protection they now are. (126.)

178. What celebrated precipice has the island of St. Maura, and for what was it supposed a remedy? (127.)

179. Of whom was Ithaca the kingdom, and how was he famous? (127.)

180. What fruits does Cephalonia produce? (127.)

181. For what fruit is Zante noted, and how is it used? (127.)

182. How is Cerigo situated with regard to the Morea? Transcribe or repeat what is said of it. (128.)

183. State the situation of Turkey in Europe.

184. For what is its coast remarkable? (129.)

185. By what line of separation may the islands of the Archipelago be divided into European and Asiatic? and mention the chief islands in each division. (131.) Consult a map.

186. What rank as to situation does Constantinople hold among European capitals? Describe its position and scenery. (132.)

187. Transcribe or repeat the eulogium on Athens. (132.)

188. What are the most remarkable ancient remains at Athens, and in what sacred buildings, recently erected in London or its neighbourhood, have they been copied? (133.)

189. For what was Corinth renowned, (133,) and between what two seas is it? (See the map.)

190. Where does the Danube enter Turkey? (133.)

191. Why are the mountains of Olympus, Zagara, and Parnassus, celebrated? (134.)

192. Of what heathen deities were Lemnos, Naxos, and Delos, the reputed residence or birth-place; and which of those islands is the centre of the Cyclades? (134.)

193. Of what benefit to the art of sculpture has Paros been? (135.)

194. What part of Turkey do the descendants of the ancient Greeks occupy? (136.)

195. Transcribe or repeat the character of the Turks. (136.)

ASIA. 196. With which of the other three great divisions of the world is Asia joined, and how is it separated from America?

197. Why is Asia interesting both to the philosopher and Christian? (136.)

198. What are its chief geographical features? (138.)

199. What part of Asia belongs to the Russian empire? (138.)

200. Of what persons is Tobolsk the place of exile? (141.)

201. What are the chief riches of Asiatic Russia? (142.)

202. To what tract of country is the name of Tartary now applied? (143.)

203. Where is the desert of Gobi, and why is it remarkable? (144.)

204. Transcribe or repeat the passage concerning Samar-cand, the capital of Independent Tartary. (145.)

205. Give a proof of the severe cold of the climate of Tibet. (147.)

206. What use is made of the tail of the Yak or Musk-ox, a native of Tibet? (147.)

207. What is the title of the ruler of Tibet, and what is believed concerning his soul? (147.)

208. How has Turkey in Asia derived fame in sacred and profane history? (148.)

209. What ancient districts does modern Natolia include? (149.)

210. On the site of what ancient city does Aisaluck stand? For what grand temple was Ephesus noted? By whom and from what motive was it destroyed?

211. Transcribe or repeat what is said of Jerusalem. (151.)

212. Describe the situation of Damascus. To what has

it given name; and who was converted to the Christian faith between Damascus and Jerusalem? (151.)

213. What is the modern name of Antioch; and what striking contrast does it present between the former and existing state of Christianity there? (151.)

214. What renowned city stood where Hillah now is, and what is its present state? (151.)

215. Which is the largest river of Lesser Asia? State its rise, course, and exit. (152.)

216. Whence is the derivation of the term *meander* as applied to rivers which have a winding course? (152.)

217. What rank has the Euphrates among the rivers of Asiatic Turkey? (152.) State its rise, course, and exit. With what trees are its banks adorned? What pathetic allusion does Scripture make to the willows of the Euphrates? and transcribe, from the 137th Psalm, the fine strain in which the royal poet laments the affliction of Israel.

218. Why is the Tigris thus named? With what river does it unite and where? What seat of happiness, because of virtue and innocence, is supposed to have been near the confluence of those two renowned rivers?

219. State the situation of mount Ararat, (150,) and why it is famous. (152.)

220. For what tree was mount Libanus or Lebanon celebrated; and of whose magnificent temple did it form one of the many contributions? (152.)

221. To whom did the island of Mytilene, the ancient Lesbos, give birth; and what poets have eulogized its wine? (153.)

222. Why are Cos, Samos, Patmos, and Rhodes, celebrated? (153.)

223. Define Arabia geographically, and what three bodies of water give it that form. (See the map.)

224. Into how many parts has Arabia usually been divided? (154.)

225. Why are Mecca and Medina noted? (155.)

226. State the situation of mounts Horeb and Sinai; and by what events have they been sanctified? (155.)

227. For what expedition is the tract at the head of the Red Sea famous? (155.)

228. What is the general character of the surface of Arabia, and to what has the country been compared? (155.) Has Arabia many rivers, and how do you account for its few streams decreasing as they approach the sea?

229. Transcribe or repeat the character of the Arabs. (156.)

230. What is the character of the Arabian horses; where are the finest reared; and how is the purity of their descent authenticated? (156.)

231. What is the most useful animal of Arabia; what has it been styled; and how is it peculiarly fitted for its labours? (156.)

232. State the origin and the chief article of faith of the Mahometan religion, the name of its sacred book, and the proportion of mankind who are supposed to be Mahometans. (157.)

233. Define the situation of Persia. (Consult the map.)

234. What Persian provinces are the most fertile and enjoy the finest climate? (158.)

235. Give a proof of the intense heat of a Persian summer. (158.)

236. Why is western Europe indebted to the fruits and flowers of Persia? (159.)

237. What are the modern and former capitals of Persia? (160) and state their situations.

238. In what province of Persia is Shiraz? What is the character of its wine? Describe its bazaar. (160.)

239. What celebrated poet resided at Shiraz? How did its scenery influence his muse; and what expressive epitaph graces his tomb? (160.)

240. Of what class of religionists are there still some remains in Persia? Why did they worship that element and perform their devotions in the open air? (160.)

241. State the character of the Persian language. (162.)
242. Transcribe or repeat what is said of the Persian poets. (162.)
243. What great river divides India into two grand portions, and how are they distinguished? (162.)
244. What district is included in Lahore? Mention the rivers, and by what two mighty conquerors they have been crossed. (166. Find the rivers in a map of Hindostan.)
245. Why are Agra and Delhi famous? (166.)
246. Of what district is Calcutta the chief place, and of what distinguished character is it the residence? Give a proof of its great commerce. (167.)
247. The longitude of Calcutta being 88 degrees 28 minutes east, what o'clock is it there when it is noon at London? (See Problem XX., page 316.)
248. Of what use is Ougein, the capital of Malwa, to Hindoo geography (167); and, its longitude being 75 degrees 51 minutes east, how many hours' difference are there between the reckoning of London and of Ougein? (See Problem XX., page 316.)
249. Transcribe or repeat what is said of Goa, and of the former power of the Portuguese in the East. (167.)
250. State the situation of Bombay and why its harbour is valuable. (168.)
251. Where is the island of Ceylon? What tree is its peculiar product? Why are the elephants of Ceylon remarkable; and what is their usual value? (168.)
252. Describe the rise, course, and exit of the Ganges. (169.)
253. In what light is the Ganges considered by the Hindoos? and give a proof of it. (169.)
254. What are the chief ornaments of an Indian forest; and how is the teak tree used? (169.)
255. When do the Monsoons blow; and what causes the alternate change of seasons on the coasts of Hindostan? (170, and see the note.)
256. What two districts of Hindostan are most noted for diamonds? (170) and state their situation. (See the map.)

257. Why do the Hindoos excel in the fabrication of muslins? (170)

258. Transcribe or repeat the account given of the animals of Hindostan. (170.)

259. What are the four leading powers of Hindostan at this time? Mention their capitals, including the three British Presidencies, (171,) and state from a Gazetteer the latitude and longitude of those places.

260. What nation has at present the greatest influence over Hindostan?

261. Transcribe or repeat the character of the Hindoos. (172.)

262. State briefly the nature of the Hindoo religion, and its peculiar doctrine concerning the soul. (172.)

263. What island is the utmost limit of the Hindoo religion in modern times? (172.)

264. What does the Birman empire comprise, and what is its capital?

265. What remarkable edifice has the city of Pegu? and describe it. (175.)

266. Describe the character of the Burmese, (176,) and in which of their customs they imitate the ancient Romans. (177.)

267. State the situation of Cochin China, and why it was remarkable in ancient geography. (178, 179.)

268. Describe the bird by which the edible nests in Cochin China are made. 179.

269. What is the character of the Malay tongue, and over what extent is it used? (181.)

270. In what part of Asia is China, and is its eastern-side compact or irregular?

271. How is the city of Peking divided? What does the term Peking imply? What are the circumference and population of the city? (184.)

272. State the situation of Nanking, the origin of its name, and describe its most famous pagoda. (184.)

273. What do Europeans chiefly export from Canton? (184.) What is the latitude of Canton?

274. What forms the chief article of food in China? (185.)

275. Transcribe or repeat what is said of the tea tree. (185.)

276. What annual custom is adopted in China for the encouragement of agriculture? (186.)

277. What are the three principal religious sects in China?

278. Have the Chinese any sabbath or fixed day of public worship; and how is devotion kept alive among them? (187.)

279. Mention some of the religious observances of the Chinese. (187.)

280. What is the population of China? What numbers of the people live in boats?

281. Describe the Chinese language. (188.)

282. Describe the person and character of the Chinese. (188.)

283. What two great public works has China? State a few particulars concerning each. (189.)

284. Describe the Chinese pagodas; and in what English gardens is there a good imitation of them? (189.)

285. What does the term East India Islands include? (190.)

286. Mention some of the trees which adorn the islands, and how many fruits are found in them. (190.)

287. Which of the East India islands are crossed by the equator? (See the map.)

288. What are the products of Sumatra? Describe the mangusteen; and why are the Sumatra pheasants remarkable? (191.)

289. How are the islands of Sumatra and Java separated, and by what ships is that passage often used? (Consult a map, and see page 139.)

290. Describe the form of the island of Celebes.

291. State a proof of the insalubrity of Batavia, the capital of Java, and assign the reason. (192.)



292. Of what do the Molucca isles consist? (192.)

293. Give a proof of the variety of wood in Amboyna. (192.)

294. For what are the Banda islands noted. (192.)

295. How are the Philippine islands situated with regard to China, and which are the three principal? (192.)

296. State the situation of the isles of Japan. In what custom do the Japanese imitate the ancient Romans? (193.)

AFRICA. 297. How is Africa separated from Europe and united to Asia? (Consult the map.)

298. What is its political, moral, and intellectual rank among the four great divisions of the world? (194.)

299. Give some reasons for the depressed condition of Africa. (194.)

300. How many degrees of latitude and longitude does Africa include, and what are its length and breadth in English miles? (195.)

301. In what part of Africa is Barbary? What states does it include? and state their ancient names. (195.)

302. State the situation of mount Atlas (197); and transcribe or repeat what is said of the Atlas chain at page 198.

303. What singular animal is a native of Morocco, and what remarkable faculty has it? (198.)

304. By what do the Algerines chiefly live? (199.)

305. In what part of Africa is Egypt, and for what was it formerly celebrated? (201.)

306. For what is the bay of Aboukir famous, and when did the battle happen?

307. State the situation of Grand Cairo, on what river it is, and what change that river makes a little below Cairo. (201.)

308. Transcribe or repeat what is said of Alexandria. (201.)

309. What does Bishop Newton say concerning the tide of eastern commerce, and in what countries are the places he mentions? (See the note in page 202.)

310. Why is Said remarkable? By whom have its ruins been recently illustrated? What is its ancient name; and what four places have been successively the capitals of Egypt? (202.)

311. Describe the rise, course, and exit of the Nile. Why is it called the benefactor of Egypt; and how is the gradual progress of its rise ascertained and made known? (202.)

312. By what is the rise of the Nile occasioned? (See the note in page 202.)

313. State the situation of the Delta, its shape, the origin of its name, and why it is the most fertile part of Egypt. (203.)

314. Why is the air of Egypt very hot in summer? (203.)

315. What proof is there of the ancient fertility of Egypt, and to what expression has it given rise? (204.)

316. State some of the Egyptian products, particularly specifying the papyrus, how it was formerly used, and to what it has given name. (204.)

317. By what two amphibious animals is the Nile frequented (205); and what is an amphibious animal? and give an instance of one from your own recollection.

318. In what peculiar manner are chickens hatched in Egypt? (205.)

319. Transcribe or repeat what is said of the curiosities of Egypt. (205.)

320. In what part of Africa is Zahara or the Great Desert; what is its extent; how many days' journey for caravans is it; what animals alone inhabit it, and what domestic animal alone is able to cross it? How do travellers direct their course over the pathless desert, and what catastrophe do they sometimes experience? (206, 207.)

321. What does the word Soudan or Nigritia imply? and state its situation. (207.)

322. For whose death is Boussa remarkable? and state the circumstances of his death. (207.)

323. Describe the known course of the Niger. (207.)

324. What are the various opinions formed of the Niger's termination? (209.)

325. What does the Shea tree, a native of Nigritia, produce? (210.)

326. Give a proof of the intense heat of the soil of Nigritia. (210.)

327. Transcribe or repeat what is said of the Negroes. (211.)

328. In what part of Africa is the colony of the cape of Good Hope, and what is its extent? (215.)

329. What is the character of Saldanha bay as a harbour? (215.)

330. Why is cape Aguilas remarkable, and what is its latitude? (215.)

331. By whom and when was the passage to the East Indies round the cape of Good Hope first made, and what influence had it on the commerce of Europe? (215.)

332. For what plants is the English green-house indebted to the Cape? What is the entire number of the Flora of Southern Africa; and what number of Cape plants are now in cultivation in the gardens of Mr. Loddiges at Hackney? (216.)

333. Transcribe or repeat the account given of the animals of the Cape. (216.)

334. Mention the four classes of people inhabiting Senegambia. (217.)

335. In what is the moral character of the Feloors highly reprehensible? (217.)

336. In connexion with the above, mention the name of a father who, taking his son to the altar, made him swear eternal enmity against the Romans, and who, by thus culpably filling a youthful mind with the seeds of revenge, produced a harvest of misery to mankind.

337. How is Guinea divided? (219.)

338. Which of our gold coins has its name from Guinea? What impression did it formerly bear, and why? (219.)

339. What celebrated traveller died at Gato, near Benin ? When ? and state the object of his expedition. (221.)

340. Where are the Azores or Western isles, and to whom do they belong ? (222.)

341. Which is the largest of the Azores ? For what fruit is it noted ? and give a proof of its abundance. (222.) How did Corvo derive its name ? What Roman was named Corvus, and why ? (223.)

342. Where is the island of Madeira ? What is its richest produce, and what quantity is annually exported ? (223.)

343. In what ocean and latitude are the Canary isles ? By what name were they known to the ancients, and of whom were they the reputed residence ? (223.) Describe the Peak of Teneriffe.

344. How has Ferro, one of the Canaries, been useful to ancient geography, and why was it thus selected ? (223.)

345. State the situation of St. Helena, its latitude and longitude, and for what purpose East Indiamen stop there. (224.)

346. Transcribe or repeat what is said of Bonaparte. (224.)

347. Where is Madagascar ; by what channel is it separated from the African continent ; and what is its rank as to size among the islands of the world ? (224.)

AMERICA. 348. By whom and when was America discovered, and why is it called the New World ?

349. Is America in any part united with the Old World ?

350. To what division of the Old World does America make the nearest approach, and where ? (See the map.)

351. Have Europe and Asia, or has America, the most northern latitude ?

352. How much farther to the south does America extend than Africa ? (226.)

353. What is remarkable concerning the existing governments of America, and what contrast in this particular does the Old World present ? (226.) Mention the names of the American republics.

354. State the situation of Greenland, and what European nation claims a sovereignty over it. (228, 229.)

355. For what is Greenland frequented? (229.)

356. Of what expeditions has Baffin's bay been recently the scene? What degree of west longitude did Capt. Parry attain in his first voyage; where did he winter; and how many days was he in darkness? (229.)

357. Describe the winter dwellings of the Esquimaux. (231.)

358. How is Canada divided, and to whom does it belong? (231.)

359. Whence does the river St. Lawrence issue; of what great bodies of water is it the outlet; and into what gulf does it flow? (231.)

360. What is the character of Quebec as a fortress? (232.)

361. For whose death is Quebec famous? State the particulars of it—what it was that gilded his last moments with a ray of joy; and with the closing scene of what ancient hero may the death of Wolfe be compared? (232.)

362. Why are the chain of lakes between Canada and the United States remarkable? (232.) Mention their names, beginning on the west. (See the map.)

363. Whence is the name of lake Superior? Why is it remarkable? and state its circumference. (232.)

364. How do lakes Erie and Ontario communicate? and describe the fall of Niagara. (232.)

365. How many tons of water is the fall of Niagara said to precipitate every minute. (232); and how much is that each hour and day?

366. To what is the severe cold of Canada ascribed? and state some proofs of its rigour. (233.)

367. When and by whom was Newfoundland discovered? What fishery has it; and for what purpose is the produce sent to Catholic countries? (234.)

368. By whom were the United States first colonized and governed? (235.)

369. By what mountains are the eastern and western sides of the United States traversed? (Consult a map.)

370. State the situation of Philadelphia, its latitude, the origin of its name, by whom Pennsylvania was colonized, and whence its appellation. Why was Washington, the future capital, thus named? (237, 238.)

371. Transcribe or repeat what is said of Boston and Dr. Franklin, page 238.

372. State the rise, course, and exit of the Mississippi, and what its name implies; also state those of the Missouri. (239.)

373. How is a communication now formed between the great chain of lakes and the Atlantic? (239.)

374. What is the government of the United States? (240.)

375. Transcribe or repeat the account given of the extent of the late Spanish territory in America. (241.)

376. State the boundaries of the Mexican States. (242.)

377. Describe the situation of the city of Mexico. (242.)

378. The longitude of Mexico being 100 degrees west, what o'clock is it there when it is noon at London?

379. What are the three chief mining districts of Mexico, and between what degrees of latitude are they? (243.)

380. State the situation of Vera Cruz and Acapulco, and to what parts of the world they convey the wealth of Mexico. (244, 245.)

381. What vegetable was first brought into Europe from Santa Fé? (245.)

382. With what useful bird did Yucatan supply Europe (245); and what English county is most noted for rearing it? (45.)

383. Describe the surface of the Mexican States. (246.)

384. Two-thirds of Mexico are in the torrid zone, and yet the climate is temperate: state the reason. (246.)

385. Transcribe or repeat the account given of the mineral riches of Mexico. (246.)

386. Transcribe or repeat what is said of the political and commercial rank of Mexico. (247.)

\* 387. What is the extent of lake Nicaragua? Between what two oceans is it proposed to open a communication by that lake? Describe how it is to be formed and its probable beneficial results. (248.) The scholar is also to explain this on a map.

388. State the district of North America which is described as inhabited by native Indians. (250.)

389. Describe the person of the Indians. (251.)

390. How do the Indians chiefly pass their lives? In what manner do they supply their want of a knowledge of writing? When does their year begin, and how do they reckon months and days? Which of the fixed stars do they most observe, and for what purpose? What is their religious belief and their opinion of the enjoyments of a future life? How are the aged treated, and what two terms are synonymous in the Indian language? What merit have they with respect to their children? and state the education they give them. (252, 253.)

391. Transcribe or repeat what is said in the note at page 252 concerning a contemplation of the heavens.

392. Where are the West India islands; what two great expanses of water do they include, and in what zone do they chiefly lie? (254.)

393. What are the chief products of the West India Islands?

394. What is the medium heat of summer in the West Indies? (255.)

395. By what foul means have the West India islands been peopled with blacks?\*

396. What rank as to size has Cuba among the West

---

\* Answer. Through the slave trade. The Blacks are purchased or kidnapped in Africa, and, thus torn from friends and country, are conveyed across the Atlantic to the West Indies and there compelled to work to satisfy the cupidity and luxuries of Europeans.

India islands? State its extent and to what country it belongs. (257.)

397. How is St. Domingo situated with regard to Jamaica, Cuba, and Porto Rico, and by whom is it governed? (257.)

398. What rank has Jamaica among the British West India islands? What does its name imply? and describe its surface. (258.)

399. State the situation of Barbadoes with respect to the other islands and give a proof of its happier climate. (259.)

400. What line is the boundary between North and South America, and what is the latitude of Porto Bello and Panama? (259.)

401. What late Spanish provinces does Colombia include and in what part of South America is it?

402. The Andes traverse Colombia: which is the loftiest of them? State its elevation and latitude. (262.)

403. Chimborazo is in the torrid zone and yet its summit has perpetual snow—how do you account for this?

404. To what height did the travellers Humboldt and Bompland attain on Chimborazo, and why is that height remarkable? (262.)

405. What property has the plant lichen? and state the height to which it grows on the Andes. (262.)

406. Transcribe or repeat what is said of Quito. (263.)

407. Why is Antisana, a volcanic summit, remarkable? (263.)

408. Describe the rise, course, exit and length of the Orinoco and its figure. (262.)

409. Describe the rise, course, exit and length of the rivers Magdalena and Canca. (263.)

410. In what part of South America is Peru?

411. Why is the coast of Peru from the 5th to the 15th degree of latitude remarkable? (265.)

412. State the number of mines worked in Peru in 1794. (265.)



413. For what properties is platina, a Peruvian product, distinguished? and state the comparative weight of that metal and gold. (265.)

414. Amidst a profusion of wealth, what is the condition of the Peruvians? and state the wise remark of Dr. Watts concerning Peru and Britain. (265.)

415. By whom and when was Peru conquered, and what is its present government? (266.)

416. Between what ocean and mountains is Chili?

417. After whom was Baldivia named. How was he put to death, and what did the inhabitants imply by that mode of punishment? (267.)

418. By whom and when was Chili discovered and conquered, and what was his fate? (267.)

419. In what part of South America is Paraguay?

420. How did Buenos Ayres acquire its name? (269.)

421. Describe the rise, course, and exit of the rivers Paraguay, Uruguay, and Parana. (269.)

422. How is the Rio de la Plata formed, and whence is its name? Between what capes does it enter the Atlantic? and state the width of its estuary. (269.)

423. What are the immense plains in the south of Paraguay called? How are they inhabited? Give a proof of the number of horses in Paraguay (269); and see the note in that page.

424. When were the mines of Potosi discovered? State their average annual produce, and to what saying they have given rise. (270.)

425. State the situation of Brazil and the advantages of its position. (270.)

426. Transcribe or repeat what is said of Rio Janeiro or St. Sebastian. (271.)

427. Where is the chief mining district of Brazil? What is its chief city? and state the extent of the diamond district.

428. What chain of mountains has Brazil? (272.)

429. For what costly fruit is Europe indebted to Brazil? (272.)

430. Give a proof of the number of butterflies which people the air of Brazil. (272.)

431. Where is Amazonia, and what is the origin of its name? (273.)

432. Describe the rise, chief direction, exit, and length of the Amazon, and its rank as a river. (273.)

433. The Amazon enters the Atlantic at the equator; in what latitude does it join the ocean? and if a person was sailing at its mouth, what would be the longest portion of day-light he could have for his operations? (See the note at Problem XIII.)

434. In what part of S. America is Guiana, and how is it divided? (274.)

435. What are its products? (274.)

436. Where are the Terra del Fuego islands? Whence is their name? and state the condition of the people. (275.)

437. Where is Juan Fernandez? For whose adventures is it celebrated? To what amusing and instructive tale did they give rise; and what moral does that story inculcate? (275.)

438. In what latitude and longitude is St. Peter's island? When and by whom was it discovered, and why is it remarkable? (276.)

439. State the farthest latitude attained in the South Polar sea; by whom and when it was reached, and how much farther it is than the point explored by Captain Cook. (277.)

440. State the most northern latitude yet attained; by whom it was reached, and how the difference between the latitude gained in the northern and southern hemisphere arises. (See the note, page 277.)

441. How are the islands in the Pacific ocean divided? (277.)

442. What islands does Australasia include, and what does the term imply? (279.)

443. State the comparative size of New Holland and Europe, and its situation. (279.)

444. What class of persons does our country banish to New Holland? (279.)

445. Describe the situation of New Guinea.

446. For what beautiful bird is New Guinea famous, and how is it shot? (277.)

447. How is New Zealand divided, and in what latitude is it? (See the map.)

448. State the extent of Polynesia and what is the meaning of that term. (280.)

449. Where are the Pelew islands, and in what latitude?

450. Transcribe or repeat what is said of Abbe Thulle, King of the Pelew islands (280.)

451. State the situation of the Ladrões and the origin of their name. (281.)

452. For what are the vessels of the Ladrões noted? (281.)

453. Who discovered the Sandwich islands, and why were they so named? (281.) How far are they from the equator, and in what zone? (Consult the map.)

454. What celebrated navigator was killed at Owyhee, and when? (281.)

455. When did the King and Queen of Wahoo visit England, and what was their fate? (281.)

456. Where are the Society islands? Whence their name, and what is their latitude? (282.)

457. Describe Otaheitee or Tahiti.

458. Of what missions was Otaheitee the early scene? and state their influence on the people. (282.)

459. In what part of Otaheitee are Burder and Haws districts, and why are they so named? (282.)

460. What is the Universe, and how is it filled? (287.) What are the Fixed Stars supposed to be? Transcribe or repeat the passage which represents the feelings excited by

a contemplation of the heavenly bodies ; state the various benefits we derive from them.

461. Why are the Fixed Stars thus named ? (289.) How have they been divided ? How many constellations are there, and state to what part they belong ? How many of the Fixed Stars are visible at one time to the naked eye ? Which is the nearest of the stars to the earth, and what is its distance ?

462. What does the Solar System, as at present known, include ? (290.) State the diameter and circumference of the sun. How much larger is he than our earth ; at what distance is he from the earth ; and how long does a ray of light take to pass from the sun to us ?

463. How are the Planets known from the Fixed Stars ? (290.) How many planets are there, and what are their names ? How many are provided with moons ?

464. How far is the Moon from the earth, and what is its diameter ? (294.) What are the shining spots and dark patches which appear on the Moon supposed to be ? How many volcanoes has it ? How large does the earth appear to the inhabitants of the Moon ? How many full moons would it require to afford a moon-light equal to our common day-light ?

465. What is the Terrestrial globe ? (295.) What is the axis of the earth ? What are the Poles, and how far are they from the equator ? How many great Circles are there ? and state their names. Of what use is the equator ? What is the ecliptic, and what does it shew ? Mention the four remarkable points in the ecliptic ; repeat the names of the twelve signs of the ecliptic, and state the seasons to which they belong.

466. How does the Brazen Meridian divide the globe ? (296.) What hour is it supposed to be with any place when it is brought to the meridian ?

467. What is the Zodiac ? (297.) What are the tropics, and whence the derivation of the term ? How far are they

from the equator? At what distance are the Polar circles from the equator and from the poles?

468. What is meant by the Zenith and Nadir of any place? (298.)



